

Strategic Planning & Policy Committee Public Agenda 4 June 2025

Council Chambers
Waipā District Council
101 Bank Street
Te Awamutu



Chairperson
Her Worship the Mayor SC O'Regan

Members

AW Brown, LE Brown, PTJ Coles, RDB Gordon, ML Gower, MG Montgomerie, DM Morgan, MJ Pettit, EM Stolwyk, CS St Pierre, BS Thomas, B Harris - Te Kanohi

04 June 2025 09:30 AM

Agenda Topic	Presenter	Time	Page
1. Apologies	Chairperson	09:30 AM-09:31 AM	5
2. Disclosures of Members' Interests	Chairperson	09:31 AM-09:32 AM	6
3. Late Items	Chairperson	09:32 AM-09:33 AM	7
4. Confirmation of Order of Meeting	Chairperson	09:33 AM-09:34 AM	8
5. Confirmation of Minutes - 1 April 2025	Chairperson	09:34 AM-09:35 AM	9
5.1 Unconfirmed Strategic Planning and Policy Committee Open Minutes - 1 April 2025			10
6. Hearing and Deliberation Report - Draft Lake Ngā Roto Reserve Management Plan	Aidan Kirby-McLeod and Brad Ward	09:35 AM-10:38 AM	14
6.1 Appendix 1: Submissions from those presenting on 4 June 2024			23
6.1.1 5. Nō Ngāti Hikairo au			24
6.1.2 14. Geoffrey Boxell			26
6.1.3 17. Craig Greene			28

6.1.4	18. Ngāti Hikairo	30
6.1.5	20. Gordon Wallis	43
6.1.6	21. Apakura Rūnanga Trust	45
6.1.7	26. Te Pahu Ratepayers and Pirongia Ward Committee	63
6.2	Appendix 2: Draft Lake Ngā Roto Reserve Management Plan (document ID 11373377)	67
6.3	Appendix 3: Email received from Waikato Regional Council (doc ID 11447617)	144
6.4	Appendix 4: Facebook comments	145
6.5	Appendix 5: Map of Restoration Areas, Ngā Roto Biodiversity Assessment and Restoration Plan	147
6.6	Appendix 6: List of submitters	148
6.7	Appendix 7: Submission Summary	149
6.8	Appendix 8: Submission requests and the Project Team's recommended responses (doc ID 11445039)	152
6.9	Appendix 9: Submissions in full (doc ID 11444085)	168
6.9.1	1. Sally Whitaker	169
6.9.2	2. Te Awamutu Rowing Club	171
6.9.3	3. Tim O'Neill	173
6.9.4	4. Heather Sherman	175
6.9.5	5. Nō Ngāti Hikairo au	177
6.9.6	6. Kath Nicholson	179
6.9.7	7. Shane Kennard	181
6.9.8	8. Nigel Robertson	183
6.9.9	9. Toia Zentveld	185

6.9.10	10. Ted Ensing		187
6.9.11	11. North Shore Rowing Club		189
6.9.12	12. Blake Luff		191
6.9.13	13. Oliver Ashby		193
6.9.14	14. Geoffrey Boxell		195
6.9.15	15. Tangata Tiriti		197
6.9.16	16. Alice Hicks		199
6.9.17	17. Craig Greene		201
6.9.18	18. Ngāti Hikairo		203
6.9.19	19. Caroline Barrett		216
6.9.20	20. Gordon Wallis		220
6.9.21	21. Apakura Rūnanga Trust		222
6.9.22	22. Te Awamutu and Kihikihi Community Board		240
6.9.23	23. Scott Collett		244
6.9.24	24. Schick Civil Waikato Rowing Club		245
6.9.25	25. Gus Berghan		246
6.9.26	26. Te Pahu Ratepayers and Pirongia Ward Committee		247
6.9.27	27. Dr Ursula Edgington		251
Morning Tea Break		10:38 AM-10:53 AM	
Hearing and Deliberation Report - Draft Lake Ngā Roto Reserve Management Plan (Continued)		Aidan Kirby-McLeod and Brad Ward	10:53 AM-11:13 AM
7.	Public Art - Art Loan and Mural	Anne Blyth	11:13 AM-11:28 AM
7.1	Appendix 1: Waipā District Council Arts Policy (document number 6856685)		258

7.2	<u>Appendix 2: Art Collection Management Plan (document number 6515884)</u>			272
7.3	<u>Appendix 3: Public Art Loan Agreement and Criteria Assessment "Wag" (document number 11426560)</u>			291
7.4	<u>Appendix 4: Acquisition Proposal and Criteria Assessment "Mural" (document number 11437774)</u>			300
8.	<u>Fast-track Approvals Act 2024 & North Waipā/South Hamilton Spatial Study Update</u>	Quentin Budd and Vanessa Honore	11:28 AM-11:48 AM	306
9.	Closing Karakia		11:48 AM-11:50 AM	



APOLOGIES



DISCLOSURE OF MEMBERS' INTERESTS

Members are reminded to declare and stand aside from decision making when a conflict arises between their role as an elected member and any private or other external interest they may have.



LATE ITEMS

Items not on the agenda for the meeting require a resolution under section 46A of the Local Government Official Information and Meetings Act 1987 stating the reasons why the item was not on the agenda and why it cannot be dealt with at a subsequent meeting on the basis of a full agenda item. It is important to note that late items can only be dealt with when special circumstances exist and not as a means of avoiding or frustrating the requirements in the Act relating to notice, agendas, agenda format and content.



CONFIRMATION OF ORDER OF MEETING

Recommendation

That the order of the meeting be confirmed.



To: The Chairperson and Members of the Strategic Planning and Policy Committee

From: Governance

Subject: **CONFIRMATION OF MINUTES**

Meeting Date: 4 June 2025

1 EXECUTIVE SUMMARY – WHAKARĀPOPOTOTANGA MATUA

The local authority, its committees, subcommittees and any local and community boards must keep minutes of their proceedings. These minutes must be kept in hard or electronic copy, authorised by a Chairperson's manual or electronic signature once confirmed by resolution at a subsequent meeting. Once authorised the minutes are the prima facie evidence of the proceedings they relate to.

The only topic that may be discussed at a subsequent meeting, with respect to the minutes, is their correctness.

2 RECOMMENDATION – TŪTOHU Ā-KAIMAHI

That the open minutes and public excluded minutes of the Strategic Planning and Policy Committee meeting held on 1 April 2025, having been circulated, be taken as read and confirmed as a true and correct record of that meeting.

3 ATTACHMENT - ĀPITITANGA

Strategic Planning and Policy Committee Open Minutes – 1 April 2025.
Strategic Planning and Policy Committee Public Excluded Minutes – 1 April 2025 (circulated separately).

COMMITTEE MINUTES



Committee: Strategic Planning and Policy Committee
Time: 9.10am
Date: Tuesday 1 April 2025
Venue: Council Chambers, Waipā District Council
101 Bank Street, Te Awamutu

PRESENT

Chairperson

Her Worship the Mayor SC O'Regan

Members

AW Brown, LE Brown, PTJ Coles, RDB Gordon, ML Gower, MG Montgomerie, DM Morgan, MJ Pettit, EM Stolwyk, CS St Pierre, BS Thomas, B Harris - Te Kanohi

Opening Karakia – Committee Member Harris

1 APOLOGIES

There were no apologies.

2 DISCLOSURE OF MEMBERS' INTERESTS

None.

3 LATE ITEM

None.

4 CONFIRMATION OF ORDER OF MEETING

RESOLVED

2/25/10

That the Strategic Planning and Policy Committee confirms the order of the meeting.

Mayor O'Regan/Councillor Gower

COMMITTEE MINUTES



5 CONFIRMATION OF MINUTES – 5 FEBRUARY 2025

RESOLVED

2/25/11

That the open minutes of the Strategic Planning and Policy Committee meeting held on 5 February 2025, having been circulated, be taken as read and confirmed as a true and correct record of that meeting.

Councillor Gordon/Councillor St Pierre

6 CONFIRMATION OF MINUTES – 24 FEBRUARY 2025

RESOLVED

2/25/12

That the open minutes of the Strategic Planning and Policy Committee meeting held on 24 February 2025, having been circulated, be taken as read and confirmed as a true and correct record of that meeting.

Councillor Pettit/Councillor L Brown

7 COMMUNITY BOARDS 6 MONTHLY REPORTING

[Councillor Morgan left the meeting at 9.35am and rejoined the meeting at 9.36am]

As part of Community Boards 2.0, both community boards are required to report to the dedicated oversight committee, the Strategic Planning and Policy Committee. The purpose of this reporting is for the Committee to consider the success of the community boards in the context of Community Boards 2.0.

Te Awamutu and Kihikihi Community Board Chairperson Ange Holt and Cambridge Community Board Chairperson Jo Davies-Colley and Deputy Chairperson Elise Badger presented to the Committee.

RESOLVED

2/25/13

That the Strategic Planning and Policy Committee receive the report of Jo Gread, Manager Governance titled Community Boards 6 Monthly Reporting (ECM Number 11417002).

Councillor Gordon/Councillor Morgan

COMMITTEE MINUTES



8 APPROVAL OF THE DRAFT ECONOMIC WELLBEING STRATEGY AND SUPPORTING INFORMATION FOR PUBLIC ENGAGEMENT

The purpose of this report was to seek approval of the draft Economic Wellbeing Strategy, draft Implementation Plan and supporting information for public engagement and feedback.

RESOLVED

2/25/14

That the Strategic Planning and Policy Committee

- a) *Receives the report of Joy Mickleson, Economic Development Advisor, titled 'Approval of the draft Economic Wellbeing Strategy and supporting information for public engagement', (document number 11260378); and*
- b) *Approves the draft Economic Wellbeing Strategy (document number 11230635, attached as Appendix 1) and draft Implementation Plan - Economic Wellbeing Strategy (document number 11279023, attached as Appendix 2) for public engagement and feedback, with timing to be advised; and*
- c) *Approves the Economic Wellbeing Strategy draft summary feedback document (document number 11264328, attached as Appendix 3) and Economic Wellbeing Strategy - draft feedback form, (document number 11264442, attached as Appendix 4), as a basis of public engagement seeking feedback on the draft Economic Wellbeing Strategy.*
- d) *Delegates to the Group Manager Strategy authority to make any final minor editorial amendments to the draft Economic Wellbeing Strategy, draft Implementation Plan - Economic Wellbeing Strategy, Economic Wellbeing Strategy draft summary feedback document and the Economic Wellbeing Strategy - draft feedback form, prior to public engagement.*

Mayor O'Regan /Councillor Coles

9 RESOLUTION TO EXCLUDE THE PUBLIC

RESOLVED

2/25/15

THAT the public be excluded from the following parts of the proceedings of this meeting.

The general subject of the matter to be considered while the public is excluded, the reason for passing this resolution in relation to each matter, and the specific grounds under section 48(1) of the Local Government Official Information and Meetings Act 1987 for the passing of this resolution are as follows:

COMMITTEE MINUTES



General subject of each matter to be considered	Reason for passing this resolution in relation to each matter	Ground(s) under section 48(1) for the passing of this resolution
10. Confirmation of Public Excluded Minutes – 5 February 2025	Good reason to withhold exists under section 7 Local Government Official Information and Meetings Act 1987	Section 48(1)(a)

This resolution is made in reliance on section 48(1)(a) of the Local Government Official Information and Meetings Act 1987 and the particular interest or interests protected by Section 6 or Section 7 of that Act, or Sections 6, 7 or 9 of the Official Information Act 1982, as the case may be, which would be prejudiced by the holding of the whole or relevant part of the proceedings of the meeting in public, are as follows:

Item No.	Section	Interest
10	7(2)(b)(ii)	<i>To protect information which if public would unreasonably prejudice the commercial position of the person who supplied or who is the subject of the information.</i>

Councillor Coles /Councillor A Brown

The meeting went into Public Excluded session at 10.27am
There being no further business the meeting closed at 10.28am

CONFIRMED AS A TRUE AND CORRECT RECORD

CHAIRPERSON:

.....
.....

DATE:

.....

COMMITTEE REPORT



To: The Chairperson and Members of the Strategic Planning and Policy Committee

From: Reserves Planning Team Leader and Senior Consultant, Xyst Ltd

Subject: **HEARING AND DELIBERATION REPORT - DRAFT LAKE NGĀ ROTO RESERVE MANAGEMENT PLAN**

Meeting Date: 4 June 2025

1 PURPOSE - TAKE

The purpose of this report is to enable the Strategic Planning and Policy Committee (the Committee) to receive, consider, and where requested, hear submissions on the draft Lake Ngā Roto Reserve Management Plan (RMP) in accordance with the Reserves Act 1977, and provide direction on proposed amendments to the draft RMP.

2 EXECUTIVE SUMMARY – WHAKARĀPOPOTOTANGA MATUA

On 5 February 2025, the Committee approved the draft RMP for consultation. The consultation period ran from 13 February to 18 April 2025 with a range of community engagement opportunities provided.

A total of 27 submissions were received on the draft RMP, with seven submitters wishing to be heard. While the majority of submitters were supportive of key aspects of the draft RMP, there were a range of specific requests made to amend the draft vision, objectives and policies and the supporting contextual information.

The Project Team has recommended a range of relatively minor changes to the draft RMP based on analysis of the submissions received and discussions with relevant Council staff and mana whenua representatives.

The Project Team seeks direction from the Committee on these recommendations following the hearing.

3 RECOMMENDATION – TŪTOHU Ā-KAIMAHI

That the Strategic Planning and Policy Committee:

- a) *Receives the report of Aidan Kirkby-McLeod, Reserves Planning Team Leader and Anna McElrea, Senior Consultant, Xyst Limited, titled Hearing and Deliberation Report - Lake Ngā Roto Reserve Management Plan (document number 11441829);*
- b) *Notes Waipā District Council, as administering body of Lake Ngā Roto Recreation Reserve, consulted on the draft Lake Ngā Roto Reserve Management Plan in accordance with section 41 of the Reserves Act 1977;*
- c) *Receives and considers the written submissions attached as Appendix 9 to this report, and receives, hears and considers the verbal submissions attached as Appendix 1, arising from the consultation on the draft Lake Ngā Roto Reserve Management Plan;*
- d) *Approves amendments to the draft Lake Ngā Roto Reserve Management Plan to incorporate changes as a result of submissions received and staff recommendations, as detailed in this report as set out in Appendix 8; and*
- e) *Notes the final amended version of the draft Lake Ngā Roto Reserve Management Plan will be brought back to Council for adoption.*

4 BACKGROUND – KŌRERO WHAIMĀRAMA

Draft Lake Ngā Roto Reserve Management Plan Review

Waipā District Council (Council) is the administering body for the 149 hectares of land comprising Lake Ngā Roto Recreation Reserve (the Reserve) and is guided in its management decisions by the Lake Ngā Roto RMP.

On 5 June 2024, the Committee resolved to initiate a review of the RMP because of significant degradation of the lake's health, legislation changes, increased visitation levels, and a greater appreciation of mana whenua values associated with the Reserve.

Council notified its intent to review the RMP on 27 June 2024, giving the public one month to submit feedback to inform the RMP review. Forty-five online responses were received from individuals covering a wide range of subjects. Key themes included the need to focus on improving lake health, retaining the current dog rules and improving visitor infrastructure. The recreational sport clubs directly communicated their aspirations and matters they wanted considered through the RMP review.

Staff and Xyst (the Project Team) worked closely with mana whenua (Ngāti Apakura and Ngāti Hikairo) representatives and met with Peat Lake Accord partners, lessees/lake users, adjoining landowners and the RMP Focus Group to explore the issues, challenges and opportunities for the new RMP.

On 5 February 2025, the Committee resolved to publicly notify the new draft RMP (Appendix 2) covering the Reserve, the property at 114 Bank Road (Lot 6 DP 526717) acquired in 2019 and any new land acquired in the future to restore the lake health.

The draft RMP vision is:

Kia whakaora anō te mana me te mauri o Lake Ngā Roto

The life-sustaining capacity of Lake Ngā Roto is brought back to life and protected and the wāhi tapu status acknowledged so that the Waikato and Waipā rivers, indigenous species, mana whenua and communities can flourish.

The four draft objectives to achieve the vision are:

- The health and wellbeing of Lake Ngā Roto's freshwater is restored
- Lake Ngā Roto has a thriving terrestrial ecosystem that enhances Waipā indigenous biodiversity
- Mana whenua's connections with Lake Ngā Roto are recognised and provided for and mātauranga Māori and tikanga are integrated into the governance and management of Lake Ngā Roto
- Recreational opportunities are enhanced for a range of users where they do not compromise Lake Ngā Roto's values or impact other reserve users

Consultation approach

Council publicly notified the draft RMP for a two-month period (from 13 February to 18 April 2025) in accordance with section 41(6)(a) of the Reserves Act 1977.

The opportunity to review and submit on the draft RMP was widely promoted¹.

Individuals and organisations could provide feedback via an online form, hard copy forms (available at council offices and libraries, the open day and downloadable) or emailing a submission.

Submissions received

Twenty-seven submissions were received.

Submissions from those wishing to speak is included in Appendix 1.

A summary of the submissions is included in Appendix 7 and the submissions in full are included in Appendix 9.

Under section 41(6)(d) of the Reserves Act 1977, submitters must be provided with an opportunity to speak in support of their submission. The following seven submitters identified they wanted to speak to their submission:

- Apakura Rūnanga Trust

¹ Promotion included a public notice in the Te Awamautu News, signs at Lake Ngā Roto, an open day at Lake Ngā Roto (01 March 2025), emails to lessees, submitters from the first round of consultation, key stakeholders, letters to 131 landowners in Lake Ngā Roto's catchment, mana whenua engagement, presentations to Te Awamutu and Kihikihi Community Board and Pirongia Ward Committee, and Council's social media channels and Have Your Say website <https://haveyoursay.waipadc.govt.nz/ngarotoreview>

- Craig Greene
- Frank Kīngi Thorne
- Gareth Seymour
- Geoffery Boxell
- Gordon Wallis (Waikato Thames Coromandel Youth Sailing Development Trust)
- Elizabeth Eden (Te Pahu Ratepayers and Pirongia Ward Committee)

Project Team's recommendations

Submission points specifically request a change to the draft RMP are outlined in Appendix 8, together with the Project Team's recommendations and rationale for that response.

The Project Team's recommended changes to the draft RMP relate to:

- Confirming mana whenua hold customary rights and interests in the lake and the surrounding reserve land
- Providing further time for mana whenua to wananga the traditional name of the lake and surrounds
- Confirming Council will support mana whenua's preferences in relation to treatment of any taonga found in the lake or surrounding reserve land (noting the Council has to also meet the legal requirements of the Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act 2014)
- Identifying another battle that occurred on the lake
- Providing for an additional viewshaft to be explored on the southwestern lake margin, and
- Corrections and clarifications.

5 SIGNIFICANCE & ENGAGEMENT – KAUPAPA WHAI MANA ME NGĀ MATAPAKINGA

Staff have considered the key considerations under the Significance and Engagement Policy, in particular sections 7 and 8 of the policy and have assessed that the matter(s) in this report has a *medium* level of significance.

The draft RMP has had good community engagement through the project focus group, engagement events and public notification.

Mana whenua partners have been involved in the development on the draft plan and have provided submissions on the draft RMP.

All legal requirements of public consultation of the draft RMP were met.

6 OTHER CONSIDERATIONS – HEI WHAIWHAKAARO

Council's Vision and Strategic Priorities

Plan	Vision/Outcomes/Objectives	RMP alignment
Waipā Long Term Plan 2021 – 2031 (LTP)	Vision: Waipā Home of Champions: Building connected communities. Community outcomes: ▪ Socially resilient ▪ Cultural champions ▪ Environmental champions ▪ Economically progressive	The draft RMP with the recommended changes aligns with community outcomes identified in the LTP.
Draft Waipā Long Term Plan 2025-2034 (Draft LTP)	Vision: Waipā Home of Champions: Building connected communities. Community outcomes: ▪ Social well-being ▪ Cultural champions ▪ Environmental champions ▪ Economically progressive External strategic priorities – what we will focus on for the next 2 years: ▪ Nurturing and respecting our unique culture and heritage ▪ Creating vibrant communities ▪ Caring for and valuing our environment now and in the future ▪ Effectively planning and providing for growing communities ▪ Responding to climate change	The draft RMP with the recommended changes aligns with community outcomes identified in the Draft LTP.
Ahu Ake, Waipā Community Spatial Plan	Ahu Ake emphasises the importance of creating a network of ecological reserves and rejuvenated and protected peat lakes for economic, recreation, cultural and	The draft RMP with the recommended changes aligns with the objectives and policies of Ahu Ake related to peat lakes.

	ecological reasons. It notes Council will improve at-risk peat lake by working with the WRC and farmers to fast-track improved environmental practices in the peat lake catchment areas. The plan highlights the importance of recognising and promoting the area's history.	
--	--	--

Legal and Policy Considerations – Whaiwhakaaro ā-Ture

Staff confirm the recommendations provided are in line with the Reserves Act 1977.

The land covered by the draft RMP comprises:

- Crown-owned recreation reserve with Waipā District Council appointed to control and manage
- Council-owned recreation reserve
- Council-owned land held under the Local Government Act 2002, and
- Unformed legal road.

Under section 41(13) of the Reserves Act 1977, Ministerial approval is not required for a management plan for a recreation reserve vested to and under the administration of a local authority.

Section 41(3) of the Reserves Act 1977 requires a reserve management plan must provide for the use, enjoyment, maintenance, protection, and preservation, as the case may require, and (to the extent that the administering body's resources permit), the development, as appropriate, of the reserve for the purposes for which it is classified. It must also incorporate and ensure compliance with the principles set out in sections 17 and 19 of the Reserves Act 1977. The draft RMP was developed in line with these requirements.

Section 41(6) of the Reserves Act 1977 sets out multiple requirements for public notice, access to the draft RMP and the opportunity to be heard in support of a submission. Council have provided public notice in the Te Awamutu News and online and provided physical copies of the draft RMP at Te Awamutu Library and Council office. This hearing allows submitters to be heard in support of their submission, should they wish.

Financial Considerations – Whaiwhakaaro ā-Pūtea

Implementation of any actions arising from the RMP review, once it has been finalised, will be subject to funding. There is \$360,000 allocated of Better Off Funding for any immediate implementation required from the new RMP. The Better Off Funding has been retained for funding (most likely water related policies) initiatives for the Reserve. Any further implementation of the new RMP will be considered through the 2027 – 2037 Long Term Plan and subsequent budget processes.

Risks - Tūraru

The following significant risks have been identified and will be treated as set out below:

Risk Description	Current Residual Risk Rating	Current Treatments	Target Residual Risk Rating	Planned Additional Treatments
Unrealistic expectations about the speed Council can improve the lake health.	Medium	- Media activity, FAQs on website, messaging through engagement and RMP clear on the complexity, causes, further work required and roles and responsibilities - Continue Peat Lakes Accord - Continue current work programme.	Medium	- Together with mana whenua, seek greater commitment from WRC to improve the lake's health and wellbeing - Prepare Long Term Plan business case(s) for funding to implement draft RMP priorities - Explore alternative funding streams and explore greater volunteering contribution.
Damage to relationships between Council, mana whenua partners and/or key stakeholders.	Medium	- Council considers submissions and has hearing and deliberations prior to adopting new RMP - Rationale for responses to submissions shared with submitters.	Medium	Mana whenua invited to attend Council meeting when RMP will be adopted.

Iwi and Mana Whenua Considerations - Whaiwhakaaro ki ngā Iwi me ngā Mana Whenua

Council started discussions with Ngāti Apakura in 2019 about being a partner in the RMP review and subsequently worked together to develop the Biodiversity Assessment and Restoration Plan 2021.

In 2023, Council sought expressions of interest from iwi on involvement in the RMP review which resulted in Ngāti Apakura and Ngāti Hikairo being involved in the procurement, planning and drafting phases for the RMP review.

The proposed RMP review approach and scope were discussed with Ngā Iwi Tōpu o Waipā at their hui on the 20 May 2024.

The Project Team worked closely with representatives from Ngāti Hikairo and Ngāti Apakura to develop the draft RMP.

Apakura Rūnanga Trust submitted on the draft RMP (see Appendix 1).

Climate Change – Hurihanga Āhuarangi

Climate change is a critical issue for Lake Ngā Roto and other Waikato/Waipā shallow lakes. Climate change, through increased high rainfall events and increased temperatures, is predicted to exacerbate eutrophication, further increasing the effort required to achieve desirable lake water quality outcomes in the future. Increased temperatures are predicted to amplify phytoplankton biomass directly, and cause a range of indirect effects, including proliferation of planktivorous fish, greater internal nutrient loading, increased nutrient mineralisation, reduced lake depth during droughts and higher nutrient loads in more frequent and intense storm events². The policies under Objective One in the draft RMP aim to monitor and reduce these climate change effects of the health and wellbeing of the lake.

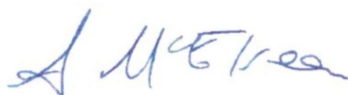
7 NEXT ACTIONS

Staff will amend the draft RMP as per the Committee's direction and report the amended draft RMP to Council for adoption.

8 APPENDICES – ĀPITITANGA

No:	Appendix Title
1	Submissions from those presenting on 4 June 2024
2	Draft Lake Ngā Roto RMP (as publicly notified) (doc ID 11373377)
3	Email received from Waikato Regional Council (doc ID 11447617)
4	Facebook comments
5	Map of Restoration Areas, Ngā Roto Biodiversity Assessment and Restoration Plan
6	List of submitters
7	Submission Summary
8	Submission requests and the Project Team's recommended responses (doc ID 11445039)
9	Submissions in full (doc ID 11444085)

² Source: Statement of Evidence of Ngaire Robyn Phillips for the Director-General of Conservation in the matter of Proposed Waikato Regional Plan Change 1 Waikato and Waipā River Catchments; dated 15 February 2019



Prepared by Anna McElrea
SENIOR CONSULTANT, XYST LTD



Prepared by Aidan Kirkby-McLeod
RESERVES PLANNING TEAM LEADER



Reviewed by Brad Ward
MANAGER COMMUNITY SERVICES



Approved by Sally Sheedy
GROUP MANAGER CUSTOMER AND COMMUNITY SERVICES

APPENDIX 1

Submissions from those presenting on 4 June 2024

Response No:
5

Contribution ID: 3302

Member ID:

Date Submitted: Apr 05, 2025, 05:50 PM

Q1 First name

Short Text Gareth

Q2 Last name

Short Text Seymour

Q3 Organisation: (if applicable)

Short Text Nō Ngāti Hikairo au

Q4 Address

Short Text

Q5 Email address

Email

Q6 Do you agree with the Vision?

Select Box Partially

Q7 If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Long Text

My concern is about Waipā wanting to change the name of Ngāroto, with no evidence to justify the change. I have seen this kōrero being discussed: 1. A waiata tawhito that mentions Wairoto but doesn't say where Wairoto is. 2. In that waiata, it's possible Wairoto is a tupuna wahine, not a lake. 3. The other evidence I've seen is all from 2024. Waipā must not change this historic name unless you can provide conclusive evidence of an original name for Ngāroto.

On page 24 all the tupuna wahine names have been put in brackets, which diminishes their mana, as they stand on their own mana.

Q8 Do you support Objective One and the draft policies to achieve this objective?

Select Box Yes

Q9 If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Long Text

Q10 Do you support Objective Two and the draft policies to achieve this objective?

Select Box Yes

Q11 If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Long Text

Q12 Do you support Objective Three and the draft policies to achieve this objective?

Select Box Yes

Q13 If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Long Text

Q14 Do you support Objective Four and the draft policies to achieve this objective?

Select Box Yes

Q15 If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Long Text

Q16 Do you agree with the proposed priorities that have been identified for the next ten years and the proposed outcomes that we want to achieve in thirty years?

Select Box Yes

Q17 If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Long Text

Q18 Please provide feedback on any other aspects of the plan that you'd like us to consider

Long Text

Q19 Do you want to speak to your submission at the hearings?

Select Box Yes

Q20 Would you like to stay updated with the progress of the project?

Select Box Yes

Q21 I acknowledge that I have read the privacy statement and am happy to proceed

Single Checkbox Yes

Response No:
14

Contribution ID: 3262

Member ID:

Date Submitted: Feb 18, 2025, 06:29 PM

Q1 First name

Short Text Geoffrey

Q2 Last name

Short Text BOXELL

Q3 Organisation: (if applicable)

Short Text

Q4 Address

Short Text

Q5 Email address

Email

Q6 Do you agree with the Vision?

Select Box Partially

Q7 If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Long Text Too much too soon: you do not have the finances so sorting that out before formulating plans should be done, that way you have a better idea of just what is achievable.

Q8 Do you support Objective One and the draft policies to achieve this objective?

Select Box Yes

Q9 If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Long Text

Q10 Do you support Objective Two and the draft policies to achieve this objective?

Select Box Yes

Q11 If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Long Text

Q12 Do you support Objective Three and the draft policies to achieve this objective?

Select Box Partially

Q13 If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Long Text Costs: if local Iwi, or Maniapoto in general, want this then they need to make a big contribution either in cash or manpower.

Q14 Do you support Objective Four and the draft policies to achieve this objective?

Select Box Partially

Q15 If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Long Text Only as and when WDC is either debt free or has debt in a manageable state. Given WDC's current financial position this is a "nice to have" rather than a "must have".

Q16

Select Box

Do you agree with the proposed priorities that have been identified for the next ten years and the proposed outcomes that we want to achieve in thirty years?

Partially

Q17

Long Text

If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Again: money, money, money. Acquiring land costs and WDC doesn't have it, not unless you intended to keep putting up the rates higher than inflation and, no, don't borrow any more money - interest payments are making rates unaffordable for many.

Work with mana whenua to formally change the name to Wairoto and update promotion and interpretation collateral to reflect the name change and provide further information on the significance of Lake Ngā Roto.

Why? I worked for what was NZ Post Office that became, NZ telecom, and then the many fragments that was split into yet, people would still refer to us as P&T (Post & Telegraph). Fortunes are wasted on "re-branding" and name changing yet so often it is just water off a duck's back and the old terms remain. The subject was also one that the topics dealt with on the Waikato University Master's course I was the Business Manager of and the conclusion was that it should be avoided as much as possible. Not only is it very expensive it pisses Joe & Joanne Soap off.

Q18

Long Text

Please provide feedback on any other aspects of the plan that you'd like us to consider

Are you looking into the use of barley straw? Barley straw decomposes, releasing compounds that inhibit algae growth and binds phosphates, buffers pH, and clarifies the water. This could be used on the feeder streams if not the lake proper: it would certainly be a lot cheaper than buying adjoining farmland.

Oh, and your document could have been reduced by 75%: much of it was repetition - you are not writing a Doctorate thesis!

Q19

Select Box

Do you want to speak to your submission at the hearings?

Yes

Q20

Select Box

Would you like to stay updated with the progress of the project?

Yes

Q21

Single Checkbox

I acknowledge that I have read the privacy statement and am happy to proceed

Yes

Response No:
17

Contribution ID: 3255

Member ID:

Date Submitted: Feb 14, 2025, 12:48 PM

- | | |
|------------|--|
| Q1 | First name |
| Short Text | Craig |
| Q2 | Last name |
| Short Text | Greene |
| Q3 | Organisation: (if applicable) |
| Short Text | |
| Q4 | Address |
| Short Text | |
| Q5 | Email address |
| Email | |
| Q6 | Do you agree with the Vision? |
| Select Box | Partially |
| Q7 | If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why |
| Long Text | I downloaded the draft reserve management plan to review. It's the most racist and woke document I've ever seen. Can I please have a copy in plain english, both english and maori is ok but paragraphs should not be mixed in different languages, it needs to be clearer. The report is too confusing to read with no key summary points and makes it unclear. |
| Q8 | Do you support Objective One and the draft policies to achieve this objective? |
| Select Box | Partially |
| Q9 | If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why |
| Long Text | Please see detailed reponse in prior answer. |
| Q10 | Do you support Objective Two and the draft policies to achieve this objective? |
| Select Box | Partially |
| Q11 | If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why |
| Long Text | Please see detailed reponse in prior answer. |
| Q12 | Do you support Objective Three and the draft policies to achieve this objective? |
| Select Box | Partially |
| Q13 | If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why |
| Long Text | Please see detailed reponse in prior answer. |
| Q14 | Do you support Objective Four and the draft policies to achieve this objective? |
| Select Box | Partially |

Q15 If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Long Text Please see detailed reponse in prior answer.

Q16 Do you agree with the proposed priorities that have been identified for the next ten years and the proposed outcomes that we want to achieve in thirty years?

Select Box Partially

Q17 If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Long Text Please see detailed reponse in prior answer.

Q18 Please provide feedback on any other aspects of the plan that you'd like us to consider

Long Text I emailed Waikato Regional Council on 23/01/25 with my concerns as follows regarding Lake Ngaroto. 1) Too many trees and shrubs cut down. Not enough variety of trees and shrubs planted as a replacement. Not enough diversification of trees and shrubs. For example, hundreds of the same native trees and shrubs have been planted increasing the risk of disease. I can see myrtle rust disease on the same natives. It would be better to plant much more native variety of plants - e.g. Kowhai, Titoki, Puriri, Ferns, Hebes, Leptospermum, Pittosporum, Pseudopanax, Phormium, Podocarpus, Kauri, Totara, Kahikatea, dwarf pohutukawa - maori princess. This would ensure the long term survival of the lake for future generations. In addition to this, I don't think there should be discouragement of planting non NZ natives, some big trees would be beneficial in some areas too - american plain trees, english oak, etc. By planting more variety, the water quality will improve, birdlife will improve and this would flow on to benefit aquatic life. 2) There is no longer any shade in any of the carparks with all the shade trees cut down and replaced with hot tar seal. Please plant either huge natives or nice ornamental trees in the carpark like Cambridge has at Lake Te Koo Utu. Anything is better than nothing - magnolia, elm, claret ash, maple, pohutukawa. Pets and children are suffering in the heat in the summer. 3) Please plant more kanuka and manuka to encourage bees. 4) Please use local nurseries and get a good deal on a huge variety of plants - there are many options available and lucky to be based in the Waikato with so many options. 5) Please invest in pest control more - traps, verspex for wasps too. 6) Please encourage volunteer groups for donations for funding and planting - just like the signs on Mt Kakepuku and Mt Pirongia. 7) Please prosecute farmers and enforce action for farms neighbouring the lake who do not plant dwarf or normal phormium flaxes along streams and fence these off. All of the streams are disgusting and must be the main reason for the rapid decline in the lakes water quality. Copy Lake Rotokauri and other lakes that are amazing. Please ensure there is enough clear space between farmland and the lake to ensure no contamination. Please contract farming environmental consultants who can help with this and specialise in this area. 8) Some more seating would be nice at various stages around the lake. Lots of the old seating is now gone. 9) Please have signs up to prevent the deaths of dogs due to the increased level of risk year after year with the lake being so poor quality. 10) Hand over management to a volunteer organisation such as Million Meters who restored the Mangaohoe Stream if there is an issue with funding. It's a fact council has failed on Lake Ngaroto the past ten years as nothing is working and it keeps getting worse each year. 11) Every step must be taken to immediately restore the lake and improve it. The community feedback is quite often "it's a dump now", "it's a hot exposed contaminated swamp with no shade or trees ruined", "my dog might die if I take it to the lake". Let's team together to make it the best attraction in the Waipa. Close the lake for a year or two if required to achieve this result.

Q19 Do you want to speak to your submission at the hearings?

Select Box Yes

Q20 Would you like to stay updated with the progress of the project?

Select Box Yes

Q21 I acknowledge that I have read the privacy statement and am happy to proceed

Single Checkbox Yes

Response to the Draft Lake Ngāroto Reserve Management Plan Feb 2025.

Frank Kīngi Thorne 18 April 2025

I belong to Ngāti Hikairo. I am an active kaitiaki in our rohe in Te Rohe Pōtae and Waikato. I have been involved in the environmental, history, cultural, and heritage protection on behalf of Ngāti Hikairo for over 22 years now. I submit this feedback as an individual. I do so to support and complement feedback from Te Rūnanganui-o-Ngāti Hikairo. I would like to detail the relationship of Ngāti Hikairo to Ngāroto so that my support for a Reserve Management Plan can be better understood. I will provide background to Ngāti Hikairo being mana whenua at Ngāroto. And secondly I will provide feedback on different components of the RMP.

I will begin by bringing focus to the matakite (prophetic vision) of our tupuna Tiriwā, a resident of Ngāroto and Te Mangeo, a renowned seer, who witnessed the arrival of foreigners, confiscations, and overwhelming land loss. He translated his vision in to the following tongikura (prophetic saying by a charismatic leader) -

***I kite au i tētehi tangata, he whakapakoko te kanohi, e haere mai ana i runga i te
kurī pae ngahuru. Māna te nuku nei e noho.***

*I have seen a man, whose face is like stone (white), who rides forth on a dog ten cubits
in height. This will be his land to occupy.*

The iwi of Ngāti Hikairo and Ngāti Apakura witnessed the reality of this tongikura when Ngāroto and the outlet Manga-o-Tama and the surroundings were taken as part of the 1.6 million acres that were confiscated from Waikato tribes in 1864. The Ngāroto Reserve Management Plan 2025 is an opportunity by both iwi to revisit the prophecy of Tiriwā and in conjunction with Waipā District Council, reclaim a small footing in our tribal territories.

The establishment of the iwi of Ngāti Hikairo is attributed to Whakamarurangi, the son of Hikairo II of Ngāti Puhiawe and Ngāti Apakura and Rangikōpī of Ngāti Horotakere, Ngāti Te Uru, and Ngāti Purapura.

Whakamarurangi te tangata
Ngā tahā i whatia
Nōna te mauri manu e...

Ka tere pīpī whakaaō
 Ngāroto ki Kāwhia
 Ko Hikairo te iwi e...

Whakamarurangi is the leader
 The gourds were fractured
 He possessed the life force talismans for birdlife
 The many hapū gathered from Ngāroto to Kāwhia
 Under the tribal mantle of Ngāti Hikairo

This is a verse taken from the waiata, Tū mai mātātahi composed by the late Ngāti Hikairo rūruhi, Mere Gilmore. It states that Whakamarurangi through courage and determination took control of the bird hunting, and life force talismans for the birdlife, and therefore brought together the confederation of hapū which were subsequently named Ngāti Hikairo.

According to Ngāti Hikairo traditions the iwi, of Tainui origin, is a confederation of hapū from Kāwhia on the West Coast to Pirongia, Ngāroto and Rukuhia. Rakataura III, the son of Tokohei, is the central tupuna that connects all the constituent hapū of Ngāti Hikairo. Pāhorō-i-te-rangi, the son of Rakataura III Pāhorō-i-te-rangi held the mana whenua at Ngāroto. Pāhorō-i-te-rangi had three children, Takupu-o-te-rangi and his two younger sisters, Te Waikauhoe and Ngāmuriwai. The sisters married twins, Tūihu and Tūtengangana, descendants of Whatihua and Apakura. Te Waikauhoe, the eldest sister, married Tūihu, the eldest brother. And Ngāmuriwai, the younger sister married Tūtengangana the younger brother. The majority of the hapū of Ngāti Hikairo descend from Takupu-o-te-rangi and Te Waikauhoe and Tūihu. And Ngāti Apakura descend from Ngāmuriwai and Tūtengangana. It is through this shared tūpuna connection that the hapū were able to unite under the leadership of Whakamarurangi. It is also through this whakapapa that Ngāti Hikairo now claim mana whenua from Kāwhia to Ngāroto and Rukuhia in the Waipā.

The reason Ngāroto is significant to mana whenua, Ngāti Hikairo and Ngāti Apakura is because it is the very location they originated from, and where they developed as hapū and eventually as independent iwi. We consider Ngāroto to be our ūkāipō, our homeland. As our ūkāipō, our mother it provides us with life, sustenance, identity, culture, mātauranga, wairuatanga, belonging, purpose, and somewhere to return to. And as our ūkāipō, it is our responsibility as children and descendants to take care, nurture, protect and sustain life as kaitiaki.

Ngāti Hikairo and Ngāti Apakura originate from Ngāroto. And the pā and kāinga in and around Ngāroto including Taurangamirumiru, Ngāroto, Te Pūtere, Te Moutere, Ōhope and Te Mangeo is where we lived when we became an iwi, and we continued to live without restriction until 1864. In 1864 the whenua, our rohe in Waipā was taken by raupatu. During 1865-1867 we received over 3000 acres at Whatiwhatihoe and the slopes of Pirongia in the Parish of Pirongia and about 1000 acres of the Ngāroto Parish in return land awards granted to members of Te Rūnanga o Ngāti Hikairo on land, just north of Te Rore, that we identified as Manga-o-Tama on the south bank of the Manga-o-tama Stream, the outlet of Ngāroto.

Ngāti Hikairo and Ngāti Apakura have mana whenua and kaitiakitanga over Ngāroto. We have traditions of Takupu-o-te rangi his sisters Te Waikauhoe and Ngāmuriwai and their husbands Tūihu and Tūtengangana living at Taurangamirumiru. Takupu-o-te rangi and his brothers in laws are associated with building the “floating island pā” known as Te Moutere, Te Pūtere/Te Pūtete, and Ngāroto and others on Ngāroto. We share the responsibility of kaitiaki of Ngāroto with our huānga, Ngāti Apakura. We share origins with Ngāti Apakura, but we are not the same people. Ngāroto is a shared space between Ngāti Hikairo and Ngāti Apakura. Ngāti Apakura stretch from Ngāroto east to Rangiaowhia and Puahue. Where as Ngāti Hikairo stretches north to Ōhaupō and Rukuhia and then west to the mouth of the Manga-o-Tama on the Waipā then to Harapepe and then south to Tahuanui (a peak on Pirongia), and south from Ngāroto to Kaipaka and west to Mangapiko, Whatiwhatihoe to Te Ake-a-Hikapiro (a peak on Pirongia). From both Tahuanui and Te Ake-a-Hikapiro, the rohe of Ngāti Hikairo descends to Ōpārau and the northern shores of Kāwhia Harbour.

Tautepō - The battle of the canoes

There was a significant battle at Ngāroto, named Tautepō between Ngāti Puhiaue and Ngā Tūihu, later to become Ngāti Hikairo against Ngāti Apakura. There is debate as to whether Tautepō is a pā and pā tuna on the Manga-o-Tama, the outlet stream of Ngāroto, or on the Mangapiko Stream. A dispute over the pā tuna (eel weir) led to a full scale engagement between Ngāti Puhiaue and Ngāti Apakura which was fought on the waters of Ngāti Roto in waka. Many people on both sides were killed. Ngāti Apakura were defeated and fled south to Te Kawa and Ōtorohanga. It is often referred to as the Battle of the Canoes. It is detailed in Ngā Iwi o Tainui by Pei Te Hurinui and Bruce Biggs. It is also in Ngā Tohu o Tainui by F.L. Phillips and also retold by Roberton in the Māori Population of Te Awamutu.

Story of Ngaroto - Battle of the canoes - 1949

https://paperspast.natlib.govt.nz/newspapers/TAWC19490117.2.28?items_per_page=10&query=tautepo&snippet=true

The known pā at Ngāroto are -

Ngāroto - The Ngāroto Yacht Club
 Taurangamirumiru
 Te Pūtete/TePūtere
 Te Moutere
 Te Mangeo
 Ōhope

Tautepō is either on the Manga-o-Tama or Mangapiko Streams and is directly connected to Ngāroto.

Te Kawa

After Tautepō Ngāti Puhiawe and its Ngā Tūihu allies pursued Ngāti Apakura to Te Kawa south of Kakepuku. Hikairo I of Ngāti Apakura went to Ōtorohanga to seek assistance from Paretūiri and Ngāti Maniapoto to reinforce his warparty and returned to Te Kawa to face Ngāti Puhiawe and the Ngā Tūihu and sub-hapū. Ngāti Apakura took the victory, and the defeated fled to Kāwhia. Ngāti Apakura returned to Mangapiko and Ngāroto.

Te Whakanamu

Following defeat at Te Kawa, Ngāti Puhiawe and Ngā Tūihu took up a position in Kāwhia at the mouths of the Te Kauri and Awaroa Rivers with their relatives of Ngāti Te Uru. They occupied a pā name Te Whakanamu. It was named this to commemorate the statement that once Ngāti Puhiawe and Ngā Tūihu had rebuilt their forces and “become numerous like sand flies” they would return to Waipā to fight Ngāti Apakura. With the support of Ngāti Te Uru they returned to Waipā and attacked Ngāti Apakura at Tūpāpakurua. They were repulsed. And a force led by Hikairo I of Ngāti Apakura came from Ngāroto to assist the besieged Ngāti Apakura. Ngāti Puhiawe and allies feigned a retreat, and Ngāti Apakura fell for the ruse, leaving the protection of the fortified Tūpāpakurua they were ambushed and Hikairo I and his people were killed. This engagement established the boundary between the Ngāti Puhiawe and Ngā Tūihu from the middle of Ngāroto to the west where they merged with Ngāti Horotakere and its hapū, and Ngāti Apakura from the centre of the lake extending eastwards.

Te Kuratūhope - the ceding of mana whenua to Hikairo II

Kuratūhope of Ngāti Horotakere, was the highest ranked descendant of Takupu-o-te rangi. She was the aunty of Rangikōpī, the wife of Hikairo II. Ngāti Horotakere were attacked by Ngāti Apakura, the people of Hikairo II. Hikairo II returned from a war

expedition to discover the situation, and found Kuratūhope. She officially ceded the lands and mana of Ngāti Horotakere to Hikairo II so that he could transfer the mana and lands to his son Whakamarurangi. She asked him to dispatch her so that cession would be ceremonially complete. He reluctantly completed the task. Hikairo II declared himself separate socially, and politically from Ngāti Apakura. So too did some of his siblings and cousins from Ngāti Apakura. He transferred the mana to Whakamarurangi.

Hingakākā

Ngāti Hikairo is a small, independent iwi whose rohe is wedged between two large iwi, Waikato and Ngāti Maniapoto, and to the east Ngāti Apakura. The wedge analogy reflects Ngāti Hikairo's self-determination and independence. It arises from the whakatau-ā-kī coined by the important tupuna, Tiriwā, at the great battle of Hingakākā, "Māku te tītī, māku te whewhera" (I will be the wedge, and I will make my own gap).

Tiriwā was a son of Whatitiri of Ngāti Puhiawe and Te Ate of Ngāti Hineue, a hapū of Ngāti Puhiawe. Tiriwā is a legendary figure of Ngāti Whatitiri, Ngāti Hineue and Ngāti Puhiawe. He was a renowned tohunga and matakite, associated with legendary prophecies. He was, like Hikairo II, recognised as having the ability to fuse his tōhunga abilities and fighting capabilities, to win battles. This is said to have been the case in the battle of Hingakākā at Te Mangeo, which is located at Ngāroto. Taurangamirumiru and Te Mangeo, on the western side of the lake and its wetlands were kāinga of Tiriwā and his multiple hapū of Ngāti Puhiawe. A Ngāti Hikairo tradition maintains that it is not the distribution of the fish that was the cause of Hingakākā, but rather, an attempt to secure the taonga held at Ngāroto. The attempt was directly related to Hikairo & Tiriwā, both invading Kāwhia, and the disappearance of taonga from the Te Ahurei Whare Wānanga in Kāwhia. The taonga were deposited in the waters of the lake. Hingakākā was the result of a power struggle fuelled by a desire to control the houses of learning and the taonga held by them. It is Tiriwā who is said to have used powerful karakia to summon and utilise the powers of local kaitiaki and taniwha to confuse and overwhelm the force with immense numerical advantage that attacked Ngāroto. This strategy and the strategies of warfare saw Ngāti Hikairo, Ngāti Apakura, Waikato, Maniapoto and allies secure victory at Hingakākā.

Whakamarurangi - the formation of Ngāti Hikairo

Whakamarurangi acquired mana from his father Hikairo II, and his tupuna Te Kuratūhope, and then further fame and mana through his own actions. He was ceded mana from a tūpuna from Kāwhia, and he acquired mana over Pirongia Maunga and Mangauika.

Whakamarurangi brought the various hapū descended from Rakataura III together and the tribe was named Ngāti Hikairo. Hence the division between Ngāti Puhiawe and

Ngāti Apakura became between Ngāti Hikairo and Ngāti Apakura. And the boundaries of Ngāti Hikairo extended further east as they included hapū that joined Hikairo in separating themselves from Ngāti Apakura. Whakamarurangi lived at Waiari with Ngāti Puhiawe, when his father deceased father Hikairo II was returned to him. He then established Mātakitaki as his base. Which became the central base for Ngāti Hikairo, when it was attacked in 1822 by Ngā Puhi. Ngāti Hikairo expand in to Kāwhia after the fall of Mātakitaki and the departure of Ngāti Toa.

Tērā ngā tai e āki ki te rae o Mangauika

This is a traditional mōteatea of Ngāti Hikairo, composed for Hihi, a son of Whakamarurangi, who was killed at Roto-o-rangi in the 1820s. It has been continually performed for the last 200 years to mourn the loss of rangatira, prove mana whenua at Mangauika and Whatiwhatihoe and to show tangata whenua status in the wider Waipā. There are many publications, recordings, manuscripts, and oral traditions with varying lyrics, history and explanations. The mōteatea holds great cultural significance to Ngāti Hikairo. There are many words that have been extracted from this waiata and applied as personal names within Ngāti Hikairo, and they continue to be handed down to this generation. One such name is Wairoto. The most consistent version is that Wairoto is another name for Ngāroto. Another version is that rather than Wairoto, it is Te Wai o Roto-o-Rangi - referring to the waters of the lake at Roto-o-rangi where Hihi was killed.

Ngāti Hikairo in Waipā 1822-1864 and beyond

Ngāti Hikairo moved to Kāwhia to join their Ngāti Te Uru, Ngāti Purapura, Te Whānau Pani and Ngāti Horotakere relatives already established there, but the hapū continued to live in Waipā and moved between coast and the interior for seasonal harvests. They were in Waipā when Kaipaka was attacked in 1834. The locations in Waipā were Mangauika, Whatiwhatihoe, Pirongia, Te Rore, Pukerimu, Manga-o-Tama, Pikopiko, Harapepe, Pāterangi, Rukuhia, Ōhaupō, Ngāroto and all its kāinga, Kaipaka, Mangapiko, Tauwhare, Waiari, Mangapōuri. This ended with the war and confiscations in 1864. However lands were returned to Ngāti Hikairo in the Pirongia Parish, Mangapiko Parish, Ngāroto Parish and Pirongia Township, which enabled a continued ahi kā, mana whenua and kaitiakitanga for Ngāti Hikairo in the Waipā. There were also some lands awarded in the Puahue Block.

The hapū of Ngāti Hikairo are:

1. **Ngāti Horotakere** - A large hapū with several sub-hapū. Horotakere, the senior descendant of Takupu-o-te rangi is the take tupuna to Pirongia and Ōpārau. Associated with the eastern slopes of Pirongia, Pirongia Township, Mangapiko, Te Rore, Mātakitaki,

Mangauika, Whatiwhatihoe Ōpārau, and Tōrea, Motutara, Motungaio, Paretao and Paringātai in Kāwhia.

2. **Ngāti Pare** - The descendants of Katohau. A hapū of Ngāti Horotakere. From the eastern slopes of Pirongia and Rangiuru, part of Pirongia Township, Mangapiko, Mātakitaki, Ōpārau, and Paiaka, Kaipāpaka, Hauāuru, Te Puru, Pouewe, Paretao and Ōmiti in Kāwhia.

3. **Ngāti Purapura** - The descendants of Pourewarua, the son of Purapura, a child of Pourāhui. Pourewarua also has strong affiliations to Ngāti Māhanga, through his mother, Parekuku. Pourewarua married two sisters, Te Ngako and Te Urumahora of Ngāti Te Uru and Ngāti Horotakere. A hapū of Ngāti Horotakere. Ngāti Purapura are the recognised tangata whenua at Whatiwhatihoe. They also have interests in Pirongia, Mātakitaki, Mangapiko and Ōpārau.

4. **Ngāti Te Uru** - The descendants of Te Urukahutaraheke, a child of Te Ariari. The descendants of three of Te Urukahutaraheke's children married into Ngāti Horotakere. This hapū is strongly affiliated with hapū on the south side of Kāwhia Harbour and with Ngāti Koata, Ngāti Tahinga, Ngāti Toa, Ngāti Tūirangi and Tainui-ā-whiro. One of the few strictly Kāwhia based hapū of Ngāti Hikairo. A hapū of Ngāti Horotakere. Associated with various places along the foreshore of Ōpārau, including Tiritirimatangi, Pukekohe, Te Kauri, Ngātokakairiri and Kawaroa, and Paretao and Te Papa-ō-Kārewa in Kāwhia.

5. **Ngāti Wai** - The descendants of Te Waihorohanga of Ngāti Māhanga and Te Rorohape of Ngāti Horotakere. A hapū of Ngāti Horotakere. Associated with the eastern slopes of Pirongia, Pirongia Township, Mātakitaki, Mangapiko, Ōpārau and Tōrea in Kāwhia.

6. **Te Matewai** - The origins of this hapū are not clear, however Pūmipi Moke or Pūmipi Kanohi was clearly the principal rangatira. Pūmipi was a rangatira of Te Whānau Pani, Ngāti Puhiaawe, Ngāti Wai, Ngāti Parehinga and Ngāti Horotakere. It is assumed that Te Matewai is a branch of one the above named hapū. Associated with Pirongia and Ōpārau.

7. **Te Whānau Pani** - The descendants of Whakamarurangi and Te Rārangi of Ngāti Pou, Ngāti Ngāhia, and Ngāti Mahuta. Whakamarurangi was the eldest child of Hikairo II and Rangikōpī of Ngāti Horotakere, Ngāti Te Uru and Ngāti Purapura. Predominantly associated with Mātakitaki, Pirongia Township and Whatiwhatihoe in the Waipā, Ōpārau, and Kōpare, Mangaora, Mōkai Kāinga, Te Ruauku, Paretao and Te Papa-ō-Kārewa in Kāwhia.

8. **Ngāti Ngāti** - The descendants of Kopa, the eldest child of Whakamarurangi and Te Rārangī. A hapū of Te Whānau Pani. Associated with Mātakitaki, Whatiwhatihoe, and various places along the foreshore of Ōpārau including Waihōhonu and Ngātōkakairiri and Te Papa-ō-Kārewa in Kāwhia.

9. **Ngā Uri-o-Te Makaho** – The descendants of Te Makaho-o-te-rangi, a son of Whakamarurangi and Te Rārangī. The hapū is a sub-hapū of Te Whānau Pani. Te Makaho's children were still alive in the 1890s and this is the name they operated by during Maori Land Court investigations, hearings and petitions. Associated with numerous lands in Kāwhia, Ōpārau, and Pirongia.

10. **Te Whānau-a-Te Ake** - The descendants of Te Akerautangi, the youngest child of Whakamarurangi and Te Rārangī. The hapū is a sub-hapū of Te Whānau Pani. The children of Te Akerautangi were still alive in the 1900s and this is the name they operated by during Maori Land Court investigations, hearings and petitions. Associated with numerous lands in Kāwhia, Ōpārau, and Pirongia.

11. **Ngā Tūihu** – The descendants of Tūihu, are a collective of hapū who descend from Tūihu and originated from Ngāroto, Rukuhia, Ōhaupō, Taurangamirumiru, Mangakaware, Waiari, Mangapiko and Te Rore. The hapū include Ngāti Puhiawe, Ngāti Huritake, Ngāti Waikaha, Ngāti Pōkaia, Ngāti Taiuru, Ngāti Hineue, Ngāti Parehinga, Ngāti Whattirii, Te Matewai, Ngāti Horotakere, Ngāti Wai, Ngāti Pare, Ngāti Te Uru, Ngāti Purapura, Te Whānau Pani, Ngāti Ngāti, Ngā Uri-a-Te Makaho, Te Whānau-a-Te Ake. They have land interests in Kāwhia, Ōpārau, Mangauika (Whatiwhatihoe), Pirongia, Mangapiko, Te Rore, Ngāroto, Taurangamirumiru, Ōhaupō and Rukuhia.

12. **Ngāti Puhiawe** - The descendants of Puhiawe a child of Rakamoana. With Ngāti Waikaha, Ngāti Huritake and Ngāti Pōkaia, they were previously identified as Ngā Tūihu. Ngāti Puhiawe is a large hapū with several sub-hapū. Associated with Waiari, Mangapiko, Te Rore, Mangakaware, Ngāroto, Ōhaupō and Mangauika in the Waipā, Ōpārau, and Pokopoko, Murumurupārāwera and Paretāo in Kāwhia.

13. **Ngāti Hineue** - Hineue is the wife of Te Rīmangemange, the son of Puhiawe. Hineue is of Whanganui and Tūwharetoa extraction. Ngāti Hineue is a hapū of Ngāti Puhiawe. Associated with Waiari, Mangapiko, Te Rore, Mangakaware, Ngāroto, Ōhaupō and Mangauika in the Waipā, Ōpārau, and Pokopoko, Murumurupārāwera, and Paretāo in Kāwhia.

14. **Ngāti Whatitiri** - The descendants of Whatitiri, particularly from his son Tiriwā. A hapū of Ngāti Puhiaawe. Associated with Te Mangeo, Taurangamirumiru, Te Rore, Mangakāware, Ngāroto, Ōhaupō and Waiari in the Waipā, and Ōpārau.

15. **Ngāti Parehinga** - Parehinga is a daughter of Whatitiri of Ngāti Puhiaawe, and the sister of Tiriwā, whose descendants retain the name Ngāti Whatitiri. Is a hapū of Ngāti Puhiaawe. Associated with Waiari, Mangapiko, Te Rore, Mangakāware, Ngāroto, Ōhaupō in the Waipā, and Ōpārau.

16. **Ngāti Taiuru** - The descendants of Taiuru or Rangitara Taiuru, the child of Taoroa of Ngāti Whanaunga and Paretehuke of Ngāti Puhiaawe and Ngāti Horotakere. A hapū of Ngāti Puhiaawe and Ngāti Horotakere. Associated with Ngāroto, Rangiaowhia, Te Rore, Mangakāware, Waiari and Mangapiko in the Waipā, Ōpārau and Pokopoko in Kāwhia.

17. **Ngāti Huritake** - Huritake, Puhiaawe and Waikaha were siblings. Huritake had a son Taraao, who had a child, named Pōkaia. These four and all Ngāti Puhiaawe sub-hapū come from Ngā Tūihu. Associated with Ngāroto, Ōhaupō, Rukuhia, Waiari and Mangapiko in the Waipā, and Ōpārau.

18. **Ngāti Pokaia** - Pokaia was the mokopuna of Huritake, the sibling of Puhiaawe and Waikaha. The hapū that come from these four were previously named Ngā Tūihu. Mostly associated with Ngāroto, and north towards Ōhaupō, Rukuhia and Puahue and Rangiaowhia in the Waipā, Ōpārau, and Paetonga in Kāwhia.

19. **Ngāti Waikaha** - The descendants of Waikaha, a sibling of Huritake, and Puhiaawe. The hapū that come from these three seem to be named Ngā Tūihu. Mostly associated with Ngāroto, and north towards Ōhaupō and Rukuhia and Puahue and Rangiaowhia in the Waipā and Paiaka in Kāwhia.

20. **Ngāti Rahopūpūwai** - The descendants of Te Apurangi and Tarahitaua of Ngāti Unu. Closely associated to Ngāti Puhiaawe, Ngāti Maru and Ngāti Horotakere. Associated with Mangauika.

21. **Ngāti Maru** - The descendants of Maru, the child of Marutao. Maru was a descendant of both Houmea and Marumāhanga. His child, Te Aotehe is heavily associated with the Mangauika Block. The daughter of Te Aotehe, Te Ngako, married Te Kamonga-o-te-rangi of Ngāti Horotakere, and Ngāti Maru appears to have been absorbed into Ngāti Horotakere. The name Ngāti Maru appears in evidence for the Mangauika and Kōpua-Pirongia-Kāwhia Investigations, but not identified as an active

hapū. It is a strong whakapapa connection for the Ngāti Rahopūpūwai and Ngāti Puhiawe into the Mangauika Block.

22. Ngāti Te Mihinga - Te Mihinga is the mother of Hikairo II and married Puku. Son of Hikairo I of Ngāti Apakura. Through Te Mihinga, Ngāti Hikairo have strong ties with Ngāti Hourua, Ngāti Hauā, and Ngāti Whakamarurangi. This is the hapū to which Hikairo II belonged, before the name Ngāti Hikairo was assumed. Associated with Rukuhia, Ōhaupō, Te Hīnau-ā-Tamatea, Puahue, Rangiaowhia and Ngāroto in the Waipā, and after Mātakitaki in 1822, with Ōpārau and Kaipāpaka, Paretao and Paetonga in Kāwhia.

23. Ngāti Paretāiko - The descendants of Paretāiko, the sister of Hikairo II. Associated with Ngāroto, Rukuhia, Ōhaupō, Puahue, Rangiaowhia, Pirongia, Pākarikari and Maketū in Kāwhia.

24. Ngāti Rāhui - The descendants of Rāhui, the daughter of Tukemata, the older brother of Hikairo I. This is a large grouping, often deemed a hapū of Ngāti Apakura, however, the Ngāti Rāhui branch of Ngāti Hikairo is heavily intermarried with Ngāti Puhiawe. A hapū of Ngāti Puhiawe. Associated with Ngāroto, Puahue, Rangiaowhia, Waiari, Te Rore and Kaipaka in the Waipā and Ōpārau, and Puketutu, Paretao and Paetonga in Kāwhia.

Other hapū of Ngāti Apakura origin who are closely associated with Ngāti Hikairo are Ngāti Te Kiri, Ngāti Rangitaiki, Ngāti Te Rau

Feedback in relation to the Ngāroto Reserve Management 2025 Draft -

I support the wairua of the focus on Whāinga Tuatahi to Tuatoru from the Ngāti Apakura Feedback on Lake Ngā Roto recreation Reserve Management Plan.

Ngāti Hikairo and Ngāti Apakura need to be provided an opportunity at the conclusion of this process to confirm support of the RMP.

Ngāti Hikairo and Ngāti Apakura need to be provided time to wānanga on the name Ngāroto or Ngāroto and Ngāroto/Ngāroto or Wairoto.

The Arawai instalment for Ngāroto and Hingakākā needs to be updated to reflect a tangata whenua narrative - reflective of both Ngāti Hikairo and Ngāti Apakura traditions

Any signage currently standing on the reserve needs to be updated to reflect a tangata whenua narrative - reflective of both Ngāti Hikairo and Ngāti Apakura traditions

p. 3 - Mana whenua built the man made island pā

- They are also considered to have been “floating: pā - Te Pūtere takes it’s name from this fact.
- Tautepō - The Battle of Canoes was fought on the waters and shore of Ngāroto, and many of the mana whenua were slain

P.11 - Allot 54A Mangapiko PSH - 3.5612 ha - Has this property and the property adjoining it to the south been assessed for heritage and archaeological values?

P.14 - Can the Iwi Heritage Management Plans associated with Ngāroto be named?

P.16 - I ngā rā o mua he hokinga mahara

- The historical kōrero tuku iho above

P.20 He Taonga Tuku Iho - This page fails to articulate the taonga tuku iho quality of Ngāroto to mana whenua

P.22 - The Indigenous Biodiversity values - Can this be approached similar to Mangakaware. Looking at historical, current and proposed future work for reintroduced indigenous species. For example - mirumiru, mangeo related to local place names. Can this be re-examined from a Mātauranga Māori lens? Kahikatea need to be replanted in appropriate locations. Other species associated with local tūpuna include hīnau and tutu.

P.26 - The listed atua do not match up with the seven atua listed with Te Paenga o Uenuku.

- There has been many taonga extractions, and furthermore several archaeological digs with the removal of artifacts. Mana whenua wish to have more restrictions and controls in place to limit excavations and extractions. And also to build relationships with extracted material now in museums, and gain access to said materials.
- Ngāti Hikairo have long been opposed to archaeological digs and excavations. And I suggest we continue to keep our taonga in the whenua and lake by all means necessary.

P.31 - **Table 1. Roles of key parties involved in administering and restoring Lake Ngāroto**

- Mana whenua, being Ngāti Apakura and Ngāti Hikairo originate from Ngāroto
- Mana whenua, being Ngāti Apakura and Ngāti Hikairo, hold customary rights and interests in the land.

- Participate in decision-making regarding the conservation and protection of historic places, archaeological sites and wāhi tapu as they relate to Lake Ngāroto.
- Mana whenua should be involved in the governance of Ngāroto and decision making at that level
- Work in partnership with local and regional councils to identify, implement and monitor restoration actions that are informed by mātauranga Māori and tikanga and based on strong relationships.
- All three roles of mana whenua are terrestrial focussed . It excludes the lake and waterways.
- All three roles also limit mana whenua to customary, tikanga and mātauranga advise.
- Mana whenua should be considered to hold customary rights and interests in the lake
- Mana whenua should be involved in the decision making and participating in the restoration of the terrestrial indigenous biodiversity of the reserve land surrounding the lake.
- Mana whenua should be involved in the decision making, and participating in the restoration of the lake's health and wellbeing.
- Mana whenua should be involved in the decision making and participating in the monitoring and reporting programme for Lake Ngāroto's lake health.
- Mana whenua should be involved in the replanting, and reintroduction of species
 - both the decision making and the hands on mahi.

p. 60 - Iwi Heritage Management Plans acknowledged and referenced - ie - Te Tahuanui
 - Ngāti Hikairo Heritage Management Plan

Appendix 5 - Overview of pā

History should be consistent. It only has kōrero for one pā, and it seems to be focussed on narratives from published books, not tangata whenua narratives relating to Reitū and Reipae and Hingakākā.

Reitū and Reipae

Reitū and Reipae are not part of Ngāti Apakura, they are of Ngā Tūihu, they are siblings of Rakamoana. Rakamoana is the source of Ngāti Huritake, Ngāti Waikaha, Ngāti Pōkaia, Ngāti Puhiaawe and it's sub-hapū of Ngāti Whatitiri, Ngāti Parehinga, Ngāti Hineue, Te Matewai, Ngāti Taiuru, and a large branch of Ngāti Rāhui, and Parehaunui who married Horotakere, the origin of Ngāti Horotakere, Ngāti Wai, Ngāti Pare, Ngāti Te Uru, Ngāti Purapura, Te Whānau Pani, Ngāti Ngāti, Ngā Uri a Te Makaho and Te Whānau o Te Ake. We come from the siblings of Reitū and Reipae.

Ngāti Hikairo maintain that the descendants of Tūihu and the hapū descending from him are not Ngāti Apakura and that all descendants of Tūihu, known as Ngā Tūihu, constitute the majority of Ngāti Hikairo.

Ngāti Puhiawe

Ngāti Puhiawe are registered as a separate grouping within the Waikato Raupatu beneficiary hapū list, and as a result are considered not to be a hapū of Ngāti Hikairo. Ngāti Puhiawe has many sub-hapū. Ngāti Hikairo traditions state Ngāti Puhiawe is a hapū of Ngāti Hikairo.

Karamū Whaiki identified his hapū as Ngāti Puhiawe, while giving evidence for the Pirongia West Rehearing in 1894. He was asked what his other hapū were, and he clarified that they included Ngāti Pōkaia, Ngāti Rāhui and Ngāti Hineue. He was asked what the tribal name was while in Waipā, his response was Ngā Tūihu. He was then asked:

“Are Ngāti Puhiawe also called Ngāti Hikairo?” “Yes” when they go to other places as visitors.” This is understood in the comment of Karamū Whaiki: “When among Ngāti Hikairo, Ngāti Puhiawe are Ngāti Puhiawe, when outside of the rohe of Ngāti Hikairo, they are viewed as Ngāti Hikairo.”

Ngāti Puhiawe leaders Karena Tāmaki, Rore Erueti, Marae Erueti and others led a petition in 1947 on behalf of Ngāti Puhiawe and Ngāti Apakura to have confiscated lands returned as they were landless. Due to this Ngāti Puhiawe was included in the Tainui Māori Trust Board, and the 1946 Tainui Settlement, and named again in the 1995 Waikato Settlement alongside Ngāti Hikairo as beneficiary hapū of Waikato-Tainui with Waipapa as the constituent marae.

Submission to the Waipa District Council

Lake Ngaroto Reserve Management Plan

Moot of Submission

The removal of the belief that the Ngaroto Lake is considered wāhi tapu (sacred site)

From the 16th Century Lake Ngaroto was central to five Maori settlements on its perimeter, being an abundant fishing resource.

The lake area was approximately 40% larger than it is today giving it a centre of lake depth of approximately 5 to 6 metres.

In approximately 1780 the battle of Hingakākā took place primarily brought about by a disagreement between paramounts of Ngāti Toa (Pikauterangi) Marakopa and Ngāti Mahuta (Te Rauangaanga) Ngaroto and their allies.

Being that Ngaroto is of the lowest ground in the area and strategically a poor area to meet / defend an attacker, Ngāti Mahuta prepared and met Ngāti Toa on the southern side of the ridge of what is now Ngaroto Road. Approximately 4 to 5 Kilometres to the south of Lake Ngaroto.

This gave Ngāti Mahuta the advantage of height, and that the battlefield was above a smaller swamp lake to the south of Ngaroto Road. The area is now farmland on the flat closer to Te Awamutu.

Strategically this site proved to be successful with the defenders being able to manoeuvre many of the attackers into the swamp lake with what is understood hyperthermia taking many lives.

There is no record of any battle taking place on the edges of Lake Ngaroto Persei.

We respect Maori for;

Being culturally very sensitive to the placement of the dead.

Being very firm on differentiating between food gathering areas, food preparation and eating areas with the dead.

There is no record of Lake Ngaroto residents having to vacate the area or stop gathering food (fish – eels, freshwater cray etc) after and as a result of the battle.

It is on record, that Maori were living at the perimeter of Lake Ngaroto into the 20th century.

From their actions we can conclude that Lake Ngaroto was and until agricultural nutrients and invasive fish contaminated the lake was a premier fishing ground.

No dead have been buried in the lake.

Any dead that may have drowned in the lake would have been removed for burial.

Any drownings, if any would have occurred over what is now dry land brought about by drainage.

Conclusion

While with respect the battle of Hingakākā was a significant event in the history of the Lake Ngaroto residents and their supporters. Unfortunately, they also were probably without loss.

You cannot shift the actual battle site to establish a wāhi tapu status on an adjacent surviving lake to establish a position of control.

Fact

Lake Ngaroto was a premier food source for the Waipa area and should be recognised as.

Maori not involved in the holding of this wāhi tapu status view Ngaroto as being a lake contaminated by agricultural chemicals (fertiliser sprays) and invasive fish and should be cleaned up like any other contaminated site.

That the pathway forward to cleaning up Lake Ngaroto will be more successful with the recognition of the true battle of Hingakākā site and the removal of the wāhi tapu status on Lake Ngaroto.

Gordon Wallis

Chairman / Trustee

Waikato Thames Coromandel Youth Sailing Development Trust

[REDACTED]

[REDACTED]

Ngaati Apakura Runanga Trust
 61 Rangiaowhia Road
 Te Awamutu
admin@ngatiapakura.co.nz
ngatiapakura.co.nz



April 2025

‘Tēna Koutou katoa

Re: Feedback on the Draft Lake Ngā Roto Reserve Management Plan

*Maaku anoo e hanga i tooku nei whare
 Ko ngaa pou o roto, he mahoe, he patate, ko te taahuuhuu he hinau
 Me whakatupu ki te hua o te rengarenga
 Me whakapakari ki te hua o te kawariki*

Te Tongi aa Kingi Tawhiao

Ngaati Apakura is a tribe of the Waikato and Waipā districts with history that can trace its links to the Tainui waka making landfall at Maketu, Tāmaki Makaurau and finally Kawhia. Many Rangatira traversed Aotearoa whenua (lands) with some settling in Kawhia while other chose to explore inland to take advantage of the resources in the forests often naming landmarks on the way. Whatihua is a well known descendant of Hoturoa, captain of the Tainui waka.

Hoturoa
 I
 Hotuope
 I
 Hotumatapu
 I
 Motai
 I
 Ue
 I
 Rakamaomao
 I
 Kakati
 I
 Tawhao
 I
 Whatihua

Whatihua had children to two women – Ruapuutahanga and Apakura and from the latter union stems the tribe Ngaati Apakura. Although Apakura whakapapa is disputed between Te Arawa and Tākitimu, Kingi Tāwhiao alluded in 1876 to Apakura being from the Te Arawa district with

Ngaati Apakura Runanga Trust
 61 Rangiaowhia Road
 Te Awamutu
admin@ngatiapakura.co.nz
ngatiapakura.co.nz



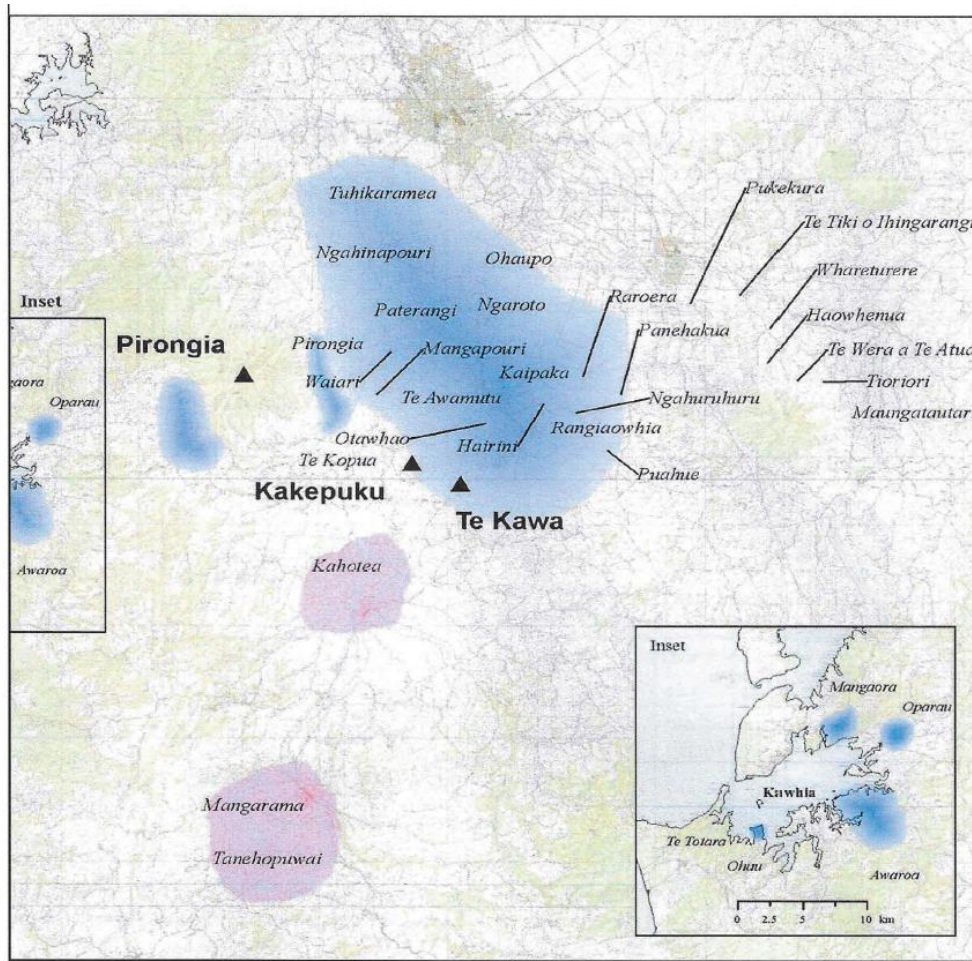
whakapapa to Ngātoroirangi. Some kaumaatua have also argued that she had a whakapapa to the Patupaiarehe (people of red hair known as fairies that lived on Pirongia mountain) (Joseph, 2013)

Ngātoroirangi
 I
 Whakairopapa
 I
 Moepua
 I
 Whanua-a-rangi
 I
 Apakura

Ngāti Apakura is a distinct iwi, consisting of at leave five hapuu though sometimes it included up to 17 including Ngāti Hikairo, Ngaati Hinetu, Ngāti Rangimahora, Ngāti Rahui, Ngāti Puhiaawe, Ngāti Tukemata, Ngāti Takekore, Ngāti Waikohika, Ngāti Pareterakau, Ngaati Te Rau, Ngāti Waitapu, Ngāti Te Mihinga, Ngāti Paretaiko, Ngāti Taheke and Ngāti Ngahia. (Joseph, 2013)

The whakapapa connections is foundational to understanding the historical context of Ngāti Apakura whenua, Pā and occupation. It also highlights an intricate relationship between the tribe and its environment. The fluidity of tribal landscapes, shaped by seasonal resource availability, underscores their deep understanding of the land and its rhythms.

The historic maps below outline the complexities of the tribal landscapes and boundaries as being fluid and complex and not fitting neatly into a square box and the various hapu of Ngāti Apakura had established mana whenua over lands which extended from Kāwhia along the coast and into the interior with established pā at Kakepuku, Pirongia, Waipā and Wairoto currently known as Ngaroto. Ngāti Apakura also had mana whenua in what is now known as the southern portions of Hamilton city, Te Awamutu, Pirongia and surrounding areas. Apakura still continue to have firm footprints through their marae at Puurekireki, Hiiona and Kahotea today.



(Joseph, 2013)

Each hapu would effectively have its own catchment area which would have been rigorously monitored, maintained and protected.

The lakes and expansive Kahikatea forests once served as abundant sources of both sustenance and medicinal resources for Māori communities. These areas functioned as natural storehouses, providing vital elements of the traditional Māori diet, including eels, Karaka berries, edible rhizomes, and a diverse array of forest and aquatic birdlife. Located near the



vast wetland systems of Rukuhia, Mangakaware, and Moanatuatua, the settlement of Wairoto was a *kainga* (village) of considerable means. It supported not only its own residents but also numerous closely and distantly related *hapu*, all of whom shared in the plentiful resources offered by the wetlands.

Certain parts of the wetlands were navigable by canoe, while others were accessible only on foot. Some swamp areas were strategically fortified, either as defensive structures or as refuges, utilizing natural barriers such as quicksand and deep mud to deter access.

Additionally, these wetlands were employed as secure storage zones where valuable tribal heirlooms—such as carvings—could be hidden from potential raiders. Although these lands spanned tens of thousands of acres, each area was distinctly recognized and delineated among *whānau*, *hapu*, and *iwi*, with clearly defined responsibilities for their sustainable management (Maki-Midwood, 2016).

Wairoto holds deep historical and cultural significance for Ngāti Apakura, serving as the backdrop for several notable events:

- It is the site of Taurangamirumiru, a well-known *pā* (fortified village) of considerable importance.
- The surrounding wetlands were an abundant resource, teeming with life. Species such as *matuku* (bittern) and other wading birds thrived here, alongside *kōura* (freshwater crayfish), *īnanga* (whitebait), *ika* (fish), and *tuna* (eels) in the lakes.
- Reitū and Reipae, two *puhi ariki* (women of high rank) and daughters of Apakura chief Tuihu, lived at Taurangamirumiru before migrating north. They eventually settled and married prominent chiefs of the Tai Tokerau region.

Ngaati Apakura Runanga Trust
 61 Rangiaowhia Road
 Te Awamutu
admin@ngatiapakura.co.nz
ngatiapakura.co.nz



- Wairoto is the site of *Te Pakanga o Hingakākā*, the largest known Māori battle, which took place in the late 1700s. Because of the pakanga we recognise this space as a deeply tapu (sacred) site because of the large amount of koiwi that is present and great care is needed.
- During this conflict, *Uenuku*—a revered *taonga* (treasure) of the Tainui people—was buried near Lake Ngāroto for safekeeping. It was later rediscovered and went on to feature in the internationally acclaimed *Te Māori* exhibition in 1984. Today, Uenuku is held in high esteem at the Te Awamutu Museum.

Apakura Rūnanga Trust is pleased to provide feedback on the Draft Lake Ngā Roto Reserve Management Plan. Apakura holds a deep historical and cultural connection to Lake Ngā Roto and carries a vital kaitiaki (guardianship) responsibility for its protection and wellbeing. As kaitiaki, our role extends beyond environmental stewardship; it involves upholding the mauri (life force) of the lake, protecting wāhi tapu, restoring taonga species such as tuna and native plants used in Rongoā Māori and weaving, and maintaining the integrity of our cultural knowledge systems (Coromandel-Wander, 2013). Lake Ngā Roto provides mana whenua with ongoing opportunities to sustain our physical and spiritual relationship with wai and whenua Māori, to fulfil our kaitiaki responsibilities, and to engage in both traditional and contemporary practices that strengthen mātauranga Māori and cultural identity.

We acknowledge and commend the Waipā District Council (the Council) for its collaborative approach in working alongside mana whenua in the development of this draft plan, and for recognising the significant cultural importance of this area to Ngāti Apakura. We are confident that Apakura Rūnanga can continue to actively support the Council's vision to enhance the wellbeing of the Waipā district and its people, by contributing meaningfully to social resilience, cultural heritage, environmental sustainability, and a thriving local economy. In our view, supporting the development



and review of the Reserve Management Plan is a tangible example of our commitment to providing grounded and enduring support to both Council and the wider community, and we look forward to working in partnership on the projects outlined in the draft plan.

Whakakitenga - Vision

We support the vision that the life-sustaining capacity of Lake Ngā Roto is brought back to life, protected, and its status as a *wāhi tapu* (sacred site) acknowledged—so that the Waikato and Waipā Rivers, indigenous species, mana whenua, and local communities can flourish. This vision lays the foundation for important conversations that extend across generations and kaupapa, including but not limited to:

- **Intergenerational Responsibility & Legacy**

Ensuring that the mauri of Lake Ngā Roto is restored and sustained for future generations, allowing them to inherit a lake that is spiritually alive, ecologically thriving, and culturally honoured.

- **Revitalisation of Mātauranga Māori**

Supporting the transmission and application of mātauranga Māori to guide restoration efforts, affirm cultural identity, and reawaken traditional practices connected to the lake.

- **Active Protection of Indigenous Species and Habitats**

Restoring ecological balance through the reintroduction and protection of native species, including taonga such as tuna, kōura, and culturally significant plant species.

- **Cultural Integrity and Sacredness**

Upholding the spiritual and cultural significance of wāhi tapu through active recognition, protection, and integration within environmental management frameworks.

- **Unified Community Stewardship**

Promoting collective responsibility and shared guardianship between mana whenua, local

Ngaati Apakura Runanga Trust
 61 Rangiaowhia Road
 Te Awamutu
admin@ngatiapakura.co.nz
ngatiapakura.co.nz



communities, and the Council—where all voices contribute to the care and wellbeing of the lake.

- **Climate and Environmental Resilience**

Recognising Lake Ngā Roto as a key contributor to regional climate resilience—through carbon sequestration, biodiversity protection, and improved water quality.

Whāinga Tuatahi : Kia whakaora anō te mauri me te mana o Lake Ngā Roto

Objective one: The health and wellbeing of Lake Ngā Roto freshwater is restored

Apakura Rūnanga Trust strongly supports the directive to work collaboratively with mana whenua, Peat Lake Accord partners, landowners within the catchment, and the wider community to realise the shared vision for Lake Ngā Roto. We believe that broad and sustained buy-in from all stakeholders is essential to meaningful progress. Given the wāhi tapu status of the lake, we fully support the recommendation to reclassify existing recreation reserve parcels as scenic reserve and to gazette and classify all other land covered by the Plan accordingly. This shift underscores that the future management of Lake Ngā Roto must prioritise the protection and restoration of its ecological and cultural values.

We also support efforts to protect and restore buffer zones around the lake and the wetland area in the southern catchment, including through land acquisition and encouraging neighbouring landowners to retire, fence, and rewild adjoining low-lying areas. Apakura had previously applied for and secured funding to purchase a property along Banks Road for the purpose of retiring farmland, though we were unable to realise this vision due to limited partnership support.

Apakura supports maintaining the outlet weir, Lake Ngarotoiti diversion channel, and sediment traps in working order unless clear evidence suggests that alternative lake level regimes would

Ngaati Apakura Runanga Trust
61 Rangiaowhia Road
Te Awamutu
admin@ngatiapakura.co.nz
ngatiapakura.co.nz



improve lake health. We reiterate our strong opposition to dredging, as the area is a wāhi tapu. We also support an investigation—alongside the Waikato Regional Council—into the potential transfer of management for the Ōhaupō/Ngā Roto Drainage District (4016) to Waipā District Council and/or a review of drainage rate levies to better manage expectations within the catchment.

We strongly support the protection and restoration of the raupō margins around the lake, particularly in the Main Arrival Zone, to prevent erosion and create important habitat for nesting and feeding. We also endorse promoting best practice farm management across the catchment, including limiting drainage within 200 metres of the lake, fencing of waterways, constructed wetlands, and extensive native revegetation to minimise contaminants, nutrients, and sediment entering the lake.

We encourage greater collaboration between Peat Lake Accord partners, industry stakeholders (such as Fonterra and DairyNZ), and the Waikato River Authority to provide technical, financial, and advisory support to landowners. These partnerships are crucial to advancing sustainable land use and maintaining interventions like swales, wetlands, and sediment traps.

Apakura supports significant controls on land use and drainage across the catchment to prevent peat subsidence and loss, and to improve water quality. We would also welcome opportunities to collaborate with mana whenua, WRC, and research entities to better understand the ideal lake depth and restoration strategies to build long-term resilience.

We support WRC's leadership in implementing in-lake interventions such as pest fish and plant eradication, sediment management, and native macrophyte re-establishment. Continued monitoring and research are critical for identifying and guiding effective management responses. We also support public health measures such as timely health warnings and awareness campaigns.

Ngaati Apakura Runanga Trust
 61 Rangiaowhia Road
 Te Awamutu
admin@ngatiapakura.co.nz
ngatiapakura.co.nz



We urge the Council and stakeholders to enhance community awareness of the lake's condition and restoration needs through onsite and digital education, open days, volunteering initiatives, and regular public reporting.

Apakura supports a proactive approach to biosecurity and disease management and enabling movement of indigenous freshwater species through regular weir maintenance and development of fish passage solutions. We also support the prohibition of commercial harvesting of indigenous fauna, including tuna (eel).

Finally, we reaffirm our strong support for reclassifying Lake Ngā Roto as a Scenic Reserve rather than a Recreation Reserve. This better reflects its tapu (sacred) history and ecological importance. Under the Reserves Act 1977, scenic reserves exist to preserve and protect areas of natural beauty and intrinsic value for future generations, while still allowing for public access, visitor infrastructure, and compatible recreational and educational activities. Lake Ngā Roto is a landscape of regional and local significance, and its value will only increase as conservation efforts continue to restore its mana, health, and mauri.

Whāinga Tuarua : Kia whakaora anō te mauri me te mana o Lake Ngā Roto

Objective Two : Lake Ngā Roto has a thriving terrestrial ecosystem that enhances Waipā's indigenous biodiversity

The Trust strongly supports the implementation of the Lake Ngā Roto Restoration Plan 2021–2031, particularly the planting plan outlined in Appendix 8. We advocate for a focus on:

- Protecting restoration planting through a comprehensive releasing programme, herbaceous weed control, and supplementary planting.

Ngaati Apakura Runanga Trust
61 Rangiaowhia Road
Te Awamutu
admin@ngatiapakura.co.nz
ngatiapakura.co.nz



- Eradicating high-priority weeds that pose a threat to ecosystem integrity, especially those currently at low density and able to be eradicated efficiently.
- Continuing the willow control programme.
- Confirming the goals, methods, monitoring, and reporting requirements of the animal pest control programme, and committing to its full implementation.

Cultural Planting and Restoration

We **strongly support** working with mana whenua to:

- Establish pā harakeke areas.
- Restore culturally significant species such as kukuraho and rākau rongoā for harvest and intergenerational use.
- Retire and revegetate key areas, including:
 - The recently acquired southern block (Lot 6 DP 526717), with kahikatea forest.
 - The currently farmed eastern boundary area (Allot 462 Ngaroto PSH).
 - Swamp forest and swamp margin zones, which are vital for both biodiversity and cultural identity.

Viewshaft Protection

We support the retention and protection of key viewshafts from the lake circuit track to preserve visual connections with the lake and its surrounding features. These include:

- The southern boardwalk.

Ngaati Apakura Runanga Trust
 61 Rangiaowhia Road
 Te Awamutu
admin@ngatiapakura.co.nz
ngatiapakura.co.nz



- The centre of the eastern margin—**especially the protected viewshaft to Taurangamirumiru Pā**, which holds deep cultural significance.
- The northern lake end.
- The Main Arrival Zone (as shown in Figure 8, Section 4 of the Draft Plan).

Pest and Exotic Species Management

We support the progressive removal of exotic trees, particularly shelterbelts, **where they are confirmed to not provide habitat for bats**, and their replacement with native species. We also encourage:

- A proactive, strategic pest eradication programme within and around the reserve to reduce predation pressure on native wildlife.
- Council leadership in establishing clear pest control objectives, with sustainable resourcing to expand current volunteer-led trapping and monitoring efforts. The main pest threats—feral cats, hedgehogs, rats, mice, possums, and mustelids—must be addressed urgently.

Public Access, Education, and Volunteer Support

We **strongly support** encouraging visitors to remain on the lake circuit track to protect native flora and fauna, including sensitive species like banded rail and marsh crake. We also advocate for:

- The exploration of species reintroductions in collaboration with mana whenua and partner organisations—such as mokomoko (geckos and skinks)—where ecologically appropriate.

Ngaati Apakura Runanga Trust
61 Rangiaowhia Road
Te Awamutu
admin@ngatiapakura.co.nz
ngatiapakura.co.nz



- Actively growing a strong, coordinated volunteer base to support planting, pest control, and ecological monitoring.
- Developing avenues for individuals and organisations to contribute funding to restoration initiatives.

Community Engagement and Dog Control

Promoting greater public awareness of the lake’s ecological and cultural values is essential.

We support the use of:

- Interpretive signage, displays, guided walks, field days, and online information to engage visitors.
- Education programmes and enforcement to increase compliance with the Dog Control Bylaw, particularly ensuring dogs remain on-lead to minimise their impact on vulnerable native species.

These policies and actions are critical for restoring and enhancing the terrestrial ecosystem of Wairoto and improving indigenous biodiversity in Waipā. While it is important that Council protects and maintains previous investments in planting and weed control, it is equally critical that it accelerates the retirement, fencing, and revegetation of all Council-owned land in the area. This work will require external funding and a thriving volunteer programme. Apakura Rūnanga Trust looks forward to working in partnership to achieve this vision.

Ngaati Apakura Runanga Trust
 61 Rangiaowhia Road
 Te Awamutu
admin@ngatiapakura.co.nz
ngatiapakura.co.nz



Whāinga Tuatoru: Ka tū ngā mana whenua Objective Three: Mana whenua's connections with Lake Ngā Roto are recognised and provided for and mātauranga Māori and tikanga are integrated into the governance and management of Lake Ngā Roto

Apakura Rūnanga Trust **strongly supports** the Draft Wairato Reserve Management Plan and specifically endorses the implementation of the *Lake Ngā Roto Restoration Plan 2021–2031*.

Key priorities include:

Restoration and Biodiversity

- Implementing Appendix 8's planting plan with a focus on:
 - Protecting planting through weed control, releasing, and supplementary planting.
 - Eradicating high-risk and low-density weeds.
 - Continuing willow and animal pest control programmes with clear goals, monitoring, and reporting.
- Retiring and revegetating key areas, including:
 - Southern block (Lot 6 DP526717) and eastern farmed boundary (Allot 462).
 - Swamp forest and margin zones, using native species (e.g., kahikatea).
- Restoring culturally significant species: pā harakeke, kukuraho, and rākau rongoā.
- Maintaining viewshafts (e.g., to Taurangamirumiru Pā) from the lake circuit track.
- Removing exotic trees (where no bat habitat exists) and replacing them with natives.
- Supporting volunteer-led and community-driven ecological restoration.

Cultural Recognition and Kaitiakitanga

Ngaati Apakura Runanga Trust
 61 Rangiaowhia Road
 Te Awamutu
admin@ngatiapakura.co.nz
ngatiapakura.co.nz



Restoring the Name Wairoto

Apakura Rūnanga Trust **strongly supports** the restoration of the traditional name **Wairoto** for the lake and all lands covered under this plan. This is not a symbolic gesture, but a necessary act of cultural restoration and accuracy. Our **kaumātua have clearly and consistently expressed strong support** for returning to the name **Wairoto**, which is the original ingoa tuku iho (ancestral name) of this significant taonga.

The term **Ngā Roto**, while widely used today, simply means “the lakes” and refers to the many lakes that once existed across the area. It is **generic and does not reflect the distinct identity, mana, or cultural significance** of this particular lake. In contrast, **Wairoto is specific, historic, and deeply rooted in the whakapapa and identity of mana whenua.**

Restoring the name Wairoto:

- **Reaffirms the historical and spiritual connection** of mana whenua to the lake.
- Enables mana whenua to **exercise their kaitiakitanga and cultural responsibilities** more meaningfully.
- **Restores the mana** of the site and acknowledges its wāhi tapu status, especially in relation to events such as **Te Pakanga o Hingakākā.**
- Ensures the lake is no longer misrepresented or lost among other water bodies under the generic “Ngā Roto” label.
- Aligns with national and local efforts to **honour Te Tiriti o Waitangi and uphold te reo Māori** as a living language.

We urge Waipā District Council to initiate the required **Reserves Act process to formally change the name** and to work in partnership with mana whenua throughout the renaming, interpretation, and public education process. This action would be a meaningful step toward genuine bicultural partnership and environmental restoration.

Ngaati Apakura Runanga Trust
 61 Rangiaowhia Road
 Te Awamutu
admin@ngatiapakura.co.nz
ngatiapakura.co.nz



Education, Enforcement and Engagement

- Promote public education through signage, guided walks, events, and online content.
- Encourage visitors to stay on track and comply with dog control rules to protect flora and fauna.
- Explore funding avenues and expand the volunteer base.
- Support external pest control in surrounding halo areas.
- Ensure any development respects the historic and cultural context, in collaboration with mana whenua and Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga.

Final Summary – Apakura Rūnanga Trust Submission

Apakura Rūnanga Trust wishes to acknowledge and commend Waipā District Council for the significant effort in preparing the Draft Lake Ngā Roto Reserve Management Plan. We are broadly supportive of the kaupapa and direction of the Plan, and wish to reiterate the following key points:

Areas of Strong Support:

- **Restoration of the Lake's Original Name – Wairoto:** Our kaumātua strongly support restoring the traditional name *Wairoto*, as this reflects our historical, cultural, and ancestral relationship with the lake. The current name "Ngā Roto" is generic and refers to a number of lakes. Restoring the specific name *Wairoto* is essential to reasserting the mana of the whenua and re-establishing the unique identity of this taonga. *We strongly urge Council to proceed with the formal name change as a priority.*

Ngaati Apakura Runanga Trust
 61 Rangiaowhia Road
 Te Awamutu
admin@ngatiapakura.co.nz
ngatiapakura.co.nz



- **Integration of Mātauranga Māori and Partnership with Mana Whenua:** We support the Plan's commitment to embedding mātauranga Māori and tikanga into governance and management, and creating living partnerships with mana whenua through co-governance, cultural planting initiatives, employment in restoration, and recognition of wāhi tapu and wāhi tūpuna.
- **Ecological Restoration and Revitalisation:** We support the extensive restoration actions proposed to heal the mauri of Wairoto, including replanting kahikatea forest, establishing swamp forest ecosystems, and halting peat subsidence. We endorse the integrated efforts with WRC, Peat Lakes Accord and mana whenua, and look forward to contributing to the ecological transformation of the area.
- **Mahinga Kai and Native Species Recovery:** The Trust supports restoration that enables the return of culturally significant species such as tuna and kawau, and ensures safe and meaningful access to mahinga kai sites for our people.

Areas of Concern or Opposition:

- **Commercial and Recreational Activities That May Compromise Cultural or Environmental Values:** We *oppose* any future proposals that may promote or enable commercialisation or increased recreational access to the detriment of cultural, ecological or spiritual values.
- **Lack of Specificity Around Co-Governance:** While the Plan includes strong language on partnership and involvement, there is still a need for clearer pathways toward genuine co-governance arrangements, with mana whenua represented as decision-makers, not only advisors or stakeholders.

Ngaati Apakura Runanga Trust
61 Rangiaowhia Road
Te Awamutu
admin@ngatiapakura.co.nz
ngatiapakura.co.nz



We remain committed to being active kaitiaki of Wairoto, and to working with Council and the wider community to restore the mana and mauri of this treasured lake. Mā te mahi tahi, ka taea e tātou te whakahoki mai i te oranga o Wairoto mō ngā uri whakatipu.

Nā mātou noa, nā

Apakura Rūnanga Trust

Ngaati Apakura Runanga Trust
61 Rangiaowhia Road
Te Awamutu
admin@ngatiapakura.co.nz
ngatiapakura.co.nz

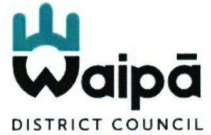


References

- Coromandel-Wander, H. (2013). *Koorero tuku iho: Waahine maaori voices from the embers of Rangiaowhia*. Palmerston north: Massey University.
- Joseph, R. (2013). *Apakura mana motuhake report for Ngāti Apakura claimants and the waitangi tribunal for te rohe pōtae inquiry (Wai 898)*. Wellington.
- Maki-Midwoord, H. (2016). *A brief history of Kaipaka*. Te Awamutu: Waipa District Council.

Friday 18th May

Lake Ngā Roto Recreation Reserve Management Plan review



Feedback closes: 5pm, Friday 18 April

Your details

Full name: Elizabeth Eden.

Organisation: (if applicable) Te Poho Roto Payers + Brongia Ward Committee

Address: [REDACTED]

Email: [REDACTED]

Phone: [REDACTED]

For office use only:

Submission No.

Privacy statement: Feedback (including names and contact details) may be provided in full to elected members. Feedback (including names but not contact details) may be made available to the public at our office and on our website. Your personal information may also be used for the administration of the process, including informing you of the outcome of the feedback. All information collected will be held by Waipā District Council, 101 Bank Street, Te Awamutu with submitters having the right to access and correct personal information. View the full privacy statement at waipadc.govt.nz/privacy-statement.

☒ I acknowledge that I have read the privacy statement and am happy to proceed.

Te whakakitenga | Vision

Do you agree with the Vision?

The life-sustaining capacity of Lake Ngā Roto is brought back to life and protected and the wāhi tapu (sacred site) status acknowledged so that the Waikato and Waipā Rivers, indigenous species, mana whenua and communities can flourish.

☒ Yes

☐ Partially

☐ No

If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why:

There is no mention of recreational use however which concerns us.

Ngā whāinga me ngā kaupapa here | Objectives and policies

Do you support Objective One and the draft policies to achieve this objective?

View on pages 36 - 38

☐ Yes

☒ Partially

☐ No

If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why:

pg 188 1'2 + pg 190.

We do not agree with the reclassification from Recreation Reserve to Scenic reserve. This is an intrinsic change of prioritisation from the people to the place.

We do not agree to a change of classification and want the lake to stay as a recreational reserve.

Do you support Objective Two and the draft policies to achieve this objective?

View on pages 39 - 40

☐ Yes

☒ Partially

☐ No

If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why:

We would like to see more Viewshafts the plan includes 5 all on the South + South East, there should be at least one on the North side and one on the West as well.

Do you support Objective Three and the draft policies to achieve this objective?

View on pages 41 - 42

☒ Yes

☐ Partially

☐ No

If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why:

Do you support Objective Four and the draft policies to achieve this objective?

View on pages 43 - 46

☐ Yes

☒ Partially

☐ No

If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why:

This contradicts the plan to change the classification from recreational to scenic reserve.

Pg 196 (4.12b) - Putting the DROS on leaselines to negotiate with Mana Whenua is unreasonable and effectively gives the power of Veto to an unelected body able to supersede the public interest + Amenity, (4.12d) again enables a veto power.

pg 197 - (4.18) + (4.2) legal substances ~~and drones~~ should not be prohibited rather discouraged + drones should have a permit system not banned.

Management focus and expected outcomes

Do you agree with the proposed priorities that have been identified for the next ten years and the proposed outcomes that we want to achieve in thirty years?

View on pages 50 - 53

☐ Yes

☒ Partially

☐ No

If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why:

Table 2 - There should be more view shafts. (pg 201) to accommodate the pleasure of the current 50,000 visitors annually in addition PA should be accessible to all visitors. Unity should be encouraged to bring understanding and appreciation to those outside of Mana Whenua.

Other feedback and comments

Please provide feedback on any other aspects of the plan that you'd like us to consider

The Overall plan for Lake Ngā Roto is well thought out and once delivered will be a jewel to the surrounds and the public Amenity of the area.

We need to be mindful of not excluding any part of the public whose taxes pay for the maintenance. Part of the vision should be to include and unite people and encourage recreational activity and healthy living.

Hearings

Do you want to speak to your submission at the hearings?

Council will be holding a hearings on the Draft Lake Ngā Roto Reserve Management Plan (date to be confirmed).

☒ Yes ☐ No

Would you like to stay updated with the progress of the project?

☒ Yes ☐ No

Submissions can be:



Online:

waipadc.govt.nz/ngarotoreview



Emailed to:

haveyoursay@waipadc.govt.nz

Subject: Ngā Roto Recreation RMP review



Posted to:

Waipā District Council Private Bag
2402

Te Awamutu 3840

Attn: Aidan Kirkby-McLeod



Delivering it to Council offices:

Waipā District Council 101 **OR** Waipā District Council 23 Wilson
Bank Street Street Cambridge

Te Awamutu

Attn: Aidan Kirkby-McLeod

Attn: Aidan Kirkby-McLeod

0800 WAIPA DC (924 723) | waipadc.govt.nz | /WaipaDistrictCouncil

APPENDIX 2

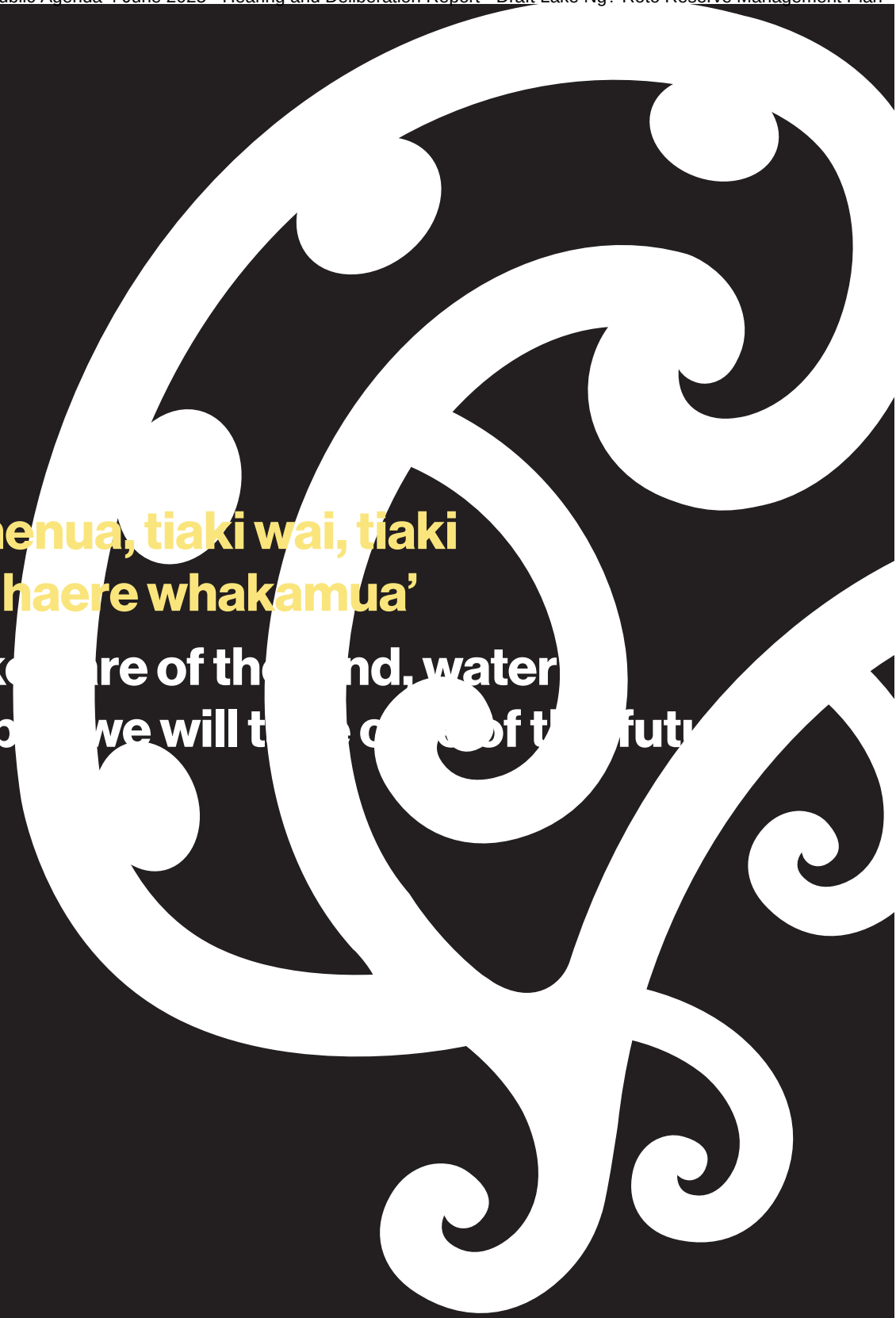
Draft Lake Ngā Roto Reserve Management Plan (document ID 11373377)

LAKE NGĀ ROTO

RESERVE MANAGEMENT PLAN

DRAFT FEBRUARY 2025

Wāipā
DISTRICT COUNCIL



**‘Tiaki whenua, tiaki wai, tiaki
tāngata, haere whakamua’**

**‘If we take care of the land, water
and people we will take care of the future’**

He hirahira o Lake Ngā Roto : The importance of Lake Ngā Roto

Lake Ngā Roto, the largest peat lake in Waipā, is a taonga tuku iho where:

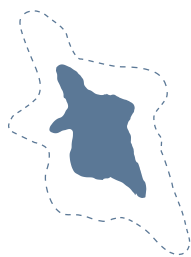
- Iwi and hapū, including current mana whenua Ngāti Apakura and Ngāti Hikairo, lived, raised families, sourced food, died and buried in the environs for centuries prior to European settlement. Mana whenua left the area after the Waikato Land Wars.
- Many Māori died during the Battle of Hingakākā and where Uenuku¹ was stored for safe keeping and later discovered and returned to iwi
- Mana whenua can maintain and share mātauranga Māori, fulfil roles as kaitiaki to care for wai Māori, wāhi tapu and the lake itself, as well as, pursuing traditional and contemporary activities
- There's a significant opportunity to improve water quality before it flows into the Waipā and Waikato Rivers and restore a peat lake habitat of national significance
- Numerous birds, including threatened species, either permanently or seasonally roost or transit along the Taiea te Taiao Maungatautari to Pirongia Ecological Corridor
- Volunteering can connect people to nature and each other
- Local clubs and event organisers provide sport and recreation opportunities for our community
- 50,000 plus people visit per annum to walk or cycle the lake circuit
- Locals and visitors can picnic, learn about the history and ecology of the environment and freedom camp

¹ Uenuku, a carving of the god of the rainbow thought to date from about 1400, is a significant taonga for Waikato-Tainui



E Karanga Ake Nei : The Call to Action

92%

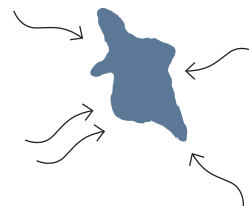


92 percent of **Waikato's wetland extent has been lost** since 1840 making Waikato's peat lakes unique and important

Lake Ngā Roto's surface is now **60 percent smaller²** than its original size as a result of agricultural drainage activities in the early 1900's



Only **0.51 percent** of the 1,846 hectare catchment now **remains in vegetation**; almost all of the catchment is pastoral dairy farms and dry stock pasture



Vegetation clearance and agriculture has resulted in **nutrients, sediments and contaminants** flowing into and severely degrading the lake



Lake health has continued to **deteriorate** despite 30 plus years of lake margin restoration and some catchment restoration initiatives



Water quality is now **exceedingly poor** – the lake is hypertrophic³, below National Bottom Lines for 7 attributes and facing hysteresis⁴



There are **frequent algal blooms** dominated by blue-green algae



Native fish have mostly been replaced by **exotic pest fish**



Native submerged macrophytes (plants that grow in freshwater) have completely **disappeared**



Extreme health risk warnings about lake water contact are regularly issued by Health New Zealand Te Whatu Ora's Public Health Unit for the summer period



External and internal **nutrient, contaminant and sediment loads, pest fish and climate change effects** are predicted to **exacerbate issues** unless significant action is taken



Tackling this challenge will **demand substantial resources**, navigating **unknown solutions**, and **aligning diverse stakeholder interests**

² Reduced from 220 hectares to 89 hectares

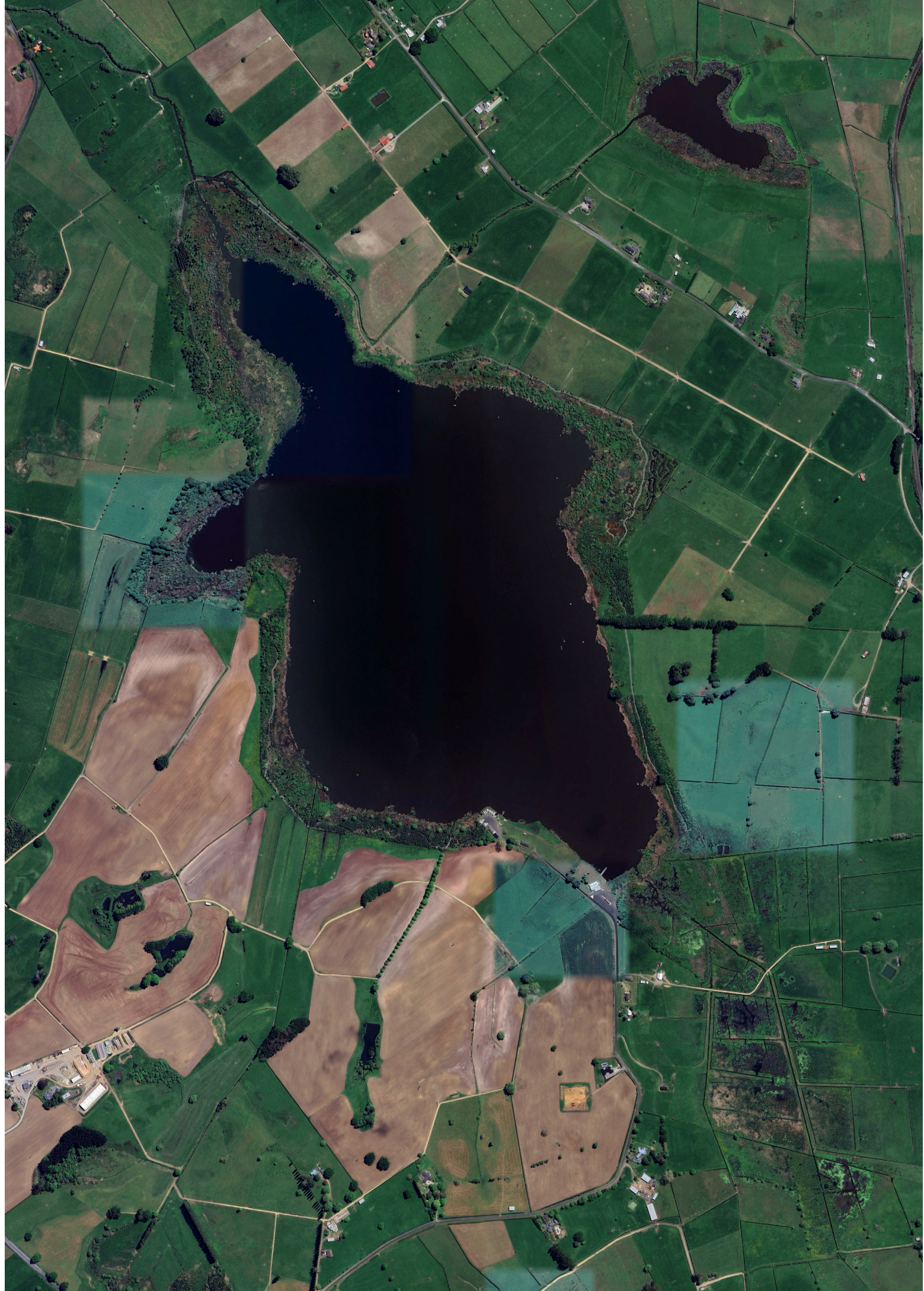
³ Meaning it has excessively high levels of phosphorus and nitrogen

⁴ Meaning it has "flipped" into a suspended algae/phytoplankton-dominated state, and this self-perpetuating cycle of internal nutrient recycling will continue even if external sources of pollution are reduced

Mihi : Forward

(to be provided after public consultation)





Ngā Kaupapa – Contents

He hirahira o Lake Ngā Roto : The importance of Lake Ngā Roto	3
E Karanga Ake Nei : The Call to Action	4
Mihi : Forward	5
Structure of this Plan	8
Wāhanga Tuatahi : Kupu Whakataki	
Section One : Reserve Management Plan Overview	9
Purpose of this plan	10
Process followed in developing this Plan	10
Land (and water) covered by this Plan	10
Planning context – what this Plan is and isn't	13
Wāhanga Tuarua : He Tirohanga Whānui o Lake Ngā Roto	
Section Two : An Overview of Lake Ngā Roto	15
I ngā rā o mua he hokinga mahara Looking back	16
Ko Lake Ngā Roto he taonga tuku iho Lake Ngā Roto is a living treasure	20
Current state and causes	27
Key challenges and opportunities to restore Lake Ngā Roto	27
Future actions	29
Wāhanga Tuatōru : Te Ara Whakamua	
Section Three : Moving Forward	33
Te whakakitenga Vision	35
Ngā mātāpono Management principles	35
Ngā whāinga me ngā kaupapa here Objectives, policies and explanation	36
Wāhanga Tuawhā : Te Kōkiritanga	
Section Four : Delivering the Vision	47
Development of Lake Ngā Roto zones	48
Management focus and expected outcomes	50
Monitoring and reporting	54
Wāhanga Tuarima : Ngā Kupu Māori	
Section 5 : Glossary of Te Reo Māori used throughout this Plan	57
Glossary of te reo Māori used throughout this Plan	58
Wāhanga Tuaono : Rārangi Pukapuka	
Section 6 : References	59
References	60
Appendices	
Appendix 1 Process followed to review the Lake Ngā Roto Reserve Management Plan 2009	62
Appendix 2 Summary of key documents that guide decisions to protect and restore Lake Ngā Roto	63
Appendix 3 Ownership, administration and classification of land covered by this Plan	67
Appendix 4 Reserve acquisition and governance timeline	68
Appendix 5 Overview of Pā surrounding Lake Ngā Roto	69
Appendix 6 Lake Ngā Roto freshwater attribute targets and baselines	70
Appendix 7 Lake Ngā Roto nitrogen, phosphorous, E.coli and sediment risk areas	71
Appendix 8 Restoration planting plan	75

Structure of this Plan

- 01/** **Section one** outlines the purpose and scope of this Plan and the process that was followed to develop it.
- 02/** **Section two** provides contextual information about Lake Ngā Roto. It discusses the location of the reserve, its history and its many values. It outlines the importance of Lake Ngā Roto and highlights and explains the critical state of the lake's health and what is needed to protect and restore Lake Ngā Roto.
- 03/** **Section three** sets out the long-term vision for Lake Ngā Roto, principles that will guide all future decisions, and a framework for how the vision will be realised. Explanations for the goals and policies are provided to explain the rationale for the approach taken.
- 04/** **Section four** sets out the how each zone within the reserve will be developed, Council's management focus for the next 10 years, the desired long-term outcomes and how Council will measure and report on progress towards the vision.
- 05/** **Section five** contains a glossary.
- 06/** **Section six** captures the documents that have informed this Plan.



01/

Wāhanga Tuatahi : Kupu Whakataki

Section One : Reserve Management Plan Overview

Purpose of this plan

This Plan sets the long-term vision for Lake Ngā Roto and a framework to guide Waipā District Council's (Council) decisions and actions to achieve the vision. It is the overarching tool to achieve integrated management of the reserve, through conserving historical, archaeological, cultural, social and ecological values, while positively supporting a range of recreation values.

It also provides an opportunity to focus a broader discussion about the health of the freshwater within the Waikato and Waipā catchments specifically on to this taonga tuku iho (treasure handed down from our ancestors); to create a plan that will help drive critical actions in the lake, on reserve land and on privately owned land within Lake Ngā Roto's catchment to protect and restore the health and wellbeing of the lake and its margins.

To provide context for the management framework outlined in this Plan and to support greater understanding of what's needed going forward, this Plan also explains the history and importance of Lake Ngā Roto, its current ecological state and restoration initiatives to date, and the roles and responsibilities of all of the parties involved in protecting and restoring this regionally and nationally significant peat lake and surrounding wetlands.

Process followed in developing this Plan

Council worked with mana whenua representatives from Ngāti Apakura and Ngāti Hikairo, Waipā Peat Lake and Wetland Accord (Peat Lake Accord) partner organisations, lessees, Sport Waikato and landowners within the catchment to review the Lake Ngā Roto Reserve Management Plan 2009. The process followed to develop this Plan also provided for our communities to provide input and feedback in accordance with section 41 of the Reserves Act 1977. Key actions and timeframes are set out in Appendix 1. A Focus Group comprising representatives from iwi and partner organisations, two Councillors and a Pirongia Ward Committee member met throughout the project to discuss the process and the decisions relating to this Plan.

A wide range of legislation and policy documents and scientific reports (see references set out in Section 6 and the summary of key legislation and documents is included in Appendix 2) have informed the plan.

Land (and water) covered by this Plan

This Plan covers the eight land parcels classified as recreation reserves under the Reserves Act comprising

the lake and large margins that were included in the Lake Ngā Roto Reserve Management Plan 2009, as well as the paper road encircling all but one of the land parcels and the land south of the lake that Council acquired in 2018 to retire from grazing and revegetate to improve the health of the lake (see Figure 1).

The almost 175 hectares has been primarily administered under the Reserves Act as a recreation reserve since the late seventies and early eighties (Appendix 3). The water body makes up fifty-one percent (89 hectares) of the Council-administered land covered by this Plan.

Over recent years Council has also been exploring with mana whenua and partner organisations how more land could be acquired to protect and restore the lake; with a focus on the southern sub-catchment. Any additional land acquired by Council, or transferred to Council to administer, to achieve the vision set out in this Plan will be administered in accordance with this Plan.

While this Plan doesn't cover approximately ninety percent of the land in Lake Ngā Roto's catchment, nor the lake inflows running through this land (see Figure 2), which are in private ownership, it does set out how Council intends to work with these landowners and partner organisations to achieve the vision for Lake Ngā Roto.

KEY:
LAND COVERED BY THIS PLAN

 Land covered by this plan

CLASSIFICATION

 Recreation Reserve

**LAND OWNERSHIP /
MANAGEMENT**

-  Waipā District Council
-  Crown
-  Road Reserve - formed
-  Road Reserve - paper road
-  Other / PRIVATE

**LAND PARCEL LEGAL
DESCRIPTIONS:**

- 1** Allot 481 Ngaroto PSH - 107.500 ha
- 2** Allot 461 Ngaroto PSH - 17.5000 ha
- 3** Allot 462 Ngaroto PSH - 16.0000 ha
- 4** Allot 454 Ngaroto PSH - 0.9156 ha
- 5** Allot 460 Ngaroto PSH - 0.1241 ha
- 6** Section 1 Block XIV Hamilton SD - 1.9273 ha
- 7** Section 2 Block XIV Hamilton SD - 1.5631 ha
- 8** Parcel ID 4586983 - 5.6393 ha
- 9** Part Parcel ID 4604108 - 10.5836 ha
- 10** Lot 6 DP 526717 - 9.6792 ha
- 11** Allot 54A Mangapiko PSH - 3.5612 ha

SCALE

0 500m

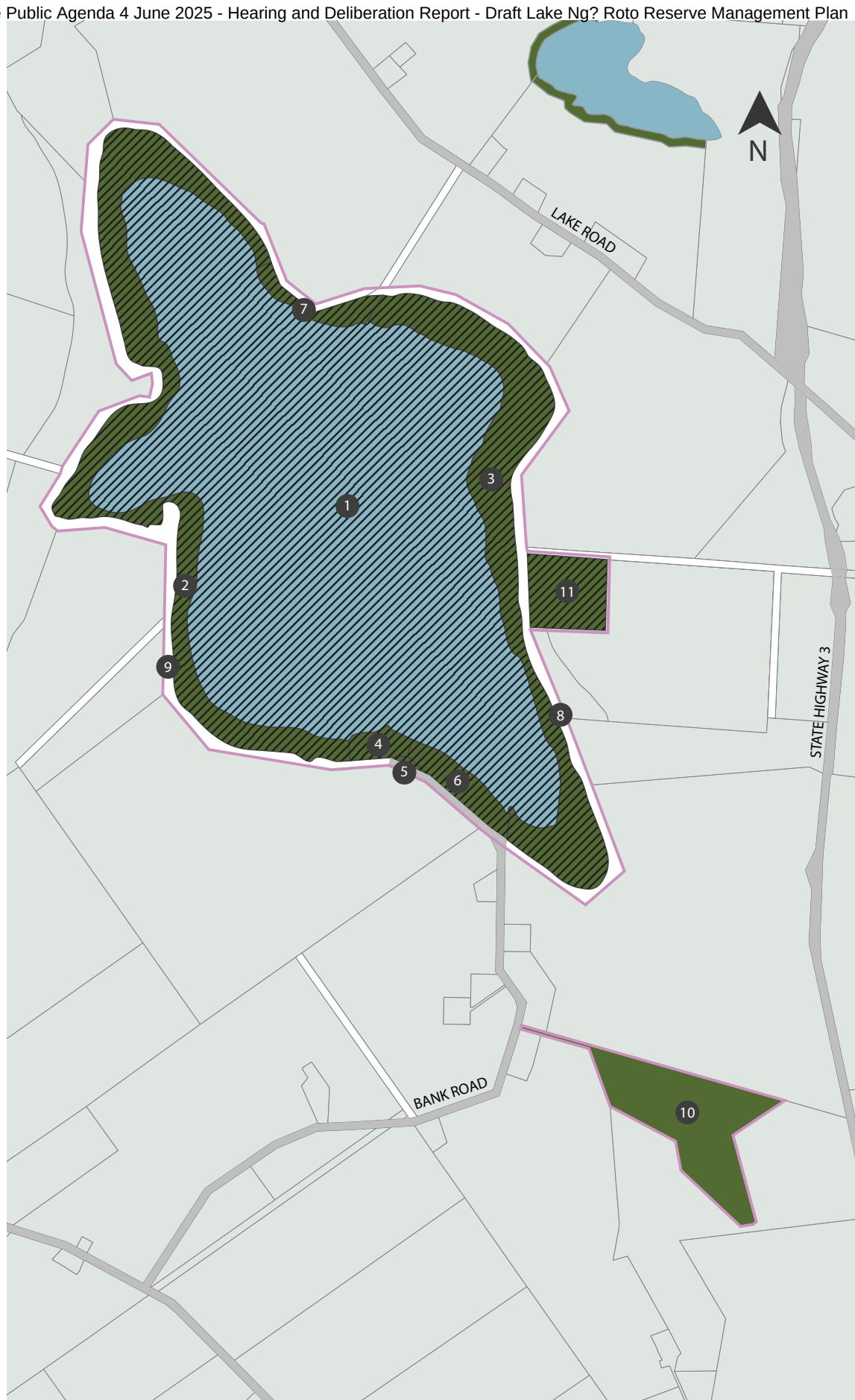


Figure 1 Map showing extent of land covered by this Plan

KEY:
STREAM CATCHMENT SIZE

 <10 hectares

 10 - 50 ha

 50 - 100 ha

 100 - 200 ha

 >200 ha

 Lakes and waterbodies

 Lake Catchment
Boundary

SCALE

0  1km

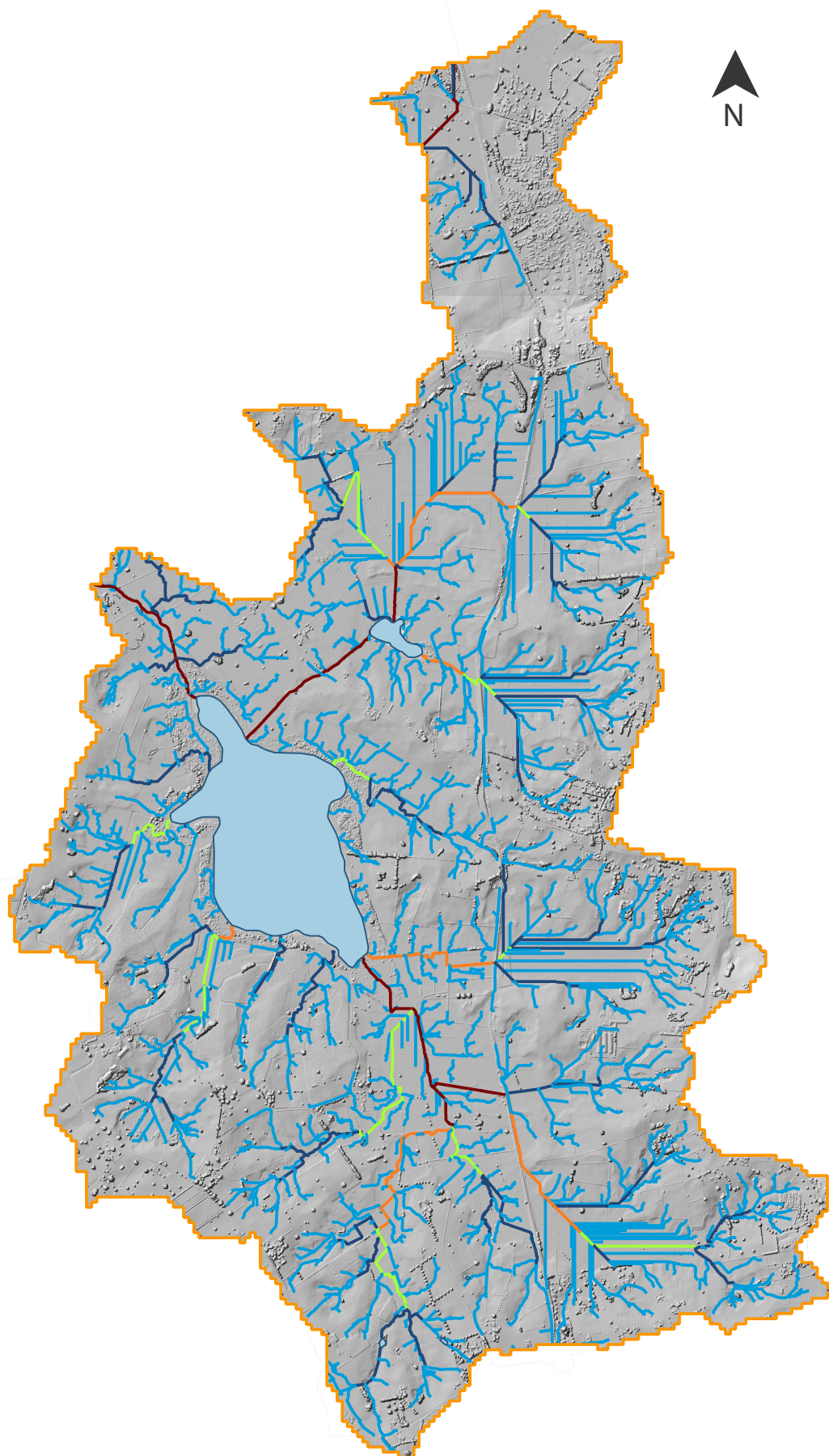


Figure 2 Map showing extent of Lake Ngā Roto's catchment and the stream catchment size⁵

⁵ Created by Environment Innovation and Strategy Ltd by using WRC Lidar and plotting using topographic wetness index

Planning context – what this Plan is and isn't

This Plan has been developed under the Reserves Act, which sets out the functions and powers of Council in managing the reserve and a range of policies in relation to the administration of reserves generally and more specifically for individual reserve classifications. In relation to management plans, the Act states:

- The management plan shall provide for and ensure the use, enjoyment, maintenance, protection, and preservation, as the case may require, and, to the extent the administering body's resources permit, the development, as appropriate, of the reserve for the purposes for which it is classified, and shall incorporate and ensure compliance with the principles set out in sections 17, 18, 19, 20, 21, 22 and 23, as the case may be, of this Act for a reserve of that classification (section 41(3))
- The administering body of any reserve shall keep its management plan under continuous review, so that, subject to subsection (3) of this section, the plan is adapted to changing circumstances or in accordance with increased knowledge (section 41(4))

This Plan directs Council actions on the land it administers in accordance with the Reserves Act and aims to inspire private landowners to take action to protect and restore Lake Ngā Roto on their land which is governed by the policies and rules set out in the Waikato Regional Policy Statement, Waikato Regional Plan and Waipā District Plan.

Importantly, the Waikato Regional Council (WRC) is progressing Plan Change 1 – Waikato and Waipā River Catchments which seeks to contribute to restoration and protection of lakes by reducing diffuse and point source discharges entering lake catchments; and implementing a tailored lake-by-lake approach over the next 10-years to improve the management of land use activities in lake catchments. For Lake Ngā Roto, this will likely include developing a Peat Lakes Freshwater Management Unit Action Plan and/or a Lake Ngā Roto Freshwater Management Action Plan to identify and prioritise in-lake actions and actions on privately owned land within the catchment required to achieve targets set for peat lake attributes. This Plan will hopefully inform WRC's position on these documents.

This Plan is a high-level policy and direction setting

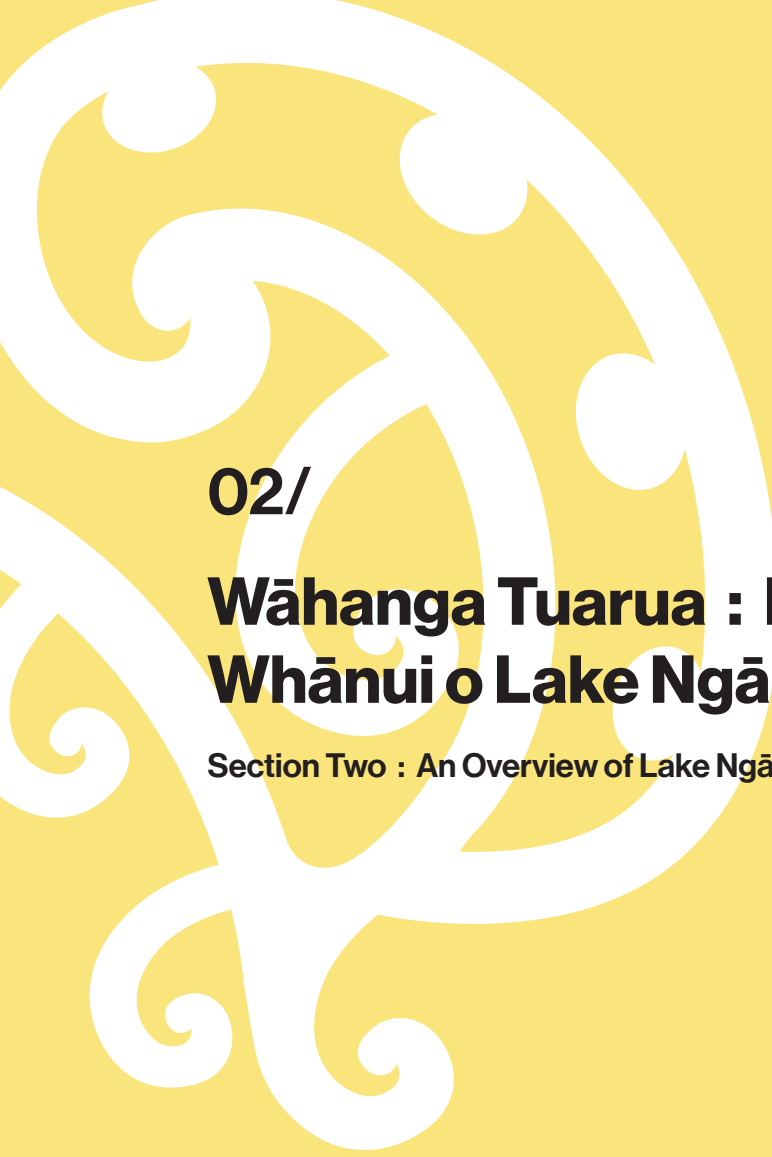
document rather than a detailed operational plan and/or concept plan. Funding for actions contained within, and enabled by, this Plan will be considered and confirmed through Council and WRC's Long Term Plan and Annual Plan. Alternative public and private funding sources will also be required to implement actions within desired timeframes.

The key statutory and planning documents that influence and are influenced by this Plan are set out in Figure 3.

This Plan doesn't duplicate rules and information that are provided in other policy documents or bylaws, but rather refers to where the relevant information can be found. For example, when referring to bylaws in this Plan, we reference the relevant current bylaw at the time of writing this Plan. It should be noted that bylaws are required to be reviewed on a regular basis and may be updated during the lifetime of this Plan. Please always check the council website for the most current version of the relevant bylaw.

Figure 3 Key statutory and planning documents that influence and are influenced by the RMP





02/

Wāhanga Tuarua : He Tirohanga Whānui o Lake Ngā Roto

Section Two : An Overview of Lake Ngā Roto

I ngā rā o mua he hokinga mahara | Looking back

Geology and formation

Lake Ngā Roto was formed around 19,000 years ago after the Waikato River abandoned its course through the Hinuera Valley to the Firth of Thames and flowed into the Hamilton basin. Vast quantities of alluvial sands and gravels up to 80 metres thick in places were deposited in a broad fan that blocked the mouths of valleys creating lakes behind them.

As the climate warmed vegetation grew across the alluvial plains and around the lakes. Wet hollows and lake margins supported swamp forests and peat forming vegetation. As peat grew and expanded it encroached on the lake margins separating the lake from surface water inflows. Consequently, nutrients were limited, and lake water became acidic, supporting plants and animals which thrived in this peat lake environment.

More recent influences from Lake Taupo eruptions changed the landscape, felling and burying forest in volcanic ash and pumice and altering drainage patterns.

Mana whenua historic occupation

The area of Lake Ngā Roto is steeped in ancient history. It was one of the first areas to be settled post the migration of Māori inland from Kāwhia (circa 1400-1500AD). Over the following two to three hundred years, resident iwi, Ngāti Apakura, Ngāti Hikairo and Ngāti Puhiawe, resided permanently and seasonally on hilltop pā and human-made island pā. They cultivated their own food as well as using the nearby forest and lake as a food source and seasonally migrated to and from Kāwhia.

Each whānau, hapū or iwi would effectively have had its own catchment area which would have been rigorously monitored, maintained and protected.

The lakes and giant kahikatea forests were a rich veritable warehouse of medicine and staples of the Māori diet including tuna, karaka and other berries, edible rhizomes and all manner of forest and aquatic birdlife. Being near the vast Rukuhia, Mangakaware and Moanatuatua wetlands, Lake Ngā Roto was a kāinga or community of relatively plentiful means with many near and distantly related hapū sharing the rich abundance that area had to offer.

Some parts of the wetlands were navigable by canoe and others only by foot. Parts of swamps would have been fortified defensively or even as refuges by blocking access-ways or by natural traps such as quicksand or mud. They were also utilised as safe storage areas whereby tribal heirlooms such as carvings might be secreted away from prospective marauders.

It was from Taurangamirumiru Pā at Lake Ngā Roto that sisters Reitū and Reipae, two puhi ariki (women of high rank), migrated to the north and married well-known chiefs from Ngā Puhi, establishing important connections between Tainui and Ngā Puhi.

The late 1700's and early 1800's saw a period of turmoil and warfare that included raid and counter raid between tribal factions and inter-iwi conflicts with external iwi in the North Island. Because of another dispute at the end of this period a large force of Ngāti Toa warriors and allies, including iwi from Rotorua and Te Urewera believed to total 7,000 warriors, converged south of Lake Ngā Roto to engage in battle with 1,600 warriors from the Waikato, Tai Hau-a-uru and Maniapoto people of the Tainui confederation. This battle was to be known as the Battle of Hingakākā, said to have been named after the red cloaks made of kākā feathers worn by the fallen chiefs. The large loss of life and resulting tapu over the area influenced the settlement of the Lake Ngā Roto area for many years. During the battle, Uenuku, a revered taonga (treasure) of the Tainui people, was buried for safe keeping.

The iwi remained in occupation until the departure of Ngāti Hikairo to Kāwhia and Ngāti Apakura to the Taupō region because of the land wars and land confiscation from 1864.

Lake Ngā Roto today is a place of great significance for Ngāti Apakura and Ngāti Hikairo.

Human-induced land use changes affecting Lake Ngā Roto

Since 1864 the majority of land within Lake Ngā Roto's catchment has been converted to pastoral dairy farms and dry stock pasture. Figure 4 shows the current land use. The cumulative effects of the associated land management practices, which have included almost complete indigenous vegetation clearance, hydrological changes through drainage, regular tillage, high fertiliser use, shallow rooted pasture species selection, grazing practices such as high stocking rates and winter grazing of wet areas and effluent dispersal, have resulted in:

- significant lake size and depth reductions,
- water with high nutrient, sediment and bacteria loads entering the lake leading to nutrient levels above critical baselines,
- reduced groundwater levels and peatland shrinkage, and
- oxygen depletion.

These impacts have been devastating on Lake Ngā Roto's health and wellbeing.

KEY:
CURRENT LAND USE OF CATCHMENT

- Grazed - dairy
- Grazed - non-dairy
- Introduced Forest
- Natural Forest
- Cropland - Annual
- Cropland - Orchards and vineyards (perennial)
- Other Grazed Pasture
- Built-up, Urban and Commercial
- Wetland
- DOC Public Conservation Land
- Lakes and waterbodies
- Streams & Rivers
- Lake Catchment Boundary

SCALE
0 1km

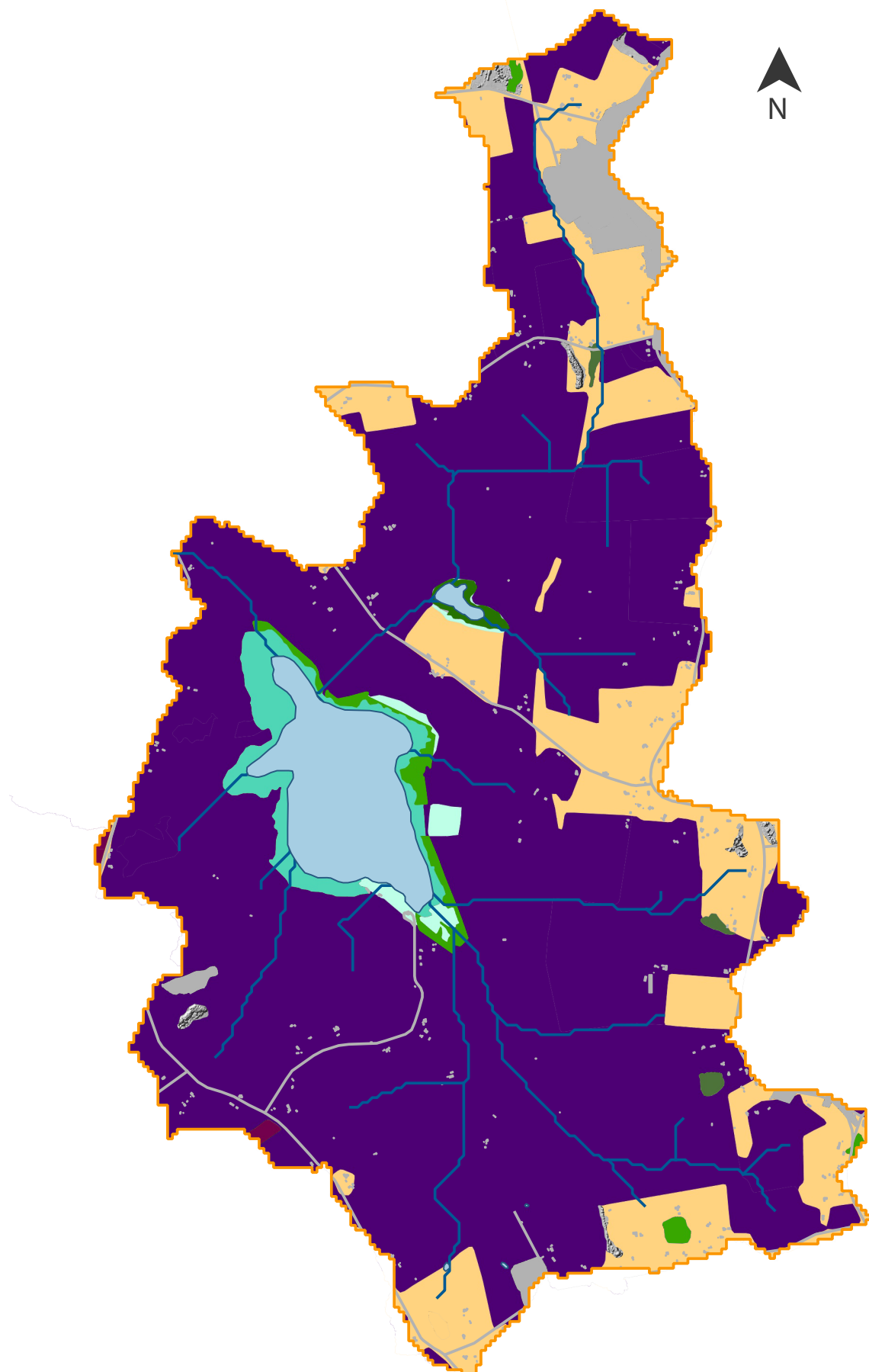


Figure 4 Current land use within Lake Ngā Roto's catchment ⁶

⁶ Created by Environment Innovation and Strategy Ltd. Sources: Ministry for Environment LUCAS NZ Land Use Map, DOC Public Conservation Land

Reserve acquisition and historic management

Te Awamutu Borough Council initially administered a small area of Crown land adjoining Bank Road, allowing public access to Lake Ngā Roto. The Department of Lands and Survey managed the remaining Crown land, including the lakebed. In 1974, this land, and additional Crown land, was transferred to Waipā County Council administration. Classification and vesting conditions required that in addition to providing for recreation, areas of historic and archaeological significance would be preserved and wildlife habitat protected. The Council also sought control over the lake's waters to manage increasing recreational use. However, opposition from conservation groups led to the establishment of a collaborative advisory body for balanced lake management.

In 1979, a management plan for the lake was completed, and by 1982, the Waipa County Council was granted control of the foreshore, lakebed, and water. The following year they approved the Lake Ngā Roto Bylaws. Subsequent governance changes occurred in 1984 and 1989, including the reclassification of land and the transfer of management responsibilities to Waipā District Council following the Local Government Review. The management plan was reviewed in 2009 and in 2019 the Council acquired an additional land parcel (Lot 6 DP526717) to extend lake management efforts.

The Waikato-Tainui Raupatu Claims (Waikato River) Settlement Act 2010 and the Ngā wai o Maniapoto (Waipā River) Act 2012 both require Council to ensure the highest level of recognition be given to the restoration and protection of the Waikato River and that a 'whole of river' approach be taken. These Acts apply to Lake Ngā Roto and its catchment.

A full timeline is set out in Appendix 4.

Restoration activities to date

Prior to 1989, the Waipā County Council erected boundary fences using the Government subsidised work schemes, controlled nuisance weeds, upgraded the foreshore/wharf (1991), erected a public toilet, maintained the foreshore in front of the clubhouse and controlled nuisance plants in the lake.

By 1994 concerns were being registered about degrading

water quality and impacts on recreational activities, a loss of water bird habitat around the lake margins and management of the lake levels. In response to the issues raised and with the resource consent to operate the outlet weir due to expire in 1995, Council discussed the long-term preservation of Lake Ngā Roto with a range of agencies, iwi, landowners and interest groups and committed to a range of restoration initiatives⁷.

Since then, Council together with its Peat Lake Accord partner organisations, adjoining landowners and volunteers, have undertaken a wide range of restoration initiatives, including:

- fencing the entire lake margin which ranges from 30 to 200 metres in width and undertaking significant revegetation and weed control (including more than five years of willow control),
- fencing inflows on private land,
- pest animal control focusing on stoats, feral cats and possums,
- pest fish removal in 2015,
- setting restrictions on power boat use and dog exercise to protect environmental values,
- installing treatment wetlands to filter out nutrients and sediment on reserve and private land on the eastern margin,
- preparing the Hingakākā-Ngā Roto Iwi Management Plan 2006, the Lake Ngā Roto Recreation Reserve Management Plan 2009, the Catchment Action Plan for Lake Ngā Roto June 2014, the Waikato Region Shallow Lakes Management Plan 2014 and the Biodiversity Assessment and Restoration Plan 2021,
- installing a diversion channel in 2016 to stop high nutrient water from Lake Ngā Rotoiti entering Lake Ngā Roto,
- stopping clearing drains on reserve land to enable sediments to settle and contaminants to be filtered prior to water entering the lake,
- replacing the weir installed in 1971 with a new weir and fish passage in 2017 to restore a more natural

⁷ The agreed initiatives included defining the reserve boundaries, incorporating the unformed Road Reserve around the lake perimeter into the reserve, treating sediment and nutrient inflows, removing grey and crack willow, restorative planting within the moist soil margins, recognising and protecting Pā within the reserve, constructing a lake circuit walking track, forming legal access to the eastern lake margins, and retaining other public access (formed and unformed).

lake water level regime,

- acquiring Lot 6 DP526717 in 2018 to retire the land from grazing and revegetate and exploring options to acquire land between this land parcel and the lake margin, and
- developing a lake quality monitoring and reporting programme.

More recently the Mangaotama Stream and Wetland Restoration Trust, made up of landowners passionate about restoring the stream and wetlands within the Mangaotama Stream catchment (which includes Lake Ngā Roto), have built on the work initiated by the Department of Conservation and Fonterra through the Living Waters Partnership. This has resulted in the development of Farm Environment Plans and a significant amount of riparian fencing, native planting, retiring farmland and the protection of several remnant Kahikatea stands on land within Lake Ngā Roto's catchment.

Additionally the Taia te Taiao Maungatautari to Pirongia Ecological Corridor Project, involving mana whenua, landowners, other care groups, Council and WRC, industry (including Fonterra, DairyNZ and Open County), and other agencies (including QEII National Trust and the Department of Conservation), has also resulted in significant collaborative efforts to enhance riparian margins, create wetland habitats, reduce predator populations, and boost biodiversity between Maungatautari and Pirongia. Lake Ngā Roto is identified as an important 'stepping stone' site within this corridor.

Ko Lake Ngā Roto he taonga tuku iho | Lake Ngā Roto is a living treasure

Freshwater values

Freshwater values include the extent to which a freshwater body can support a healthy ecosystem (including water quality, water quantity, habitat, aquatic life and ecological processes), be used for recreation activities involving human contact, and provide critical habitats and conditions to support threatened species. It also includes natural form and character, its ability to provide mahinga kai (both in terms of kai that is safe to harvest and eat) and opportunities for customary practices to be exercised and tikanga and preferred methods to be able to be practiced.

Lake Ngā Roto is the largest of twenty peat lakes in Waipā (see Figure 5). It is part of the extensive and nationally important peat lake system in the Waikato region which plays a critical role in regulating water quality and hydrology in the region, supporting a diverse range of native flora and fauna and acting as important carbon sink. It has a constructed outflow into the Mangaotama Stream at the northern end of the lake, which then flows into the Waipā River after 12 kilometres and on into the Waikato River at Ngāruawāhia (see Figure 3). As identified in the draft Ahu Ake – Waipā Spatial Plan, the health and wellbeing of peat lakes like Lake Ngā Roto play an important role in the realisation of the vision for the Waikato River set out in Te Ture Whaimana o Te Awa o Waikato and empowered through settlement legislation.

The vision is:

‘A future where a healthy Waikato River sustains abundant life and prosperous communities who, in turn, are all responsible for restoring and protecting the health and wellbeing of the Waikato River, and all it embraces, for generations to come.’

Lake Ngā Roto also offers a range of sailing, rowing and paddling opportunities and historically was an important source of kai including tuna and kukuraho for mana whenua.

The current health of the lake has significantly impacted these values.

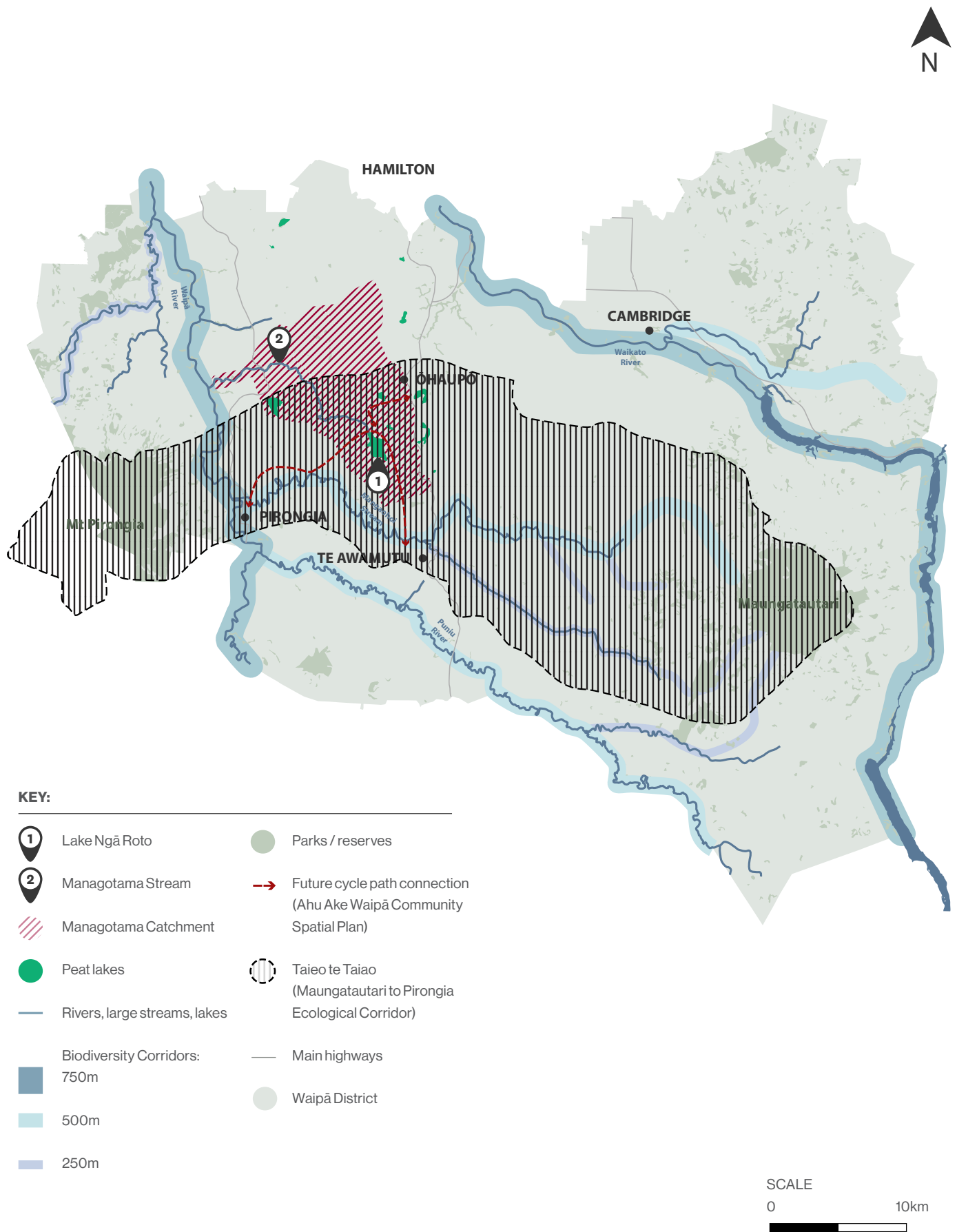


Figure 5 Open space network plan

Indigenous biodiversity values

Lake Ngā Roto also plays a vital role in the restoration of the district and region's indigenous biodiversity.

Historically, before human clearance of the land through the use of fire or industrial machinery, the Lake Ngā Roto and wider Mangaotama catchment was a series of interconnected wetlands with scattered kahikatea, pukatea and tawa forests (see Figure 6). As a result of vegetation clearance and drainage for agricultural purposes, these ancient habitats are now mostly only evident in the soil.

Located within the Waikato and Waipā river-lake-wetland system and the Taiea te Taiao Maungatautari to Pirongia Ecological Corridor, Lake Ngā Roto provides permanent habitat for some species, and temporary habitat for other species that use the lake seasonally in response to changing water levels elsewhere in the system. This role is particularly significant given that the Waikato region has lost around 92 percent of its wetlands since 1840; with 83,550 hectares of former peatland now used for intensive agriculture.

Large areas of Lake Ngā Roto's margins are identified as

a Significant Natural Area of national significance in the Waipā District Plan. The margins feature a mix of exotic and native plant species, including raupō reedland, swamp meadow wetlands, kahikatea swamp, and regenerating mixed broadleaved forest. Though no threatened plant species are found at Lake Ngā Roto, it provides critical habitat for 54 bird species, including several that are nationally threatened. These include the Australasian bittern and black-billed gull (both nationally critical), caspian tern (nationally vulnerable), and several at-risk species such as the marsh and spotless crakes.

Historically, Lake Ngā Roto supported a range of native fish with shortfin eels and common bullies being the most common. By 2001, a few longfin eels (classified as "At Risk – Declining") were still present, but by 2009, both longfin eels and common smelt had disappeared from the lake. While inanga haven't been recorded in the lake, it is possible that they can migrate this far upstream in summer.

Lake Ngā Roto also supports a range of invertebrates and has the potential to provide habitat for native lizards, which are culturally significant to Ngāti Apakura and Ngāti Hikairo as kaitiaki of the lake and are depicted on pou at the southern entrance to the track.



Image: Interpretive signage at Lake Ngā Roto

KEY:
PRE-HUMAN LAND USE

- Kahikatea, Pukatea & Tawa indigenous forest
- Wetlands
- Lakes and waterbodies
- Streams & Rivers
- Lake Catchment Boundary

SCALE
0 1km

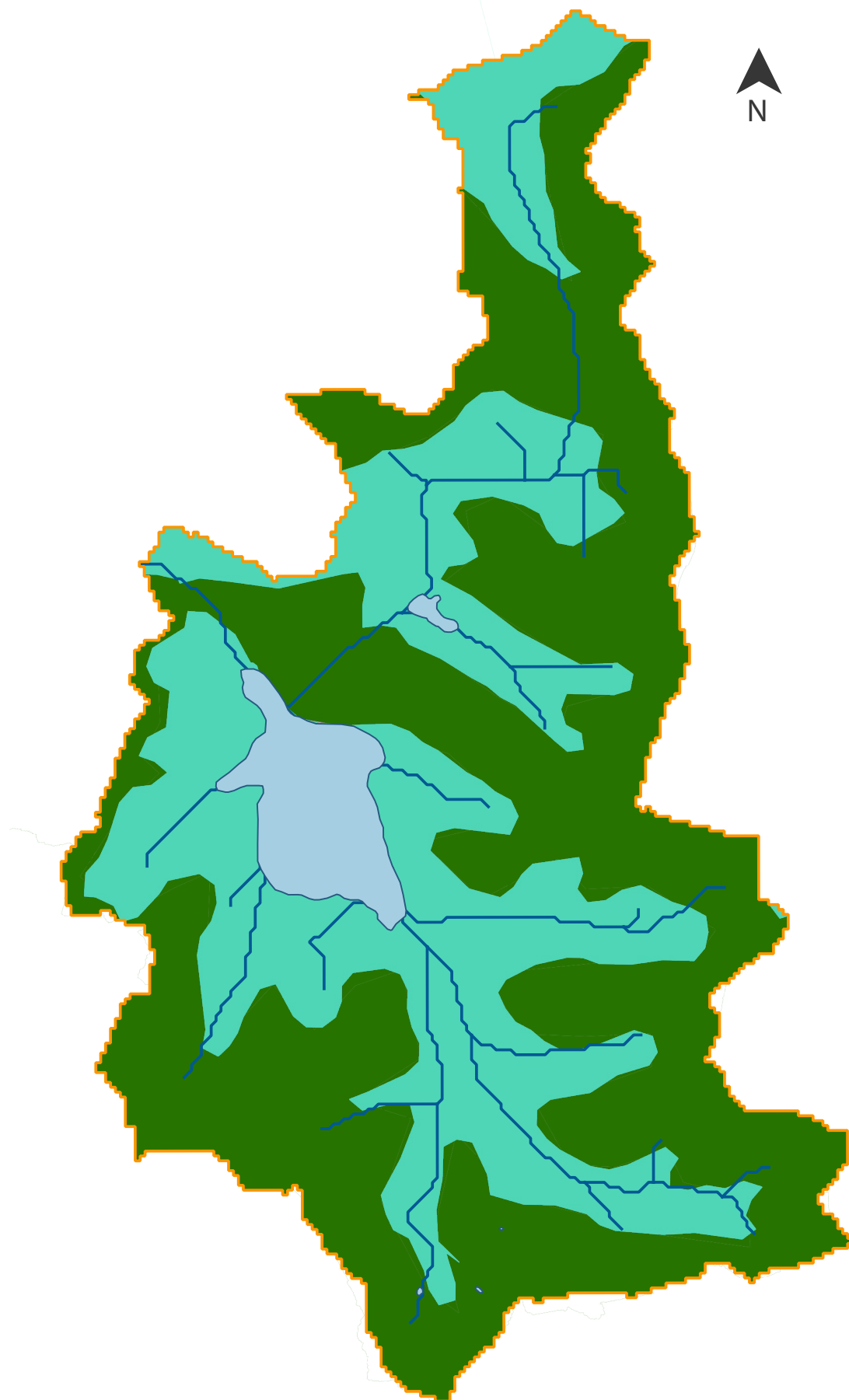



Figure 6 Lake Ngā Roto pre-human land use and vegetation cover ⁸

⁸ Created by Environment Innovation and Strategy Ltd. Sources: Vegetation data from Potential Vegetation of New Zealand, Manaaki Whenua; Wetland data from Prediction of wetlands before humans arrived, Manaaki Whenua

Cultural, spiritual, historical, ancestral and archaeological values

Mana whenua believe it is the landscape that defines who they are and what makes them unique. Their world view is shaped by the concept 'We are of the whenua, the whenua is of us'. The whenua is a component of the taiao. The taiao is the realisation of the Atua (the guardians) and it is the Atua that caused the creation of the earth itself, the skies, oceans, rivers, streams, wetlands, swamps, lakes, the fish of both salt, and freshwater, the waters from the sky, the waters from deep underground, the forests and the wild foods of the ground. Atua of significance to Lake Ngā Roto include:

- Papatahuaroa (Papatūānuku; Mother Earth)
- Rangiawatea (Ranginui; Guardian of the skies and heavens)
- Wainui-ātea (Guardian of waters, including inland waters, rivers, lakes, streams and wetlands)
- Hine-i-te-repo (Guardian of wetlands and swamps)
- Hine-i-te-huhi (Guardian of wetlands and swamps)
- Ikatere (Guardian, son of Punga and grandchild of Tangaroa)
- Hine-te-kohu (Guardian of the mist and fog)
- Hine-iho-rangi (Guardian of rainwater)
- Parawhenuamea (Guardian of Freshwater)
- Tangaroa (Guardian of the Sea)
- Tāne Mahuta (Guardian of Forests)
- Haumiatiketike (Guardian of uncultivated foods)

For mana whenua, these atua are their creators, and their descendants are their tuākana. As teina, mana whenua have a responsibility to be the kaitiaki of their tuākana. Their tūpuna have lived, fought and died on this land, the land is part of their whakapapa, carved into the walls of their whare tupuna, and woven into their waiata and their karakia. When mana whenua look at a landscape, they see their past and their future. The significance of a landscape is not defined by its financial value; the significance of a landscape is defined by its history and its connection to whānau, hapū and iwi. Mana whenua do not own the whenua or the environment. They inherit the responsibility at birth to be kaitiaki for the past, current and future generations.

Mana whenua, as kaitiaki of Lake Ngā Roto, hold the responsibility of protecting and managing the natural and cultural resources of the area in accordance with tikanga and whakapapa. Their role involves ensuring the preservation of the reserve's biodiversity, ecosystems, and historical significance, while upholding the spiritual and cultural values associated with the land. Their responsibilities also include safeguarding wāhi tapu and maintaining the mauri of Lake Ngā Roto for future generations.

The island pā at Lake Ngā Roto are associated with Takupu-o-te-rangi and his brothers-in-law Tūihu, and Tūtēgangana. These tūpuna are responsible for the construction of the island pā - Te Pūtere (Te Pūtete) and Te Moutere. They are further associated with the construction of Taurangamirumiru (Taurangamiromiro) to the west of Lake Ngā Roto. Taurangamirumiru was occupied by their collective descendants, including Horotakere (and his wife Parehaunui) and Rakamoana (along with his siblings, Reitū, Reipae and Parehaunui). Rakamoana's children (Puihawe, Waikaha, Huritake) who are tūpuna of various Ngāti Hikairo hapū, and Tūtēgangana the ancestor of Ngāti Apakura continued the occupation - as did his grandson Tūāwhio and great-grandson Tamatātai.

The known pā sites around the margins of Lake Ngā Roto, the Hingakākā Battle Field area around Lake Ngā Roto, and other archaeological features such as pits are shown on Figure 7. Further details on these features are outlined in Appendix 5. There are three pā sites that are either entirely or partially within the reserve: the northern pā site (S15/9) is still partially farmed, the central pā (S15/7) is fenced off and protected, and the southern pā site (S15/5) located under the sailing clubhouse. The grazed northern pā site (S15/9) is currently on private land.

As a result of the Battle of Hingakākā, there is a high likelihood of kōiwi tangata (human remains of Māori origin) lying below the reserve.



Image Credit: Waka (canoe) discovered in Lake Ngā Roto in 1965, Te Awamutu Museum Collection (PH2670).

The ancient taonga Uenuku understood to date from circa 1400, was rediscovered in the swampy margins of Lake



Figure 7 Location of Hingākākā Battle Area and Pā

Ngā Roto in 1906 when the lake levels were lowered by more than two metres. Uenuku is a 2.7 metre tall carving that symbolises the guardian life force of the rainbow. It may have been carried into battle as a standard, and been lost or hidden during the battle, or hidden in the lake during the British invasion of 1863. Uenuku is a taonga of great significance for Ngāti Apakura, Ngāti Hikairo, Ngāti Maniapoto and the Waikato-Tainui people. Other taonga have also been recovered from the lake including a waka tiwai and hoe (a paddle).

Four pou were installed at Lake Ngā Roto in 2016 to acknowledge the rediscovery of Uenuku. The pou are named “Te Paenga o Uenuku” the resting place of Uenuku and represent the resting place of Uenuku in the past and a possible home for Uenuku in the future. They are placed as close as possible to where Uenuku was found. The four pou and spaces between them represent seven Atua: Tāne-mahuta, Tangaroa, Tāwhiri-mātea, Tūmataurangi, Haumia-tiketike and Rūaumoko. The lizards that are painted at the top of the pou embody the gods, spirits or kaitiaki that protect the lake. The pou also have large scallop shapes carved out, which are referred to as “Kape Rua”, with kōwhaiwhai patterns painted on them. These shapes and patterns symbolise parts of the lake and swamps that have dried out and acknowledges that Lake Ngā Roto was once a lot bigger than what it is now.



Image Credit: Pā tuna in Lake Ngā Roto that had two fences that funnelled the eels into a hinaki (eel pot), Te Awamutu Museum Collection (PH3843/5)

Lake Ngā Roto provides mana whenua with opportunities to sustain their physical and spiritual relationship with wai and whenua Māori, to fulfil their kaitiaki responsibilities, to protect wāhi tapu, to restore taonga species such as tuna and plants species used in Rongoā Māori and weaving, to maintain and develop mātauranga Māori and to pursue traditional and contemporary activities.

Mana whenua seek the right to exercise their rangatiratanga concerning their responsibilities for land, the environment and the wellbeing of their people. Ngāti

Hikairo and Ngāti Apakura maintain that by working in partnership with local and regional councils, relationships will be improved and policy and processes can then be developed to provide direction and guidance for both iwi, councils and landowners.

Recreation values

Lake Ngā Roto is a highly valued recreation destination for locals and visitors alike; a place where people can get active, compete, connect with nature and learn about the area's history, environmental values associated with peat lakes and conservation initiatives. Being only 10 minutes from Te Awamutu, 12 minutes from Ōhaupō and 28 minutes from Hamilton, Lake Ngā Roto is an easily accessible and safe destination.

More than 50,000 visitors annually currently enjoy the 5.9 kilometre accessible walking and cycling circuit, which features gentle gradients, boardwalks, and gravel paths through the lake's margins. The track is popular year-round and Waipā residents particularly value the ability to exercise their dogs on lead around the lake. Council has long-term plans to develop an off-road shared path connecting Lake Ngā Roto to Te Awamutu and Pirongia and in time this could be extended to Ohaupō. This together with population growth, will likely lead to increasing annual visitation.

The lake supports a range of water-based recreation, including sailing, rowing, game-bird hunting, and fishing. Many of these activities have been long standing, with Ngā Roto Sailing Club being an important regional sailing hub since the 1960s and Te Awamutu Rowing Club since the 1970s. These clubs, together with Waikato Thames Coromandel Youth Sailing Development Trust and Sailability Waikato, have clubroom and storage facilities on the reserve and there are boat ramps, jetties and pontoons to support water access.

The lake's scale, location, topography, wind conditions, ease of access and relative lack of competition for water space, together with the land-based facilities and opportunity to camp during events, make Lake Ngā Roto a highly valued venue to introduce people to water-based recreation, train and hold regattas. The water quality is however having a significant impact on these activities currently, with much of the summer period affected by health warnings that restrict water-based recreation.

Lake Ngā Roto is also valued as a place for community recreation and environmental events, informal picnicking and freedom camping.

Current state and causes

Lake Ngā Roto is in a severely degraded state. It is categorized as **hypertrophic**, meaning it has excessively high levels of phosphorus and nitrogen that result in harmful algal blooms and overall poor water quality. The lake exhibits high turbidity, low water transparency, and is now devoid of submerged vegetation (macrophytes). The loss of native plant life and an overabundance of algae have created a highly disturbed ecosystem that threatens both aquatic life, the health of the Waipā and Waikato Rivers and human health.

Despite nearly thirty years of restoration efforts by Peat Lake Accord partners, mana whenua and landowners within the catchment between 1995 and 2024, Lake Ngā Roto's freshwater conditions have worsened. During the summer periods between 2020 and 2024, cyanobacterial blooms exceeded safe recreational limits for many months. In 2022 this resulted in a complete reserve closure and a large-scale fish die-off which then lead to duck deaths due to botulism. The ecological health of the lake is now well below national environmental standards across a range of attributes (Appendix 6).

The key causes of this degradation are:

- **Nutrient loads above critical baselines:** Extensive vegetation clearance and the introduction of high-intensity farming practices have accelerated the flow of water and contaminants (nitrogen, phosphorus, sediment, and microbes) into the lake. Nutrient inputs, primarily from surrounding agriculture uses, have led to eutrophication, where nutrient overload fuels excessive algae growth, further degrading water quality. The lack of submerged aquatic macrophytes, coupled with invasive coarse fish disturbing sediments, have worsened water clarity and prevented the re-establishment of submerged vegetation.
- **Invasive Species:** Invasive flora and fauna, including introduced macrophytes and benthivorous invasive fish species such as koi carp, have disrupted the lake's natural balance through outcompeting native species, excreting nutrients and/or re-suspending sediments. This has led to increased turbidity and impaired ecological functioning.
- **Climate Change:** Climate change has intensified the situation, with increased storm events and flooding leading to greater nutrient inflow (via the Birch Effect⁹). Warmer temperatures are also likely to have exacerbated algal blooms, which have further reduced oxygen levels and harmed aquatic life.

- **Hysteresis and Negative Feedback Loops:** Lake Ngā Roto is facing hysteresis, meaning it has "flipped" into a suspended algae/phytoplankton-dominated state, and this self-perpetuating cycle of internal nutrient recycling, via wind and pest fish induced sediment disturbance and anoxia-mediated release of phosphorous from redox-sensitive lake sediments, will continue for a long-time even if external sources of pollution are reduced. These feedback loops create a vicious cycle, further reducing water clarity and preventing macrophyte recovery.

Without substantial, coordinated, sustained catchment-scale initiatives to address these causes, alongside extensive in-lake remediation, conditions are likely to worsen, and the ecological health of Lake Ngā Roto will remain in critical decline. Polluted water will continue to flow into the Waipā and Waikato Rivers, native flora and fauna won't be able to reestablish and there will likely be longer periods where the lake is not available for sailing, rowing and paddling and reduced amenity for other visitors to the reserve.

Key challenges and opportunities to restore Lake Ngā Roto

Majority of catchment outside of Council's control

A key challenge to sufficiently reducing the nutrient, sediment and contaminant loads entering the lake is that the majority of the catchment lies outside of Council's control. The challenges associated with creating a new rule framework over private farmland to protect and restore freshwater have been highlighted through the lengthy Waikato Regional Plan Change 1: Waikato and Waipā River Catchment (PC1) process and the debate over the National Policy Statement Freshwater 2020 (NPS-FM 2020). At this stage, WRC is committed to progressing PC1. Through this process, WRC will be required under sections 61(2)(a)(i), 66(2)(C)(i), and 74(2)(b) (i) of the Resource Management Act 1991 to have regard to this Plan. WRC may also through the the Regional Plan outline non-regulatory methods such as specifying the role of WRC in assisting the implementation of this Plan.

In addition to working with WRC on the review of the Waikato Regional Plan, continued collaboration with stakeholders and farmers within the catchment will be crucial. Initiatives such as the Mangaotama Stream and Wetland Trust highlight the willingness of many farmers to be part of the solution and to change historic farm management practices to slow and improve the quality of water leaving their farm. It is critical that farmers at a minimum continue to implement best practices such as

9 The Birch Effect refers to the rapid increase in soil microbial activity and nutrient mineralization, particularly nitrogen and carbon, following the rewetting of dry soils.

planted and fenced wide riparian margins, peak-runoff-control/check dams, sediment traps, wetlands and detention bunds as well as undertaking nutrient budgeting, managing effluent and retiring and planting up large areas of low-lying land and land further up the catchment. In time, land use changes away from large scale dairy farming may be required to achieve the vision for Lake Ngā Roto.

The size of the ‘freshwater’ problem in the Waikato Region

The WRC's State of the Environment report identified the Waikato region's shallow lakes are under pressure from a combination of factors and it will be challenging to meet the NPS-FM 2020 bottom lines in most Waikato D band lakes (of which Lake Ngā Roto is one), while maintaining current land use. Resourcing constraints will require Council and WRC to prioritise efforts and may potentially lead to delays in initiatives such as developing a lake-specific action plan and put pressure on existing monitoring and private landowner support programmes.

Developing extensions to Lake Ngā Roto

The current reserve boundaries do not account for the topography, substrate type, or hydrological processes of the area and restrict potential restoration actions. While Council has recently acquired land, there remains significant areas of low-lying or swampy land being part of the old lakebed that are not protected and planted and in many areas are still being farmed.

While agricultural use of the peat substrates has in the past been seen as legitimate and justifiable, it is clearly a finite resource and current land use practices are not sustainable given the inevitability of peat oxidation and surface settlement. Draining and converting peat substrates into pasture induces peat oxidation and surface settlement. As settlement continues, and the lake becomes ‘perched’ flooding from the lake will become more frequent and water will pond for longer periods. Agricultural production from these areas will diminish and this will influence land values.

Extending Lake Ngā Roto's margins, either through acquisition or through landowners voluntarily retiring and planting up these areas, presents a significant opportunity to improve Lake Ngā Roto's lake health and surrounding habitat through increasing the lake's buffer and reducing the risks associated with the lake becoming perched.

While funding is a significant challenge, Council's District Plan provides incentives to landowners to protect, plant and/or sell land to Council through Environment Benefit

Lots. There are also opportunities to seek external funding and there may be future opportunities to fund acquisitions and restoration initiatives through carbon credit schemes.

Adjoining landowners desire to improve drainage

Many landowners within the catchment want Council to lower the lake level during winter and maintain drains within the reserve so that water can flow easily from farms to Lake Ngā Roto and on into the Mangaotama Stream. They also want to explore how to remove sediment from the lake. They believe this will reduce the extent and duration of floods and improve pastures. In addition to flooding concerns, many landowners are frustrated that they aren't receiving the level of service they expect in return for paying a drainage rate to the WRC to manage drainage in the Ōhaupō/Ngā Roto Drainage District.

Under the Reserves Act, Council must prioritise maintaining the integrity of the reserve's values and the science to date is that maintaining the current weir height and not allowing water with high nutrient loads to flow freely into Lake Ngā Roto is the best course of action for Council to achieve this. Further research and evaluation on lake height and inflows and discussions with WRC about the management of Ōhaupō/Ngā Roto Drainage District are required.

Imperfect science and shortfalls in data

Managing the lake's restoration is complicated by shortfalls in data and the limitations in current scientific understanding. Imperfect data and science means that there are uncertainties about the best methods to address the eutrophication and sedimentation issues facing Lake Ngā Roto. An ongoing comprehensive monitoring programme and collaborative research initiatives between local councils, iwi, scientists, and landowners will help identify, implement and evaluate restoration actions.

Initiatives, such as the Lakes380 project and the Mangaotama Ōhaupō to Waipā River Catchment Restoration Project, will provide important learnings and insights that can be applied to Lake Ngā Roto.

Solutions need to consider a range of values and interests

Effective restoration requires balancing multiple, and sometimes conflicting, values, including cultural, recreational, ecological, and economic interests. Lake Ngā Roto holds cultural significance for mana whenua, and



Image: Lake Ngā Roto inflow on adjoining farmland

their perspectives must be integrated into any restoration efforts. This is particularly important for in-lake actions, with dredging unlikely to ever be supported by mana whenua because the uncertainties of where the Battle of Hingakākā occurred and what will be found in terms of koiwi and taonga. Private landowners within Lake Ngā Roto's catchment may be impacted economically by some solutions affecting their land. A holistic and staged approach that accounts for these diverse values and interests will provide the best opportunity for successful restoration.

Climate change

Climate change will continue to be a critical issue for Lake Ngā Roto as it is likely to exacerbate many of the key causes of lake's poor health. The specific effects of climate change on Lake Ngā Roto and the best ways to mitigate these adverse effects need further investigation.

New and innovative solutions and funding models

The scale of the freshwater problem in Aotearoa/New Zealand and the desire to retain a strong agricultural sector means that there is a lot of research going into new and innovative solutions that may be applicable to Lake Ngā Roto.

Funding from carbon credit schemes, alongside public-private partnerships, may also in the future support large-scale initiatives like wetland re-establishment, nutrient filtering through constructed wetlands, and reforestation of large areas within Lake Ngā Roto's catchment.

Future actions

Significant, sustained and collaborative measures are required to restore and preserve the balance between water, the environment and people and avoid leaving a legacy of degradation for future generations to deal with.

The Biodiversity Assessment and Restoration Plan 2021 outlines land-based restoration actions on the land Council administers that will need ongoing Council funding and the growth of a volunteer base to implement. Council is committed to working with mana whenua, partners and adjoining landowners to extend the width of the land that is protected and restored around the lake margins and in the southern catchment.

WRC is progressing Waikato Regional Plan Change 1 – Waikato and Waipā River Catchments and through this will clarify objectives, limits and targets and prioritise actions. While this is being progressed, WRC's ongoing monitoring and reporting, research, and financial and technical support to farmers are essential. A review of the current drainage levy is also critical to address landowners' expectations and concerns about drainage levels of service.

We need farmers in the catchment to continue to develop and implement Freshwater Farm Plans and take actions to widen, fence and replant lake inflows, install water treatment devices, retire and plant peat land adjoining the lake and large areas further up the catchment, and farm in a way that reduces nitrogen, phosphorous, sediment and microbial pathogen losses from their land.

And we need to work with and learn from partners such as mana whenua, Waikato University, Manaaki Whenua Landcare Research, and Cawthron Institute to continue to extend the wetland margin, review past management actions and investigate new and innovative approaches and approaches that combine western science and mātauranga Māori.

The key roles and responsibilities of all those involved in achieving the vision for Lake Ngā Roto are set out in Table 1 below.

While reversing more than 150 years of modification and damage will take time, key parties must work together in unity, at pace and with a clear aspirational vision driving all actions.



Table 1. Roles of key parties involved in administering and restoring Lake Ngā Roto

Organisation/group	Role
Mana whenua	Mana whenua, being Ngāti Apakura and Ngāti Hikairo, hold customary rights and interests in the land. Participate in decision-making regarding the conservation and protection of historic places, archaeological sites and wāhi tapu as they relate to Lake Ngā Roto. Work in partnership with local and regional councils to identify, implement and monitor restoration actions that are informed by matauranga Māori and tikanga and based on strong relationships.
Waipā District Council	Lead organisation for the restoration of the terrestrial indigenous biodiversity of the reserve land surrounding the lake. Owns and/or administers land in accordance with the Reserves Act and Local Government Act and is responsible for preparing and implementing the reserve management plan and approving concessions such as leases and research permits. Delegate of the Minister of Conservation as set out in the Instrument of Delegation for Territorial Authorities 2013. Owns and controls the outlet weir. Ensures land within the lake's catchment is administered in accordance with the Waipā District Plan and develops and enforces bylaws that apply to Lake Ngā Roto.
Waikato Regional Council	Lead organisation for the restoration of the lake's health and wellbeing. Mandated by Section 66(1) of the Resource Management Act 1991 to develop and review regional plans in accordance with national policy statements and through these plans set the direction and rules to protect and restore Lake Ngā Roto's freshwater. Responsible for managing the Ōhaupō/Ngā Roto Drainage (4016) District and setting drainage rates on all properties within this District. WRC has, however, signalled its aspiration to transfer the drainage district back to Waipā District Council. Leads the monitoring and reporting programme for Lake Ngā Roto's lake health.
Department of Conservation Te Papa Atawhai	Administers the adjoining Lake Ngarotoiti and has played a key role in the Living Waters programme and the Mangaotama Stream and Wetland Trust.
NZ Landcare Trust/Ngā Matapopore Whenua	Grassroots organisation that supports communities in beneficial land and water management practices to make a tangible difference in the future of New Zealand's waterways. Previously lead through the Ngā Roto Catchment Action Plan 2014 and is now the lead agency for Taio te Taiao Maungatautari to Piurongia Ecological Corridor.

Waipā Peat Lakes and Wetland Accord	Established in 2005, the objectives of the collaboration of Council, WRC, mana whenua, Department of Conservation, New Zealand Landcare Trust, National Wetlands Trust under this accord are: • promote the sustainable use and conservation of lake and wetland resources by developing and implementing relevant local management projects, regional and national policies and action plans, and international conventions, • encourage restoration of degraded lakes, wetlands and associated species that are in an unfavourable conservation status, through the application of sound environmental management and research, • maintain an overview of the status of lake and wetland resources by developing, promoting and coordinating assessment and monitoring programmes and disseminating the results, • develop a regional network of experts for the transfer of know-how, research and information through effective partnerships with likeminded organisations, and • raise awareness of the functions and values of lakes and wetlands through
Waikato River Authority	Set the primary direction to achieve the restoration and protection of the health and wellbeing of the Waikato River for future generations Promote an integrated, holistic, and co-ordinated approach to the implementation of the Te Ture Whaimana o Te Awa o Waikato - the Vision and Strategy and the management of the Waikato River Fund rehabilitation initiatives for the Waikato River in its role as trustee for the Waikato River Clean-up Trust.
Land Air Water Aotearoa (LAWA)	Connects people with the environment and supports local communities find the balance between using natural resources and maintaining their quality and availability by sharing environmental data and information. Partnership between the Te Uru Kahika - Regional and Unitary Councils Aotearoa, Cawthron Institute, the Ministry for the Environment, the Department of Conservation, Stats NZ and has been supported by the Tindall Foundation and Massey University.
Te Whatu Ora Waikato	Responsible for informing the public of health warnings associated with Lake Ngā Roto's water quality and monitoring health issues associated with use of Lake Ngā Roto.
Landowners within the lake's catchment	Responsible for preparing and implementing Farm Freshwater Plans and making decisions on their land use which have the ability to positively contribute to achieving the vision for Lake Ngā Roto.
Lessees	Responsible for developing and maintaining their assets and managing their activities in way that positively contributes to achieving the vision for Lake Ngā Roto and ensuring the health and safety of their members and programme participants.
Volunteers	Ability to positively contribute to achieving the vision for Lake Ngā Roto through planting, weeding and releasing, pest control and participation in citizen science projects.



03/

Wāhanga Tuatōru : Te Ara Whakamua

Section Three : Moving Forward



This section sets a 30-year vision for Lake Ngā Roto – a timeframe that considers what we want Lake Ngā Roto to be like within a generation and which enables an ambitious future state to be imagined with timeframes that enable everyone involved to plan and make provision for.

The principles are intended to guide how everyone involved in Lake Ngā Roto work together and make decisions to deliver successful actions. The objectives and policies bring focus to how the vision will be achieved across the range of reserve values through Council's actions.



Te whakakitenga | Vision



Kia whakaora anō te mana me te mauri o Lake Ngā Roto

The life-sustaining capacity of Lake Ngā Roto is brought back to life and protected and the wāhi tapu status acknowledged so that the Waikato and Waipā rivers, indigenous species, mana whenua and communities can flourish.



Ngā mātāpono | Management principles

The following principles guide the future management of Lake Ngā Roto and apply to all parts of the reserve:

Taonga tuku iho	Acknowledging Lake Ngā Roto is a living treasure
Kaitiakitanga	The responsibility to care for and protect the health and wellbeing of Lake Ngā Roto and the life within
Wairuatanga/Mauri	Acknowledging and understanding the existence of mauri and a spiritual dimension to Lake Ngā Roto requires attention and nourishment and putting in place systems, processes and programmes to enable this to occur
Mana whenua	Enabling and empowering iwi and hapū to exercise mana whenua and kaitiakitanga in respect of their ancestral lands and waters
Ahi kaa	Acknowledging that tangata whenua who have always lived on their tūrangawaewae, their tribal lands, are repositories of tribal history, genealogy, traditions and customs
Whanaungatanga	Maintaining relationships between and amongst iwi, hapū, Council, stakeholders and the community built on mutual respect and acceptance of each other's interests and values
Manaakitanga	Encouraging behaviour and activities that are mana enhancing toward others including generosity, care, respect and reciprocity
Mahi ngātahi, mahi pono me te mahi tika	Sharing knowledge and working in good faith, with respect and collaboratively together
Kotahitanga	Pursuing a unity of purpose and direction
Tiakina te Taiao	Integrated, adaptive management that takes a whole of catchment approach focused long-term resilience and that uses research and monitoring to review the course of action at key milestones

Ngā whāinga me ngā kaupapa here | Objectives, policies and explanation

Whāinga Tuatahi : Kia whakaora anō te mauri me te mana o Lake Ngā Roto

Objective One : The health and wellbeing of Lake Ngā Roto's freshwater is restored

Kaupapa here : Policies

- 1.1 Work collaboratively with mana whenua, Peat Lake Accord partners, landowners within the catchment, and the community to achieve the vision for Lake Ngā Roto.
- 1.2 Reclassify the land parcels classified as recreation reserve to scenic reserve and gazette and classify all other land parcels covered by this Plan as scenic reserve to confirm the priority for future management is the protection and restoration of the ecological and cultural values of Lake Ngā Roto.
- 1.3 Protect and restore wider buffer zones around the lake and the wetland area in the southern catchment through acquisition and encouraging adjoining landowners to retire, fence, and renaturalise adjoining low-lying areas.
- 1.4 Maintain the existing outlet weir, the Lake Ngarotoiti diversion channel and sediment traps in a functioning state unless there is strong evidence that a different lake level regime will improve lake health.
- 1.5 Prohibit drainage activity (including the dredging and vegetation removal of historic drains) within the land administered by Council, which may adversely affect lake levels, lake water quality or ground water levels unless there is strong evidence that a different approach will improve lake health.
- 1.6 Investigate with WRC the potential transfer of management for the Ōhaupō/Ngā Roto Drainage District (4016) to Council and/or changes to the current drainage rate levies to manage drainage expectations on farms within the catchment.
- 1.7 Protect and restore the margin of raupō along the lake edge in the Main Arrival Zone to prevent erosion and provide important nesting and feeding habitat.



- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>1.8 Promote best practice farm management actions such as limited drainage within 200 metres of Lake Ngā Roto, fencing of waterways, installation of constructed wetlands and significant native revegetation on private land within Lake Ngā Roto's catchment to substantially reduce or eliminate contaminants, nutrients and sediment passing from private land into the reserve; with a focus on high nutrient, <i>Escherichia coli</i> (E.coli) and sediment risk areas in the catchment (see Appendix 7).</p> | <p>1.13 Support WRC to continue its current research, monitoring and reporting programme to advise on lake health and identify management actions that will contribute to an improvement in water quality and general in-lake conditions and protect visitors to Lake Ngā Roto through timely health warnings.</p> |
| <p>1.9 Encourage Peat Lake Accord partners and entities such as Fonterra, Dairy NZ and the Waikato River Authority to provide advice, financial support and other incentives to landowners within Lake Ngā Roto's catchment to speed up the transition to sustainable land use practices and the construction and maintenance of interventions such as swales, dams, sediment traps, wetlands and detention bunds to reduce or eliminate contaminants, nutrients and sediment passing from private land into the reserve.</p> | <p>1.14 Work with Peat Lake Accord partners and other key stakeholders to understand and communicate the causes and impacts of peat subsidence and carbon loss and mitigation opportunities and benefits.</p> |
| <p>1.10 Support significant controls on land use and drainage within Lake Ngā Roto's catchment to avoid excessive peat settlement and peat loss and to substantially reduce or eliminate contaminants, nutrients and sediment passing from private land into the reserve.</p> | <p>1.15 Raise our community's awareness of the lake's health and the critical need for restoration action funding through onsite and web-based information, open days, working with lessees and event organisers, volunteering programmes and regular reporting to Council.</p> |
| <p>1.11 Support WRC and research-focused organisations to understand and communicate the ideal lake depth and size and management actions to restore lake health and create long-term resilience.</p> | <p>1.16 Enable a range of programmes and facilities to address and manage disease, pest and pathogen incursions that may negatively impact lake health.</p> |
| <p>1.12 Support WRC to lead a programme of in-lake actions such as pest fish and plant eradication and control, sediment management and macrophyte re-establishment to improve lake health.</p> | <p>1.17 Ensure indigenous freshwater species can freely move up, down and between water bodies through regular maintenance of the existing outlet weir fish passage and developing other passages if required.</p> |
| | <p>1.18 Prohibit the taking of any indigenous fauna, including short and long finned eel, for any commercial purpose.</p> |

He kupu whakamaarama | Explanation

The Reserves Act sets out that Scenic Reserves are for:

“(a) the purpose of protecting and preserving in perpetuity for their intrinsic worth and for the benefit, enjoyment, and use of the public, suitable areas possessing such qualities of scenic interest, beauty, or natural features or landscape that their protection and preservation are desirable in the public interest:

(b) the purpose of providing, in appropriate circumstances, suitable areas which by development and the introduction of flora, whether indigenous or exotic, will become of such scenic interest or beauty that their development, protection, and preservation are desirable in the public interest”

Lake Ngā Roto is a natural feature and landscape that is significant regionally and locally and which will increase in importance through conservation efforts to restore the lake and its margins. The change in classification supports Council's primary focus set out in this Plan – the protection and restoration of Lake Ngā Roto. The public will still have freedom of entry and access to the reserve, visitor infrastructure can still be developed and activities requiring leases, licences and other approvals that support public use and enjoyment of the reserve may still be granted.

The draft Ahu Ake – Waipā Spatial Plan highlights that peat lakes, such as Lake Ngā Roto, are at risk and emphasises the need for urgent action in alignment with Te Ture Whaimana. It is critical that external nutrient, contaminant and sediment loads are significantly reduced prior to entering the reserve through extending the physical buffer around the lake, slowing and filtering inflows, changing current agricultural practices and potentially in the longer-term transitioning from dairy grazed pastoral dairy farms and drystock pasture to land uses which are more suited to achieving the vision for Lake Ngā Roto, restoring large scale wetlands and 'recloning' large areas of the catchment with indigenous forests.

Council's position on the current lake height (34.34m

Moturiki Datum) that is set through control of the weir, and prohibiting drainage activities within the reserve, is based on evidence that these actions will improve the lake health. It is important that the effects of these decisions and that lessons learnt from other lakes are evaluated to guide future decisions related to lake size, depth and inflow and outflow management. At the time of preparing this Plan, there was insufficient information to form a position on these matters.

In-lake restoration initiatives to reduce the effects of 'legacy' internal nutrient, contaminant and sediment loads and pest fish and plants and programmes to protect the lake from new biosecurity risks are also going to be essential to achieve the vision for Lake Ngā Roto. The policies recognise that WRC is the organisation responsible for leading these actions which may include aeration or water circulation systems, sediment removal, phosphorous inactivation, planting native vegetation and pest fish removal. The evidence is clear that while these actions may lead to immediate improvements in water quality, they must be coupled with a significant reduction of external nutrients to ensure long-lasting water quality improvements.

In addition to improving lake health, the restoration of taonga species such as tuna require actions to support fish passage and increase species abundance and health.

The Ōhaupō/Ngā Roto Drainage District was established under the Land Drainage Act 1908 and managed by Waipa County Council under the LGA 1974 until 1989. As part of local authority restructuring in 1989 responsibility for land drainage board (s) was transferred to WRC. WRC has indicated that their preference is to transfer the drainage responsibilities back to the Council because the drainage district is effectively controlled by Council. Further discussions between WRC and Council are required prior to a decision being made on this suggestion and/or changes to the drainage rate levies.

Whāinga Tuatahi : Kia whakaora anō te mauri me te mana o Lake Ngā Roto

Objective Two : Lake Ngā Roto has a thriving terrestrial ecosystem that enhances Waipā's indigenous biodiversity

Kaupapa here : Policies

- 2.1 Implement the Lake Ngā Roto Restoration Plan 2021 – 2031 as per the planting plan in Appendix 8 with a focus on:
 - a. protecting restoration planting through a comprehensive releasing programme, herbaceous weed control and supplementary planting,
 - b. eradicating priority weeds that can alter ecosystems, and those that are currently at low density and can easily be eradicated,
 - c. continuing the willow control programme,
 - d. confirming the animal pest control programme's goals, approach and monitoring and reporting requirements and implementing the agreed programme,
 - e. working with mana whenua to develop pā harakeke, restoring kukuraho and rākau rongoā for cultural harvest
 - f. retiring and immediately revegetating the recently acquired southern block (Lot 6 DP526717) in kahikatea forest and the eastern boundary area that is currently farmed (Allot 462 Ngaroto PSH), and
 - g. revegetating the swamp forest and swamp margin zones
- 2.2 Maintain viewshafts from the lake circuit track to the lake and beyond from the southern board walk, the centre of the eastern margin (viewshaft to Taurangamirumiru Pā), the northern lake end and the Main Arrival Zone (see Figure 8 in section 4).
- 2.3 Where confirmed to not provide bat habitat, progressively remove exotic trees, particularly those in shelterbelts, and replace with native trees.
- 2.4 Actively support pest eradication and control initiatives undertaken by organisations, landowners and volunteers outside of the reserve.
- 2.5 Work with mana whenua and partner organisations to explore introduction and/or reintroduction of



native fauna species such as mokomoko (geckos and skinks).

- 2.6 Work with partner organisations to grow the volunteer base actively involved in restoring Lake Ngā Roto's indigenous biodiversity.
- 2.7 Explore options to enable individuals and organisations to easily contribute funding to restoration initiatives.
- 2.8 Promote greater public awareness and understanding of ecological values of Lake Ngā Roto through use of activations and interpretations such as signs, displays, guided walks, field days, online information and volunteering events.
- 2.9 Utilise education programmes and enforcement to increase compliance with Dog Control Bylaw rules to reduce the negative impacts of dogs off lead on Lake Ngā Roto's native flora and fauna.
- 2.10 Encourage visitors to remain on the lake circuit track to protect Lake Ngā Roto's native flora and fauna.

He kupu whakamaarama | Explanation

These policies focus on restoring and enhancing the terrestrial ecosystem at Lake Ngā Roto to improve indigenous biodiversity in Waipā. They confirm the prioritisation of actions outlined in the Lake Ngā Roto Restoration Plan 2021–2031. While it is critical that Council protect historic investment in planting and weed control, it must also get on with retiring, fencing and planting all of the land it owns as quickly as possible. This will require external funding and creating a strong volunteer base.

One important consideration when revegetating the lake margins is the retention of key viewshafts to enable lake circuit track users to visually connect with the lake. Educating these track users to ensure compliance with dog control measures and off-track rules will help protect native flora and fauna such as the banded rail and marsh crane.

Pest animal control on the reserve and within a halo around the reserve is critical to reduce predation pressure, particularly on bird species. Currently the main pests requiring control are feral cats, hedgehogs, rats, mice, possums and mustelids and trapping and monitoring is only undertaken by a volunteer. Council needs to determine its pest control objectives and build on current efforts to create a strategic and sustainable pest control regime.

Whāinga Tuatoru: Ka tū ngā mana whenua

Objective Three: Mana whenua's connections with Lake Ngā Roto are recognised and provided for and mātauranga Māori and tikanga are integrated into the governance and management of Lake Ngā Roto

Kaupapa here : Policies

- 3.1 Acknowledge the spiritual, ancestral, cultural, customary and historical interests in Lake Ngā Roto and the wāhi tapu status of Lake Ngā Roto resulting from the Battle of Hingakākā.
- 3.2 Restore the traditional name of the lake and surrounds through undertaking the necessary Reserves Act requirements to change the name of all the land covered by this Plan to 'Wairoto'.
- 3.3 Enable mana whenua to exercise their kaitiakitanga over this taonga tuku iho, to identify, protect, enhance and interpret significant values, features and viewshafts and to have a living connection with Lake Ngā Roto through:
 - a. partnering with mana whenua to understand, value and apply mātauranga Māori, tikanga and intergenerational knowledge and world views held by mana whenua,
 - b. partnering with mana whenua in decision-making regarding the conservation and protection of historic places, archaeological sites and wāhi tapu as they relate to Lake Ngā Roto,
 - c. extending the reserve boundary through acquisition (including the use of the Waipā District Plan's environment benefit lot provisions) to legally protect Te Moutere Pā (S15/9),
 - d. pā preservation in accordance with mana whenua's preferences,
 - e. planting plants for Rongoā Māori or traditional cultural harvest,
 - f. undertaking restoration actions targeted at increasing the abundance of culturally significant kawau (shag) species and mokomoko (lizards),
 - g. enabling cultural activities such as wānanga, hui and events and cultural harvest through agreements with mana whenua,
 - h. working with mana whenua to understand when cultural practices such as rāhui may be



- required to protect the health and wellbeing of the lake and reserve visitors,
- i. involving mana whenua, particularly rangatahi, in conservation initiatives,
- j. seeking input on proposals for use or developments,
- k. working with mana whenua and Peat Lake Accord partners to identify and monitor mauri indicators to inform future monitoring programmes,
- l. sharing the history of the area through Te Ara Wai: Journeys, on-site interpretation, and cultural infrastructure such as pou,
- m. the use of te reo Māori in signage, and
- n. incorporating Māori design into new reserve developments.

- 3.4 Ensure development work carried out on or adjacent to the archaeological sites is sympathetic to their historical context and carried out in liaison with mana whenua and Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga.
- 3.5 Prohibit scattering or burying of ashes anywhere on the reserve.

He kupu whakamaarama | Explanation

Wairoto has been identified by mana whenua as the traditional name for the lake, with Ngā Roto the term being used for the many lakes that existed in the area. Actions to confirm and increase the usage of the correct name are important ways to accurately reflect the area's history and restore the mana of Lake Ngā Roto.

Exercising kaitiakitanga is deeply important to mana whenua as it embodies their role as guardians of the land, waterways, and natural resources. It reflects a responsibility passed down through generations, rooted in tikanga and whakapapa, to protect the mauri of the environment. Kaitiakitanga allows mana whenua to maintain and strengthen their cultural and spiritual connections to their ancestral lands, ensuring that ecosystems are sustained for future generations. By exercising kaitiakitanga, mana whenua can integrate mātauranga Māori into environmental management, promote biodiversity, protect significant cultural sites, and uphold their rights and obligations as custodians of their natural heritage. It also fosters the ability to actively participate in decision-making processes, ensuring that development aligns with both environmental sustainability and cultural preservation.

Policies promoting the sharing of history through interpretive signage, using te reo Māori, and incorporating Māori design in developments are aimed at supporting a strong Māori identity and informing visitors of the significance of Lake Ngā Roto to mana whenua.

The scattering of ashes in the area is prohibited in recognition of the wāhi tapu status of Lake Ngā Roto.

Whāinga Tuawhā: Kia maha ngā āheinga whakamahi mō ngā kaiwhakamahi puta noa

Objective Four: Recreational opportunities are enhanced for a range of users where they do not compromise Lake Ngā Roto's values or impact other reserve users

Kaupapa here : Policies

- 4.1 Develop a concept plan for the Main Arrival Zone (see section 4) to guide the development of lessee and Council infrastructure and planting to create a distinctive entrance, enable approved activities, enhance the recreation, amenity and natural values, and protect, restore and share the values that are significant to mana whenua.
- 4.2 Extend and upgrade the lake circuit track to create a fully accessible off-road circuit track that is sufficiently wide to provide for safe passage for cyclists and pedestrians, with viewshafts to the lake and seating and which in the future connects to cycleways to neighbouring areas such as Pirongia, Te Awamutu and Ōhaupō.
- 4.3 Consider developing a track through the Wetland Zone (see section 4) either as part of the Te Awamutu to Pirongia (via Lake Ngā Roto) Cycleway and/or to increase recreation opportunities and enable conservation activities if additional land is acquired.
- 4.4 Provide dog access for exercise and conservation in accordance with Council's Dog Control Bylaw 2023 and actively work towards greater compliance with these rules.
- 4.5 Extend the 'rubbish-free' approach, that is, require all visitors, event organisers and lessees to take all rubbish away with them.
- 4.6 Provide clear positive guidance and way-finding information to assist public enjoyment and provide interpretative information in a way that avoids detracting from the 'natural' amenity of Lake Ngā Roto.
- 4.7 Notify all recreation users of any health warnings related to the lake health to protect human and dog health and educate lake users to identify harmful algal blooms and avoid contact recreation and protect animals from water contact.

- 4.8 Keep Council's Algal Bloom Response Plan under continuous review and act in accordance with this Plan to protect public health and safety and reduce the effects of algal blooms.
- 4.9 Facilitate safe year-round non-motorised recreation on the lake through the management of lake depth, prioritising actions to improve the water quality, the granting of leases for necessary land-based facilities, the provision of infrastructure to support water access and event approvals for regattas.
- 4.10 Prohibit the use of power boats other than those used in association with managing yachting, rowing, waka paddling events; for erecting and managing hunting stands prior to and during the hunting season, or for management and safety purposes.
- 4.11 Consider the following for all future reserve developments:
- a. the scenic reserve classification,
 - b. the concept plan, relevant specialist assessments and/or mana whenua's feedback,
 - c. the impact the location and design of infrastructure has on the natural, cultural, landscape and amenity values of a reserve,
 - d. opportunities to work with mana whenua to identify any spiritual, ancestral, cultural, customary, social, mahinga kai and historical values that could be acknowledged, protected and/or restored in the development,
 - e. opportunities to share facilities to reduce the site coverage and visual amenity effects associated with facilities and increase the financial sustainability of maintaining community-owned facilities,
 - f. the impacts of climate change,
 - g. minimising the opportunities for vandalism and crime including using Crime Prevention Through Environmental Design principles, and
 - h. universal design and how people of all ages and abilities use, access and enjoy the reserve.
- 4.12 Require lessees involved in water-based recreation to have operating policies and procedures outlining how they will:
- a. prevent ecological degradation through launching boats at designated areas and ensuring best practice biosecurity measures are implemented,
 - b. work with mana whenua to better understand and share their spiritual, ancestral, cultural, customary and historical values associated with Lake Ngā Roto and develop operating practices that recognise these values,
 - c. contribute to achieving the vision for Lake Ngā Roto,
 - d. adhere to health warnings and provide the necessary infrastructure to mitigate risks associated with the lake's water quality, and
 - e. adopt travel demand management approaches for events to reduce the impact of private vehicle parking Lake Ngā Roto and other reserve visitors.
- 4.13 Ensure a consistent approach is taken to assessing new activities requiring authorisation¹⁰, including:
- a. compatibility with the scenic reserve classification,
 - b. compatibility with Lake Ngā Roto's values and

10 Activities will need to be authorised if they require authorisation or a permit under the Reserves Act 1977 or a Council bylaw. This includes activities which: are events that attract more than 100 people or requires parking and road controls and/or consents; require exclusive use of a reserve or an area of a reserve such as a temporary or permanent building or structure to be built or installed; change the physical environment; are commercial in nature, are for private gain or financial reward; create an interest in land in favour of a third party, such as a lease, licence or an easement; or involve the taking of specimens, taking or killing of fauna and/or the introduction of flora, fauna or biological control organisms.



- where applicable specific management or development intentions,
- c. consideration of the capacity of Lake Ngā Roto to accommodate the activity, and potential impacts on the environment and other reserve users, and
- d. mana whenua's views on the proposal.

4.14 Support events which enable our communities to connect with and learn about Lake Ngā Roto and/or get active.

4.15 Support concessions (mobile trading permits, leases and licences) for commercial activities that assists in the public use and enjoyment of Lake Ngā Roto such as a café, mobile food and beverage vendor and/or recreation equipment hire where they don't negatively impact authorised activities nor the general character and amenity of Lake Ngā Roto¹¹.

4.16 Enable contained¹² and conventional¹³ camping within the Main Arrival Zone (see Section 4), for persons involved in or associated with approved events for periods not exceeding five consecutive days.

4.17 Provide for contained camping in vehicles with a self-containment certificate for a maximum of 10 vehicles in the main carpark at the reserve entrance for a maximum of two consecutive nights.

4.18 Prohibit smoking and vaping and take an education approach to encouraging compliance.

4.19 Issue permits to licenced game bird hunters to carry firearms within Lake Ngā Roto during the game

bird hunting season and minimise risks and other adverse effects on other reserve visitors from game bird hunting by:

- a. working with Fish and Game to organise an annual pre-season meeting with permit holders to outline it's a privilege to hunt at Lake Ngā Roto and the expectations and responsibilities that go with this privilege,
- b. working with Fish and Game to advise other reserve visitors of the duck shooting season and alternative options during this period if they, or their dogs, will be disturbed by the sound of gunfire,
- c. requesting that Fish and Game continue their compliance work during the hunting season and working with them and the NZ Police on any complaints or incidents,
- d. working with Fish and Game on any specific maimai complaints, and
- e. exploring new restrictions on other reserve visitors during the open season and/or restrictions on the number of permits and/or maimais.

4.20 Prohibit the use of Remotely Piloted Aircraft Systems (drones) except for use in reserve management by Council or authorized persons, emergency management or as part of an approved concession.

4.21 Promote and enforce Council's Public Places Bylaw's resident only light vehicle access night time restrictions on Bank Road to reduce the risk to Lake Ngā Roto's visitors and reserve values from anti-social driving behaviours.

¹¹ The concessionaire will be responsible for ensuring that they fully comply with any statutory requirements, the District Plan and any relevant bylaws.

¹² Contained camping refers to self-contained motor homes and camper vans that require self-containment certification

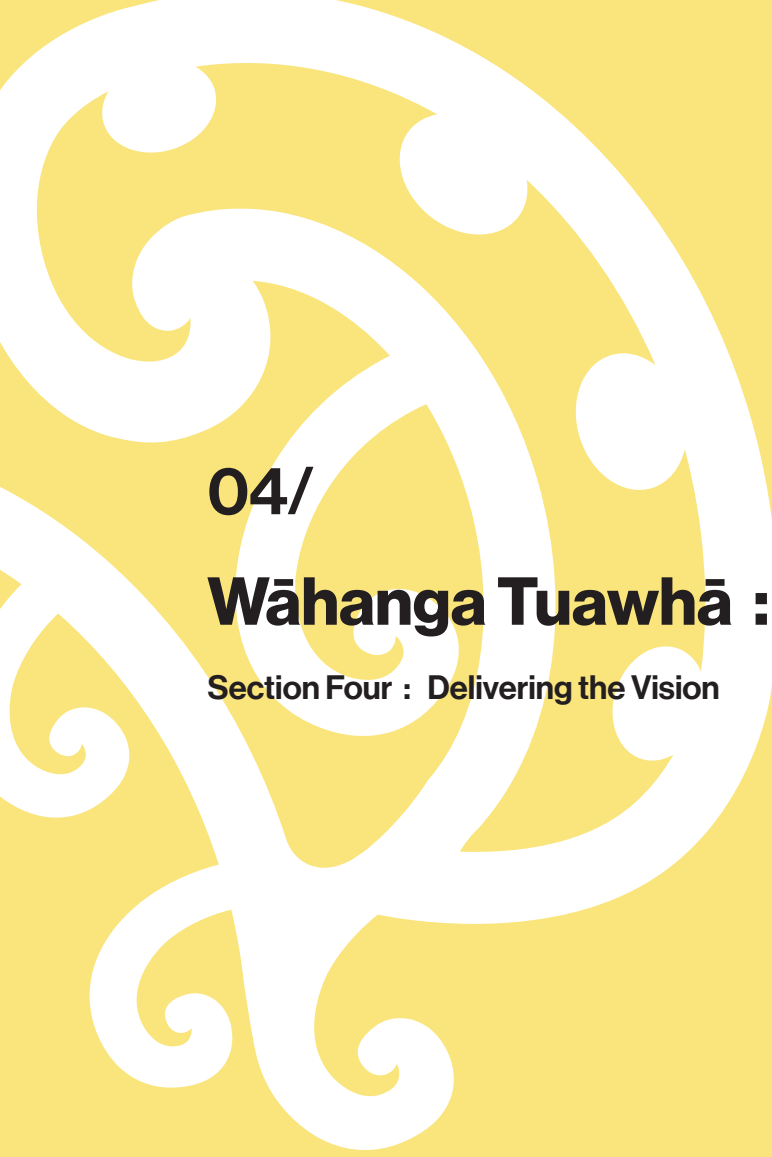
¹³ Conventional camping refers to any tent, caravan or other vehicle that does not need to be certified as a self contained unit.



He kupu whakamaarama | Explanation

The policies under this objective aim to enhance approved recreational opportunities at Lake Ngā Roto while preserving the reserve's values and providing for use and enjoyment and health and safety of all users. They provide for the continuation of current activities but with new requirements that recognise the privilege of being able to recreate at Lake Ngā Roto and the importance of everyone working together to achieve the vision for Lake Ngā Roto and enhance the visitor experience. They also provide for potential new activities and developments that align with the vision for Lake Ngā Roto.

Developing a concept plan for the Main Arrival Zone will enable a focused discussion on how to support, manage and enhance activities in this area and provide clear guidance for future developments. The reserve's accessibility will be improved through upgraded tracks, including a fully accessible lake circuit and potential wetland pathways, promoting both recreation and conservation.



04/

Wāhanga Tuawhā : Te Kōkiritanga

Section Four : Delivering the Vision

Development of Lake Ngā Roto zones

Within Lake Ngā Roto there are a range of zones aimed at protecting and restoring lake health and culturally significant sites and providing high quality facilities to support visitation and recreation. Table 2 outlines the desired experience, the activities provided for and the level of development for each zone. Roads and pathways support entry to and movement through the reserve.

Table 2. Lake Ngā Roto's Visitor Zones

Zone	Desired Experience	Activities and level/nature of development
 Main Arrival	Visitors feel welcomed to Lake Ngā Roto, understand that Lake Ngā Roto is significant to mana whenua and have a sense of respect and connection to Lake Ngā Roto and each other. Visitors know where to park and can easily and safely access key destinations such as the lake circuit track, toilets and picnic facilities. Visitors can learn about Lake Ngā Roto's history, natural values, mana whenua's connections and actions being taken to protect and restore Lake Ngā Roto. Visitors are made aware of any health warnings or risks that may affect their visit.	Activities include water-based recreation activities and storage, parking, walking and cycling, dog exercise, picnicing, events and event-related camping, freedom camping and fishing. A landscaped open space (with shade trees, screen planting along boundary and lake margin planting) with high quality infrastructure to support day and overnight visitors and sport, recreation and education activities such as carpark, toilets, picnicking facilities, clubrooms and storage, and café or mobile vendor(s).
 Lake	Sailors, rowers and paddlers can safely utilise the lake year-round. Approved parties can safely and easily undertake monitoring and research on the lake.	Activities include rowing, sailing and paddling, in-lake restoration activities and lake monitoring. Infrastructure limited to that required for monitoring programme, the weir, in-lake restoration initiatives and infrastructure to support recreational water access.
 Restored Lake Margins	Visitors of all ages and abilities can safely get active, come together, experience a thriving peat lake habitat and/or find respite while circumnavigating the lake by foot or bike. Visitors can learn about Lake Ngā Roto's history, natural values, mana whenua's connections and actions being taken to protect and restore Lake Ngā Roto. Visitors have places they can stop and rest and views to the lake and important sites.	Activities limited to on-track pedestrian and cyclist access, cultural harvesting and approved restoration initiatives. A thriving revegetated peat lake margin habitat with infrastructure limited to the lake circuit track, interpretation and way-finding signage and seating.
 Pā	To protect these significant archaeological sites, only mana whenua and approved contractors and researchers can access Pā. The management of these sites will enable mana whenua to experience them as they deem appropriate.	Activities limited to cultural, research and maintenance activities. Pā sites maintained to enable archaeological features to be visible unless an alternative management approach is agreed to by mana whenua and Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga.

 Wetlands	If a track is developed through here in the future, visitors of all ages and abilities can safely navigate through a restored wetland habitat and understand its importance to improving the mauri of Lake Ngā Roto.	Activities limited to on-track pedestrian and cyclist access, cultural harvesting and approved restoration initiatives. A thriving revegetated wetland habitat with infrastructure limited to the lake circuit track, interpretation and way-finding signage and seating.
 Access and Pathways	Emphasis is on safe and enjoyable circulation by foot and bike to most parts of Lake Ngā Roto (excluding pā and some wetland areas) that is accessible and usable by everyone, regardless of age, size, or ability. Access and pathways provide an opportunity for people to learn about Lake Ngā Roto.	Activities limited to vehicle access off Bank Road to the internal park road and on-track pedestrian and cyclist access. Infrastructure is limited to a sealed vehicle access road with adjoining swales, and a track network that consists of boardwalk and metalled tracks.

**KEY:
LAKE NGĀ ROTO'S VISITOR ZONES**

-  Reserve Management Plan Scope
-  Main Arrival Zone
-  Lake Zone
-  Restored Lake Margin Zone
-  Pā Zone
-  Wetland Zone
-  Wetland Zone (potential)
-  Access and Pathway Zone
-  1 Main entry point, car park and toilet
-  2 Secondary entry point, car park and public boat ramps
-  key viewshafts

SCALE
0 500m

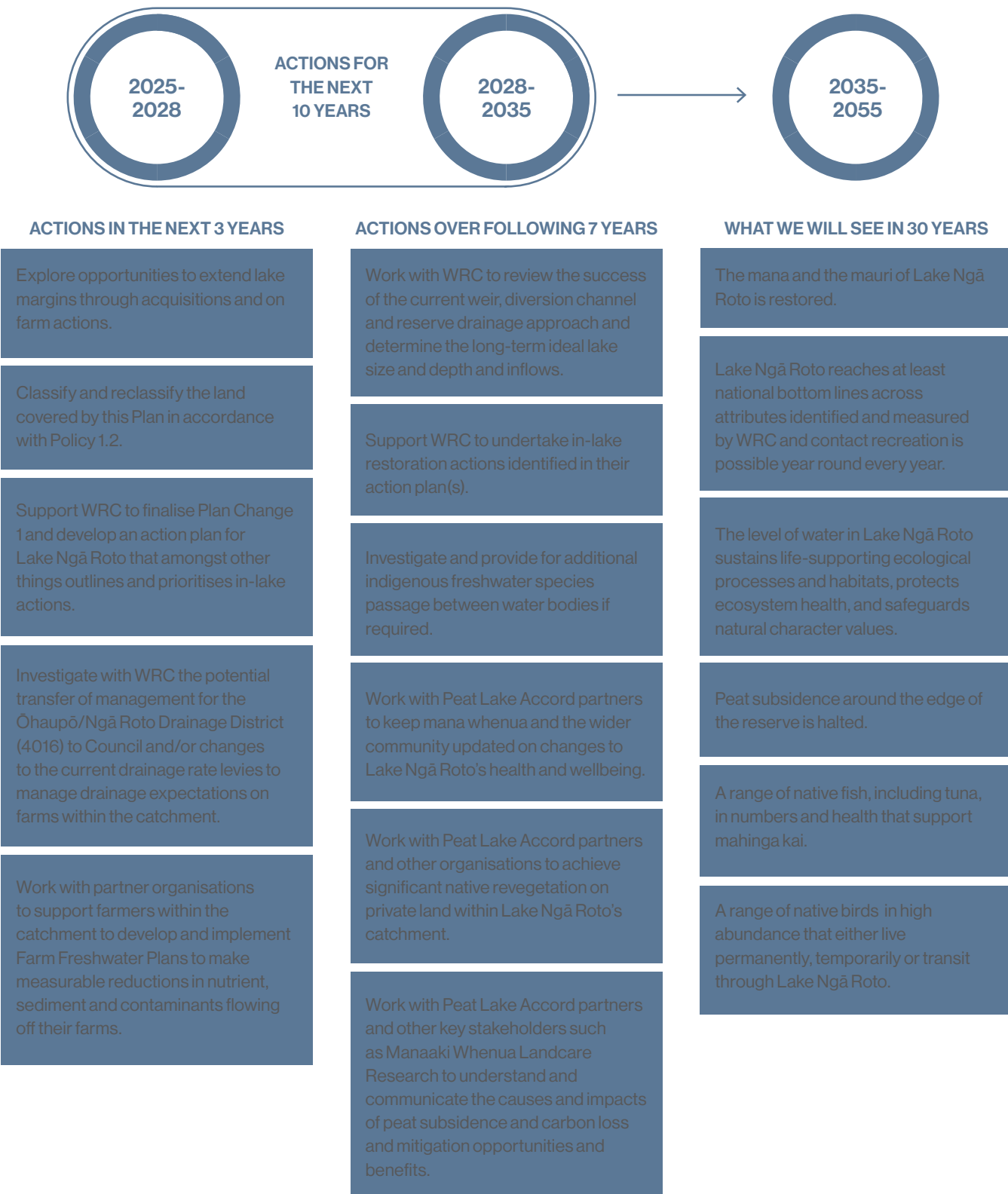



Figure 8 Map showing Lake Ngā Roto's Visitor Zones, key entry points and viewshafts

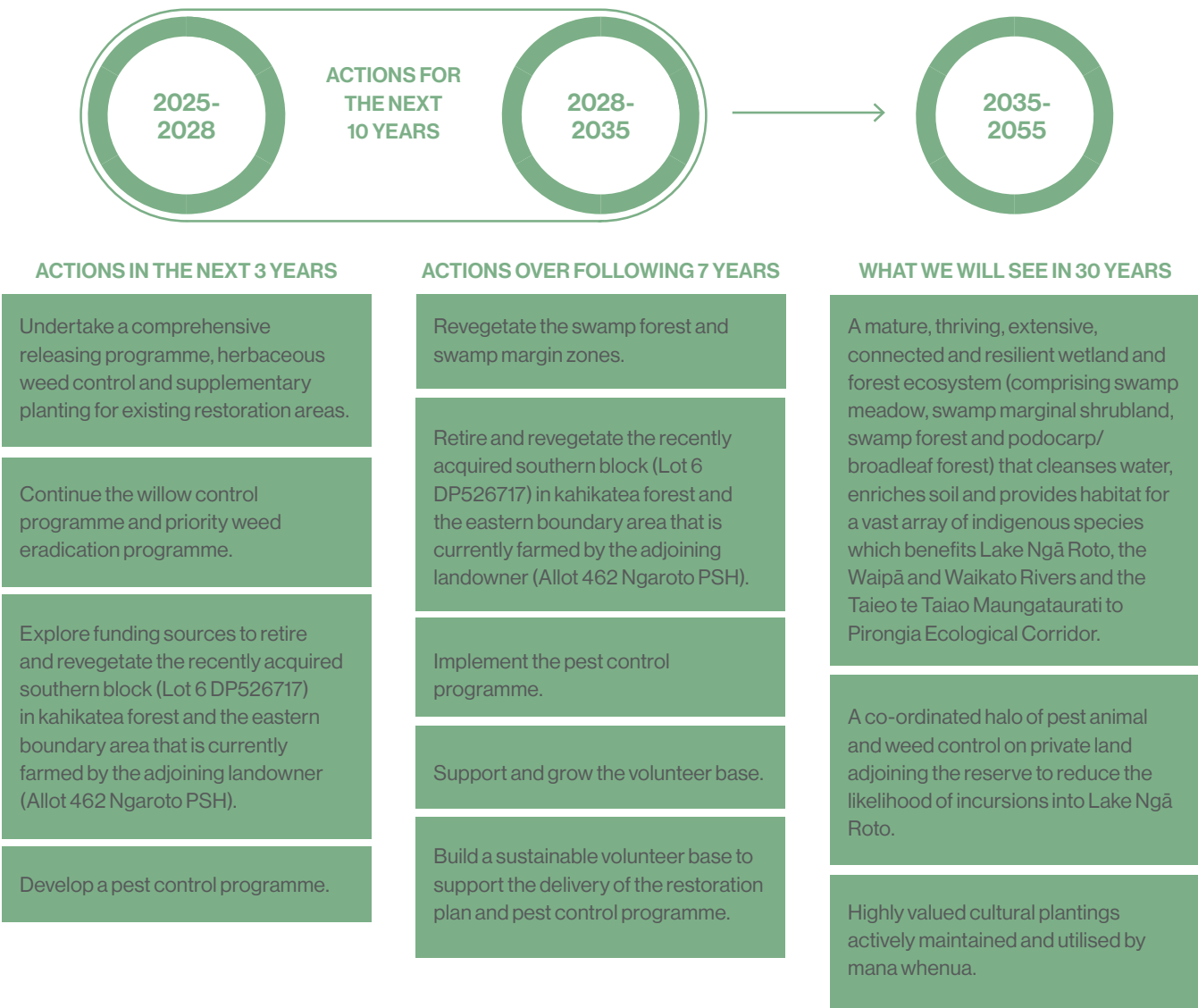
Management focus and expected outcomes

Council’s priorities for each objective for the next 10 years are set out in the tables below, together with a description of the desired outcome by 2055. Business as usual activities, such as maintenance, asset renewals, processing concession requests and monitoring and reporting, are not identified as these actions are assumed to continue.

Whāinga Tuatahi : Kia whakaora anō te mauri me te mana o Lake Ngā Roto
Objective One : The health and wellbeing of Lake Ngā Roto’s freshwater is restored

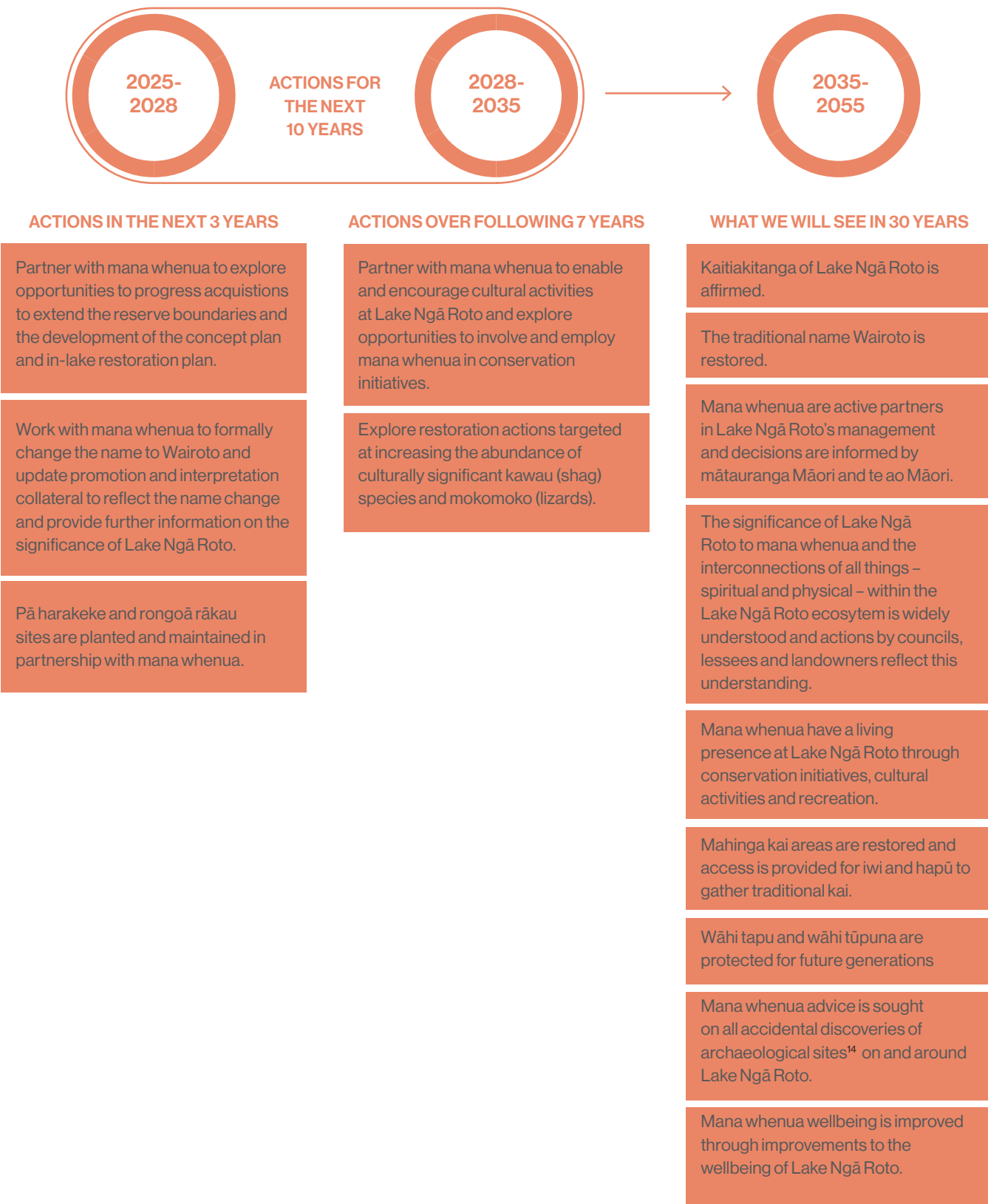


Whāinga Tuarua : Kia whakahokia a Tane Whakapiripiri ki a Papatūānuku
Objective Two : Lake Ngā Roto is a successful, thriving indigenous ecosystem that enhances Waipā’s biodiversity



Whāinga Tuatoru : Ka tū ngā Mana Whenua

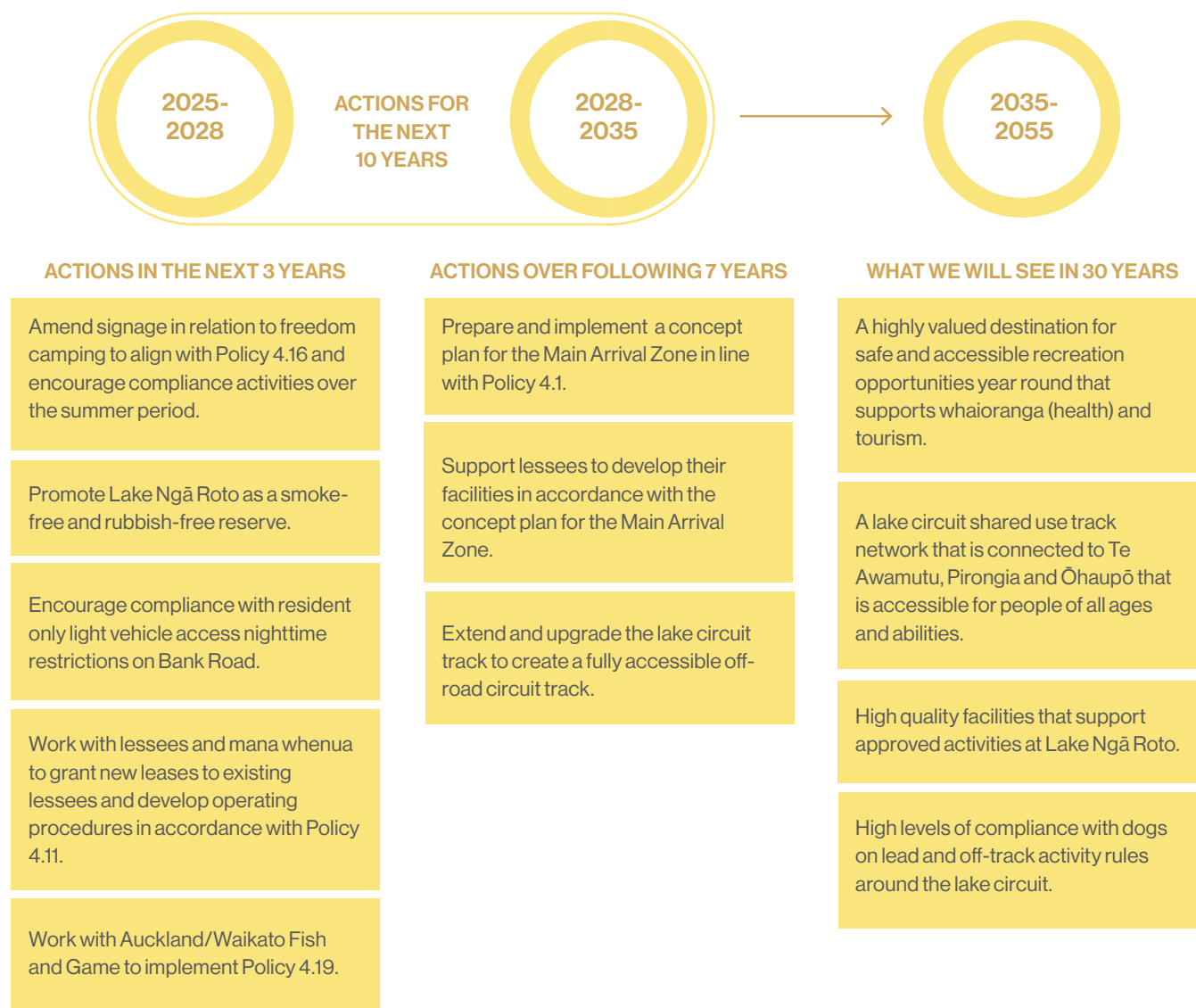
Objective Three : Mana whenua’s connections with Lake Ngā Roto are recognised and provided for and mātauranga Māori and tikanga are integrated into the governance and management of Lake Ngā Roto



14 Evidence of archaeological sites can include shell midden, oven stones, charcoal, modified soils, bone, ditches and banks, pits, Māori tools or artefacts, waka and kōiwi.

Whāinga Tuawhā : Kia maha ngā āheinga whakamahi mō ngā kaiwhakamahi puta noa

Objective Four : Recreational opportunities are enhanced for a range of users where they do not compromise the reserve values or impact other reserve users



Monitoring and reporting

To enable adaptive management to achieve the vision for Lake Ngā Roto we need to monitor and report on progress towards the objectives set out in this Plan. The table below sets out what will be measured. The text in italics identifies indicators that would be useful to measure if resourcing becomes available in the future.

WRC currently undertakes the lake health monitoring and Council is responsible for all the other monitoring.

Council will report against these measures in its activity management plans on a three yearly basis, and more regularly at the Peat Lakes Accord meetings.

Objective	What will be monitored
Objective One: The health and wellbeing of Lake Ngā Roto's freshwater is restored	Freshwater attributes against targets set by WRC, including: - Level of Nutrient Enrichment (Lake Trophic Level Index TLI) - Cyanobacterial recreational limit exceedance - Microbiological faecal levels (Escherichia coli) - Lake Submerged Plant Index - Phytoplankton biovolume and relative abundance - Water clarity (Secchi depth) - Water temperature and dissolved oxygen profiles Number of days per annum that health warnings recommending no contact recreation are in place per annum. <i>Percentage of farms within the catchment that have approved Farm Freshwater Plans.</i> <i>Water quality leaving farms</i> <i>Outflow water quality</i> <i>Pest fish v native fish abundance</i> <i>Healthy tuna at numbers that support kai harvesting</i>
Objective Two: Lake Ngā Roto is a successful, thriving indigenous ecosystem that enhances Waipā's biodiversity	Change in landcover/land use and drainage management Percentage of reserve land that has established native vegetation Maps and numbers of weed species recording during weed surveillance <i>Pest control monitoring</i> <i>Native bird abundance</i>

Objective Three:

Mana whenua's connections with Lake Ngā Roto are recognised and provided for and mātauranga Māori and tikanga are integrated into the governance and management of Lake Ngā Roto

Usage of Te Ara Wai Journeys¹⁵ website.

Number of cultural activities that occur per annum

Percentage of development proposals and concession requests that mana whenua's input and/or feedback is sought on

Mana whenua satisfaction with management of Lake Ngā Roto's water quality, conservation and protection of historic places, archaeological sites and wāhi tapu (sacred sites)

Tuna stocks

Monitoring and research are informed by mātauranga Māori and mana whenua are involved in the programme

Objective Four:

Recreational opportunities are enhanced for a range of users where they do not compromise the reserve's values or impact other reserve users

Lake circuit track counts

Annual lessee reports on how they have met Policy 4.12 requirements

Measures to reduce ecological degradation

Initiatives to better understand, share and respect mana whenua's spiritual, ancestral, cultural, customary and historical values

Club contribution to achieving the vision for Lake Ngā Roto

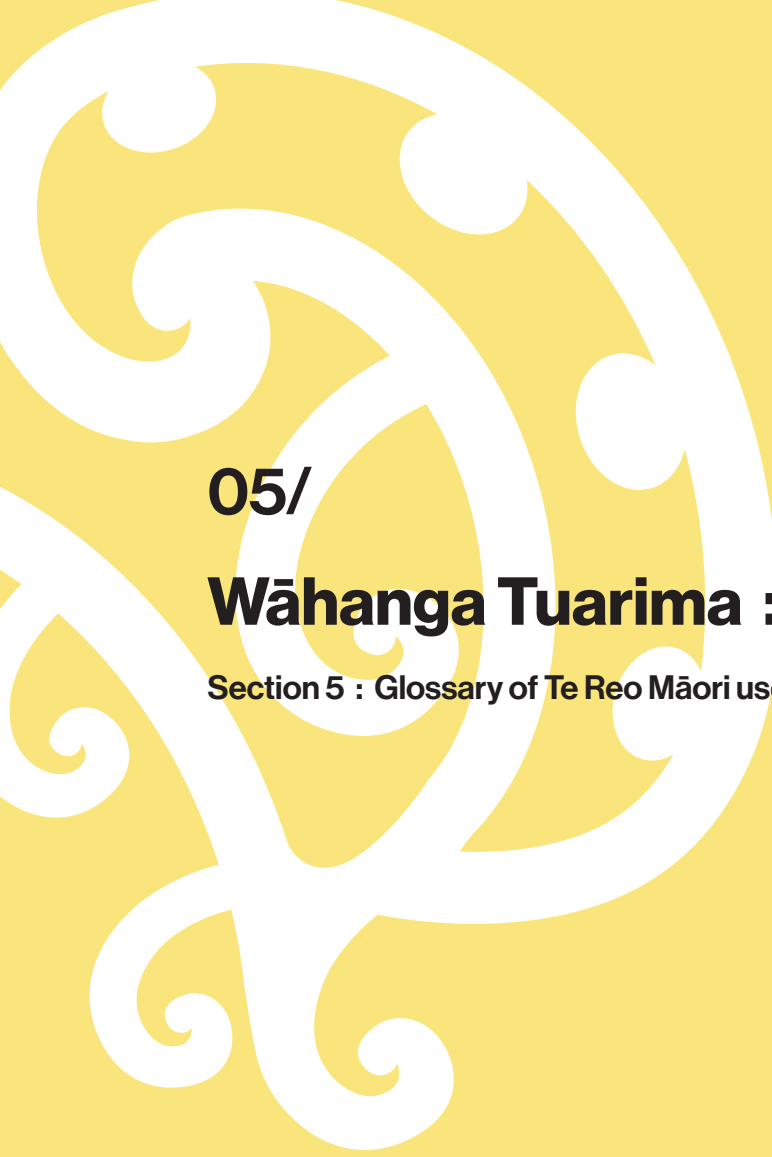
Adherence to health warnings and measures to mitigate risks to members and participants

Measures to reduce impacts of larger events on the reserve and other reserve users

3 yearly visitor satisfaction surveys

15 Number of individual Te Ara Wai Journeys App sessions.





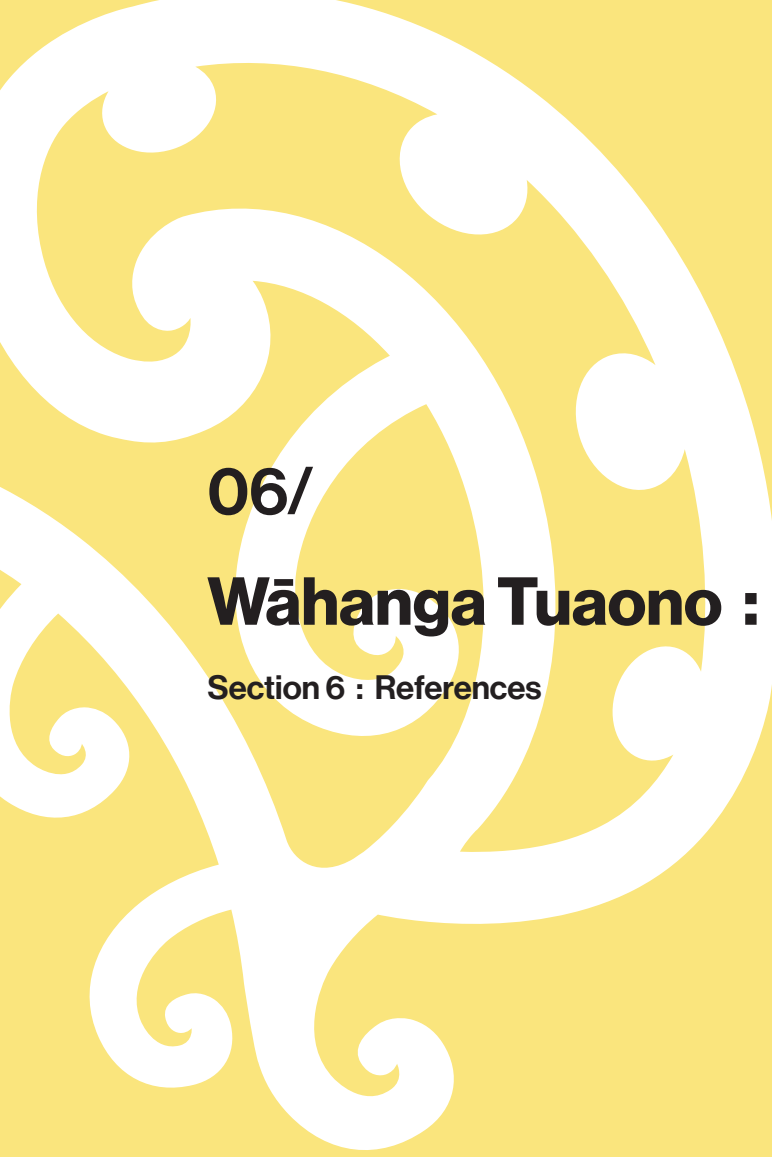
05/

Wāhanga Tuarima : Ngā Kupu Māori

Section 5 : Glossary of Te Reo Māori used throughout this Plan

Glossary of te reo Māori used throughout this Plan

awa	river	whakapapa	genealogy, lineage, descent, ancestry
hapū	sub-tribe	whenua	land
iwi	tribe	tūakana	elder brother/sister
kaitiaki	stewards	teina	younger brother/sister
kaitiakitanga	stewardship	whare tūpuna	ancestral house
mana	prestige, authority, control, power, influence, status, spiritual power, charisma - mana is a supernatural force in a person, place or object	waiata	song
mana whenua	indigenous people (Māori) who have historic and territorial rights over the land. In this Plan it refers to iwi and hapū (Māori tribal groups) who have these rights in Lake Ngā Roto	karakia	incantations/invocations
mātauranga Māori	the body of knowledge originating from Māori ancestors, including the Māori world view and perspectives, Māori creativity and cultural practices	wāhi tupuna	landscapes and places that embody the relationship of mana whenua and their culture and traditions with their ancestral lands, water, sites, wāhi tapu, and other taonga
mauri	life force	taonga	treasured possession or object
roto	lake		
tapu	sacredness		
taonga tuku iho	treasure passed down		
tikanga	correct procedure, custom, habit, lore, method, manner, rule, way, code, meaning, plan, practice, convention		
tuna	freshwater eel		
tūpuna	ancestors		
wāhanga	section		
wāhi tapu	sacred area/place		
wai	water		
wai tapu	sacred waters		



06/

Wāhanga Tuaono : Rārangi Pukapuka

Section 6 : References

References

Catchment Action Plan for Lake Ngā Roto, June 2015

Draft Ahu Ake – Waipā Community Spatial Plan, Waipā District Council

Environment Aotearoa 2022, Ministry for the Environment

Guidelines for landowners in peat lake catchments – current best management practices for farming sustainably to protect the peat lakes; Waikato Regional Council

Hingakaka-Ngā Roto Iwi Management Plan 2006

Lake Ngā Roto Biodiversity Assessment and Restoration Plan 2021-2031

Lake Ngā Roto Reserve Management Plan 2009

Lehmann, M. K., Hamilton, D. P., Muraoka, K., Tempero, G. W., Collier, K. J., Hicks, B. J. 2017. Waikato Shallow Lakes Modelling. ERI Report 94. Environmental Research Institute, University of Waikato, Hamilton, New Zealand

National Policy Statement Freshwater Management

National Policy Statement Indigenous Biodiversity

Ngā wai o Maniapoto (Waipā River) Act 2012

Shallow lakes restoration review: A literature review; Waikato Regional Council Technical Report 2018/13

State of the environment monitoring Waikato lake water quality, Waikato Regional Council Technical Report 2021/26

Te Ture Whaimana o Te Awa o Waikato – Vision & Strategy for the Waikato River

Waikato Region Shallow Lakes Management Plan: Volume 1, 2014

Waikato Region Shallow Lakes Management Plan: Volume 2, 2014

Waikato Regional Plan, Waikato Regional Council

Waikato Regional Policy Statement, Waikato Regional Council

Waikato-Tainui Raupatu Claims (Waikato River) Settlement Act 2010

Waikato – Waipā River Restoration Strategy – Te Rautaki Tāmata i Ngā Awa o Waikato me Waipā, Waikato Regional Council

Waipā District Peat Lakes and Wetlands Booklets; Waikato Regional Council and Peat Lakes Accord

Waipā District Plan, Waipā District Council

Waikato Regional Council Policy Series 2019/14 Land Drainage Management Plan 2019



Appendices

Appendix 1 Process followed to review the Lake Ngā Roto Reserve Management Plan 2009

5 Jun 2024	Council endorsed review of the RMP
27 Jun - 28 Jul 2024	Notified intent to review RMP (48 submissions)
Jun - Dec 2024	Pre-drafting engagement with mana whenua and key stakeholders
Aug - Dec 2024	Drafting
4 Feb 2025 (<i>tbc</i>)	Council endorsed draft RMP for consultation
Feb - Apr 2025 (<i>tbc</i>)	Notify draft (x submissions)
May 2025 (<i>tbc</i>)	Hearing and deliberations
Jul 2025 (<i>tbc</i>)	Council adopted the new RMP

Appendix 2 Summary of key documents that guide decisions to protect and restore Lake Ngā Roto

Te Tiriti o Waitangi | The Treaty of Waitangi

Te Tiriti o Waitangi / the Treaty of Waitangi (Te Tiriti) is the founding document of New Zealand.

Section 4 of the Conservation Act 1987, which references the Reserves Act in its First Schedule, contains an obligation to give effect to the principles of the Te Tiriti.

In performing functions and duties under the Reserves Act, the Council must also interpret the Reserves Act to give effect to the principles of Te Tiriti. The principles of Te Tiriti likely to be most relevant in making decisions on the management of Lake Ngā Roto are:

- Partnership – the mutual duties to act towards each other reasonably and in good faith are the core of the Treaty partnership.
- Informed decision making – being well-informed of mana whenua's interests and views. Early consultation is a means to achieve informed decision-making.
- Active protection – this involves the active protection of Māori interests retained under Te Tiriti.

It includes the promise to protect te tino rangatiratanga (sovereignty and self-determination) and taonga (treasures).

Mana whenua continue to maintain a presence and relationship with their ancestral sites and landscapes of significance. This relationship also extends to the taonga, and sites where historic events occurred, often within the boundaries of reserves. One way to give practical effect to the principles of Te Tiriti is to enable iwi or hapū to reconnect to their ancestral lands. The LGA also contains obligations to Māori, including to facilitate Māori participation in Council decision-making processes.

There are three treaty settlements related to the Waikato and Waipā Rivers and their catchments.

These are Waikato-Tainui Raupatu Claims (Waikato River) Settlement Act 2010, Ngāti Tuwharetoa, Raukawa, and Te Arawa River Iwi Waikato River Act 2010 and Ngā wai o Maniapoto (Waipā River) Act 2012. These acts established the Vision and Strategy for the Waikato River/Te Ture Whaimana o Te Awa o Waikato (Vision and Strategy) as the primary direction setting document for the Waikato and Waipā Rivers. The Vision and Strategy prevails over any inconsistencies in a national policy statement or New Zealand coastal policy statement and is deemed to be part of the Waikato Regional Policy Statement. The Vision and Strategy states that the Waikato and Waipā Rivers are degraded and require, amongst other things, restoration and protection. At the time of writing this Plan, Te Ture Whaimana was also under review.

The Waikato-Tainui Raupatu Claims (Waikato River) Settlement Act 2010 applies to the Waikato River and its catchment, described in the legislation as:

1. The body of water known as the Waikato River flowing continuously or intermittently from the Huka Falls to the mouth of the Waikato River shown as located within the areas marked 'A' and 'B' on SO plan 409144, and
2. All tributaries, streams and watercourses flowing into the part of the Waikato River described in subparagraph (i), to the extent to which they are within the areas marked 'A' and 'B' on SO plan 409144, and
3. Lakes and wetlands within the areas marked 'A' and 'B' on SO plan 409144, and
4. The beds and banks of the water bodies described in subparagraphs (i) to (iii).

sustainable development approach.

The long-term plan and annual plans, local bylaws, asset management plans and development of Council policy are all undertaken in accordance with the LGA.

The LGA also contains obligations to Māori, including to facilitate Māori participation in council decision-making processes.

Resource Management Act 1991

The Resource Management Act 1991 (RMA) is the main piece of legislation that regulates the management of Aotearoa New Zealand's land, air and water, including the use, development and protection of these. The RMA provides councils with specific powers, functions and duties in giving effect to the purpose of the RMA. The RMA applies to all land from a regulatory perspective such as a requirement for a resource consent where the council is undertaking works on a park.

National Policy Statement Freshwater Management 2020

This policy statement sets regulations for managing New Zealand's freshwater resources, prioritising the health and well-being of freshwater ecosystems. It emphasizes the protection of wetlands and streams, including those connected to peat lakes, by mandating actions that safeguard water quality and ecosystem function. For a peat lake reserve, this would include strict controls on activities that could lead to nutrient runoff, pollution, or water extraction that might degrade the unique hydrology of peat lakes.

National Policy Statement Indigenous Biodiversity 2023

This policy statement focuses on protecting and enhancing indigenous biodiversity, particularly in areas like wetlands that are home to threatened species and ecosystems. For a peat lake reserve, the policy would guide actions to prevent habitat destruction, promote native species regeneration, and control invasive species. Management would need to ensure that the biodiversity of the peat lake's flora and fauna is preserved and enhanced in accordance with ecological significance assessments outlined in the policy.

Waikato Regional Policy Statement (WRPS) and Waikato Regional Plan (WRP)

The WRPS provides overarching objectives, policies,

and methods for sustainable management of the natural and physical resources in the Waikato region. The WRP translates the high-level objectives of the WRPS into detailed rules, regulations, and action plans that directly manage natural resources. Specifically, it covers how activities in the Waipā District that affect peat lakes are controlled.

They seek to prevent further degradation of these lakes and preserve peatland and wetland by regulating activities in surrounding agricultural land and encouraging restoration projects.

Plan Change 1 – Waikato and Waipā River Catchments (PC1), prepared in accordance with Te Ture Whaimana o te Awa o Waikato (the vision and strategy for the Waikato River), establishes a regulatory framework for managing diffuse discharges (N, P, sediment and microbial pathogens) from farming activities in the Waikato and Waipā River catchments. The plan change sets 80-year water quality targets for peat lakes in the freshwater management unit and encourages implementation of tailored lake-by-lake approaches via development of Lake Catchment Plans (building on the Shallow Lakes Management Plan established in 2015) over the next 10-years.

PC1 also directs WRC to work with stakeholders to develop and implement sub-catchment scale plans to identify issues/causes, investigate impacts of diffuse discharges, develop adaptive management and mitigation approaches, align works and services to reduce contaminants, support research, coordinate funding of mitigation works and utilise public funds to support edge of field mitigations where they provide significant public benefit.

At the time of writing this Plan, PC1 appeals had been heard and WRC was awaiting a decision from the Environment Court. The sections of the Operative Regional Plan relating to freshwater were being reviewed with a new plan intended to be notified in 2027. The PC1 provisions will be brought through into the new plan and through this process there may be some review to the PC1 provisions to align with the new National Policy Statement Freshwater Management. There will be an opportunity for tangata whenua, sector and community engagement on the new regional plan prior to notification.

DRAFT Ahu Ake Waipā Community Spatial Plan

Acting as a blueprint for the Waipā District for the next 30 years, this document highlights the importance of the Lake Ngā Roto and the other peat lakes and the need to protect and restore their health and wellbeing at a landscape scale. In relation to Lake Ngā Roto specifically, it directs the growth of Ōhaupō away from its catchment,

promotes improving shared paths to it from towns and villages, highlights necessary changes to historic rural drainage regimes, and identifies the ability for revegetation to contribute to a carbon offset programme. It notes that increased pace of funding for biodiversity improvements for peat lakes and land acquisition and on farm actions will be required.

Waipā District Council's Long Term Plan (LTP)

Council's strategic direction consists of a vision, community outcomes and guiding principles. This direction is outlined in the Council's LTP and is used to inform the ten year work programme for Lake Ngā Roto and other parks and reserves which is also set through the LTP. The LTP is reviewed every three years and always involves public consultation.

Waipā District Plan

The Waipā District Plan sets a framework for the development and management of resources in the district. It establishes objectives and policies for managing the environmental effects of development in accordance with the Resource Management Act 1991. It defines the various zones (residential, rural, business, open space, etc.) and the rules for activities and land uses. In this way the District Plan has a very strong influence over all activities that occur in the district. The plan also provides for environment benefit lots as an incentive to widen the buffer around Lake Ngā Roto and identifies and sets rules related to SNAs.

Bylaws

Council uses bylaws to make rules about a range of behaviours and activities on parks to help ensure public safety and enjoyment of parks by all who want to use them. At the time of writing this management plan, bylaws have been adopted that cover a range of behaviours and activities on Lake Ngā Roto including:

- Consumption of alcohol (through the provision for temporary bans if deemed necessary)
- Access for people with dogs or other animals
- Vehicle access (during night-time hours and in certain areas within the reserve at all times)
- Antisocial and nuisance behaviour
- Display of signs
- Trading and events

Where a bylaw exists, the reserve management plan will defer to the bylaw and not develop separate policy that could potentially conflict with a bylaw.

Most bylaws simply require compliance with specified rules for the activity, however, some such as the Public Places Bylaw may require a prior approval for specific activities.

Over time, Council may amend these bylaws or create new bylaws that are relevant to Lake Ngā Roto. The development and review of bylaws is a statutory process and always involves public consultation.

Waipā Parks Activity Management Plan (AMP)

The AMP provide details about the network of parks and are used as the basis of work programmes and budgets included in the LTP. Specifically, they provide the following information:

- description of the activity and the assets needed to undertake the activity,
- the level of service Council will provide to the community over the ten-year period from when the plan was prepared,
- performance measures used to monitor whether the activity is delivering the level of service we set out to achieve,
- how the activity will be funded,
- details of any new project or expenditure planned for the next ten years, and
- assumptions used in preparing the plan and the uncertainties and risks involved in undertaking the activities.

Ngā Roto Biodiversity Assessment and Restoration Plan 2022

Council commissioned Singers Ecological to undertake a biodiversity assessment and prepare a restoration plan to provide a stocktake of where the restoration process has got to in 2021, identify what key challenges remain, and the priorities going forward. The plan resulted in the planting plan in Appendix 8 for the land the currently comprising Lake Ngā Roto

Appendix 3 Ownership, administration and classification of land covered by this Plan

	LEGAL DESCRIPTION	AREA (ha)		ADMINISTERING BODY	LAND STATUS
1	Allot 481 Ngaroto PSH	107.500	Crown	WDC Appointed to control and manage (gazette notice 1984 p.853)	Recreation Reserve (gazette notice 1984 p.853)
2	Allot 461 Ngaroto PSH	17.500	WDC	WDC Vested (gazette 1957 p.97)	Recreation Reserve (gazette notice 1979 p.462)
3	Allot 462 Ngaroto PSH	16.000	WDC	WDC Vested (gazette 1957 p.97)	Recreation Reserve (gazette notice 1979 p.462)
4	Allot 454 Ngaroto PSH	0.9156	WDC	WDC Vested (gazette notice 1974 p.328)	Recreation Reserve (gazette notice 1979 p.462)
5	Allot 460 Ngaroto PSH	0.1241	WDC	WDC Vested (gazette notice 1974 p.328)	Recreation Reserve (gazette notice 1979 p.462)
6	Section 1 Block XIV Hamilton SD	1.9273	WDC	WDC Vested (gazette notice 1974 p.328)	Recreation Reserve (gazette notice 1979 p.462)
7	Section 2 Block XIV Hamilton SD	1.5631	WDC	WDC Vested (gazette notice 1974 p.328)	Recreation Reserve (gazette notice 1979 p.462)
8	Parcel ID 4586983	5.6393	WDC	WDC	Unformed legal road
9	Part Parcel ID 4604108	10.5836	WDC	WDC	Unformed legal road
10	Lot 6 DP 526717	9.6792	WDC	WDC Acquired in 2018 and transferred in 2019	Fee simple under Local Government Act
11	Allot 54A Mangapiko PSH	3.5612	Crown	WDC Vested (gazette notice 1974 p.328)	Recreation Reserve (gazette notice 1979 p.462)

Appendix 4 Reserve acquisition and governance timeline

Pre-1974	The Te Awamutu Borough Council administered a small portion of Crown land adjoining Bank Road as a public domain. This land parcel provided public access to the lake. The bed of the lake and remaining Crown land inside the paper road, was administered by the Department of Lands and Survey.
1974	The Te Awamutu Borough relinquished control of the Domain land and the Minister of Lands declared the land to be a reserve, pursuant to Section 42(4) of the Reserves and Domains Act 1953. The reserve was then vested with the Waipā County Council. The Minister also approved the setting apart for recreation purposes, 34.0ha of Crown land adjoining the lakebed. Vesting conditions required Council to ensure that the areas of historic and archaeological significance were preserved, and that wildlife habitat associated with the lake was protected as far as possible. Waipā County Council accepted the vesting and conditions in a letter to the Commissioner dated 7 May 1974, and agreed to prepare a management plan, acceptable to the Department of Lands and Survey, Wildlife Division of the Department of Internal Affairs and the NZ Historic Places Trust. The Waipā County Council then approached the Marine Division, Ministry of Transport to gain control of the waters of Lake Ngā Roto to manage a growing use of the lake for sailing and rowing. Both the Auckland Acclimatisation Society and the Wildlife Division of the Department of Internal Affairs objected to this proposal. Both agencies stated the lake was a significant wetland and water bird habitat, and promoting recreational use would not in their view, recognise the lake's ecological significance. They suggested the bed of the lake be classified a Government Purpose Reserve (Wildlife Management) and management responsibilities be retained by the Crown. This matter was resolved by Waipā County Council agreeing to: "...Provide an advisory body to which such matters as public relations promotion, appointment of inspectors under a proposed bylaw and the integration of the many other aspects of management can be referred to expert opinion. It was felt that the cooperation of this committee would give full weight to the balanced use of the lake with the Acclimatisation Society's aims being protected while controlling public usage of the facilities already established". Both the Acclimatisation Society and the Wildlife Division of the Department of Internal Affairs would be represented on the Committee.
1979	A Management Plan was completed and approved by the Waipā County Council.
1982	Waipā County Council was granted control of the foreshore, lake bed and water, for a period of 21 years by an Order in Council under the Harbours Act 1950.
1983	The Lake Ngā Roto Bylaws were promoted and approved.
1984	The Crown classified the Allot 481 Ngaroto PSH which includes the lake bed recreation reserve and appointed Waipā County Council to control and manage the parcel.
1989	Local Government Review transferred responsibility for the management of the Lake Reserve to the Waipā District Council.
1991	Resource Management Act 1991 was enacted. The Order in Council made under the Harbours Act 1950 to control boating use was subsequently repealed, and responsibility for managing surface water activities now rests with WRC.
2009	The Management Plan was reviewed and a new Reserve Management Plan adopted.
2010	Waikato-Tainui Raupatu Claims (Waikato River) Settlement Act 2010 enacted
2012	Ngā wai o Maniapoto (Waipā River) Act 2012 enacted.
2019	Council acquired Lot 6 DP526717

Appendix 5 Overview of Pā surrounding Lake Ngā Roto

Te Pūtere Pā (S15/7)

This is another island mound, 0.4ha in area, some 2.0m above the lake level. Test excavations by the Waikato Archaeological Group suggested a long and continuous occupation, with ash, charcoal, shell and oven stones to 1.8m. There was a line of posts about 5.0m apart along the lake frontage suggesting a fence or taiapa, but no palisade fortification. The circuit track was diverted around the western most extremity of this island Pā and a barrier rail was installed to protect the Pā's sensitivities from walking or cycling damage.

Te Moutere Pā (S15/9)

This Pā site is largely situated on privately owned land, partially within unformed road and partially within reserve. This was a human-made island built on the peat substrate some 200m from the original shoreline. The materials used to construct the mound were excavated from the surrounding hill sides, which still show signs of quarrying. Oven and grinding stones were believed to have been carried from Te Rore, 10km north west. The Pā was not fortified, but again a fence or taiapa stood around the perimeter in 1920.

Excavations by the Waikato Archaeological Group, revealed 25 layers of ash, charcoal, sands, clays and living floors covering approximately 2.0m of peat. Evidence suggests this Pā pre-dates the others and that the lake was manipulated (raised) for defensive purposes. Resulting levels were higher than the other natural mounds that were later used for Pā.

Unnamed Pā (S15/5)

A natural mound, likely to have been an island some 2.0m above the lake where the Sailing Club House now stands. Deposits of ash, charcoal and stone to 0.5 – 1.0m, suggest a long period of settlement. An interesting feature of this Pā were underwater palisades possibly to impede the approach of canoes. These have since been removed to prevent damage to recreational craft. A few metres south of the Pā was a site local people referred to as the "canoe harbour" further emphasising the long use of the lake and its importance in supplying food and materials.

Turangamirumiru Pā (S15/8)

This Pā is 100m west of the lake straddling a north south orientated ridge line. It consisted of 12 or more whare sites, terracing, ditches and pits. Early signs of cultivation on the northern slopes (varying shades of grass colour) together with the Pā's physical features have largely been destroyed by farming. This Pā was mentioned by Kelly's in his book "Tainui" as the gathering place of the Waikato Tribes before the battle of Hingakaka in 1807. In "Nga Iwi O Tainui: The Traditional History of the Tainui People", Nga koorero tuku iho a nga tuupuna, Pei Te Hurinui Jones wrote about Tauranga-mirumiru, home to twin sisters, Reituu and Reipae who became known for their beauty, to the extent of the Far North. 5 Marital alliances were formed between the twins and Ngāpuhi chiefs. Occupying around 0.7ha, this Pā is significant in Māori history; likely a place of refuge from colonial war and not a defensive Pā.

Unnamed Pā (S15/76)

Originally thought to be a headland jutting out into the lake, this Pā is flanked by a stand of mature trees. As is the case with Turangamirumiru, S15/76 is wholly located on private property. Situated on the west side of Bank Road, 100m from the reserve. It has largely been destroyed although traces of charcoal and stone chips are still evident.

Appendix 6 Lake Ngā Roto freshwater attribute targets and baselines

At the time of writing this Plan, the National Policy Statement Freshwater Management set out attributes to measure restoration of freshwater values and PC1 identified Peat Lake Freshwater Management Unit targets for each attribute. These and the state of Lake Ngā Roto at the time of drafting this Plan are recorded here so progress can be measured when this Plan is reviewed.

Value	Attribute	Target ¹⁶	Lake Ngā Roto ¹⁷	Importance
Ecosystem health (trophic state)	Annual Median Chlorophyll -a (mg/m ³)	12	54	Measures trophic status of a lake which provides an indication of how much growth or productive occurs in a lake, with productivity directly related to the availability of nutrients.
Ecosystem health (trophic state)	Annual Maximum Chlorophyll ¹⁸ -a (mg/m ³)	60	390	As above.
Ecosystem health	Annual Median Ammonia (mg NH ₄ -N/L)	0.24	0.01 (A band)	Affects survival of some species.
Ecosystem health	Annual Maximum Ammonia (mg NH ₄ -N/L)	0.40	0.610 (B band)	As above.
Ecosystem health	Annual Median Nitrogen (mg/m ³)	750	1950 (D band)	Excessive algal/plant growth impacts ecological communities.
Ecosystem health (aquatic life)	Annual Maximum Nitrogen (mg/m ³)	50	Not available.	As above.
Human health for recreation Mahinga kai	95th percentile (E.coli/100mL)	540	162.5 (A band)	Risk of infection/illness from contact/ ingestion.
Human health for recreation Mahinga kai	80th percentile Cyanobacteria ¹⁹ (biovolume mm ³ /L)	1.8	1.118	Toxic algae, makes people sick. Risks include respiratory, irritation, allergy symptoms.
Human health for recreation	Clarity (m)	1	0.66	Affects people's safety (ability to see obstacles in water) and desire to swim.
Ecosystem health (aquatic life)	Phytoplankton ²⁰ median (mg CHL a-m-3)	n/a	54.000 (D band)	Excessive algal/plant growth impacts ecological communities
Ecosystem health (aquatic life)	Phytoplankton maximum (mg CHL a-m-3)	n/a	390.000 (D band)	Excessive algal/plant growth impacts ecological communities
Ecosystem health (aquatic life)	Total phosphorous median (mg L-1)	n/a	0.098 (D band)	Excessive algal/plant growth impacts ecological communities
Ecosystem health (aquatic life)	Lake Submerged Plant (Native Condition Index)	n/a	0.000 (D band)	
Ecosystem health (water quality)	Lake-bottom dissolved oxygen	n/a	0.90 (D band)	

¹⁶ Target set in the Waikato Regional Council Plan Change 1 Table 3.11-1(d) Peat Lake FMU 80 year target (by 2096) unless the lake is already of better water quality in which case the target is to not decline.

¹⁷ Monitoring results provided by WRC.

¹⁸ Photosynthetic pigment found in plants and algae, including phytoplankton

¹⁹ Floating bacteria that can photosynthesise lake true algae. Some species produce toxins.

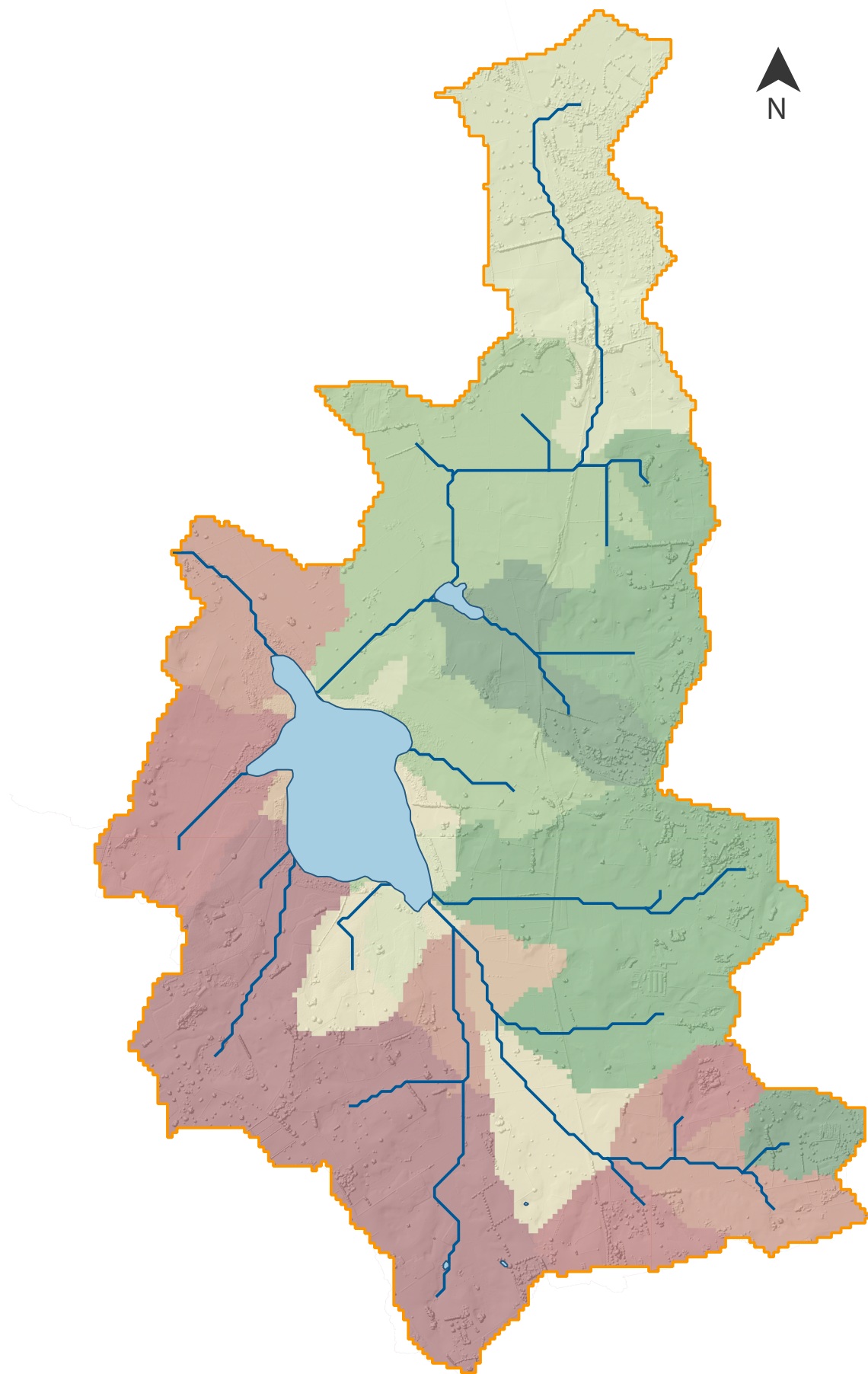
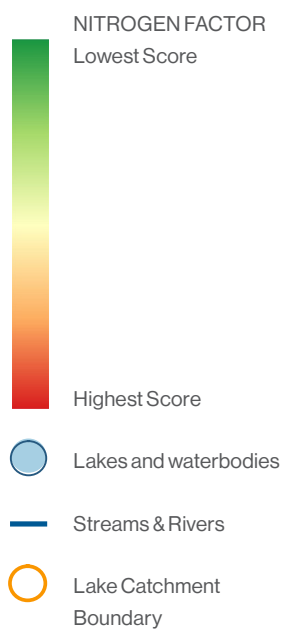
²⁰ Microscopic algae and cyanobacteria that drift or float in the water column.

Appendix 7 Lake Ngā Roto nitrogen, phosphorous, E.coli and sediment risk areas

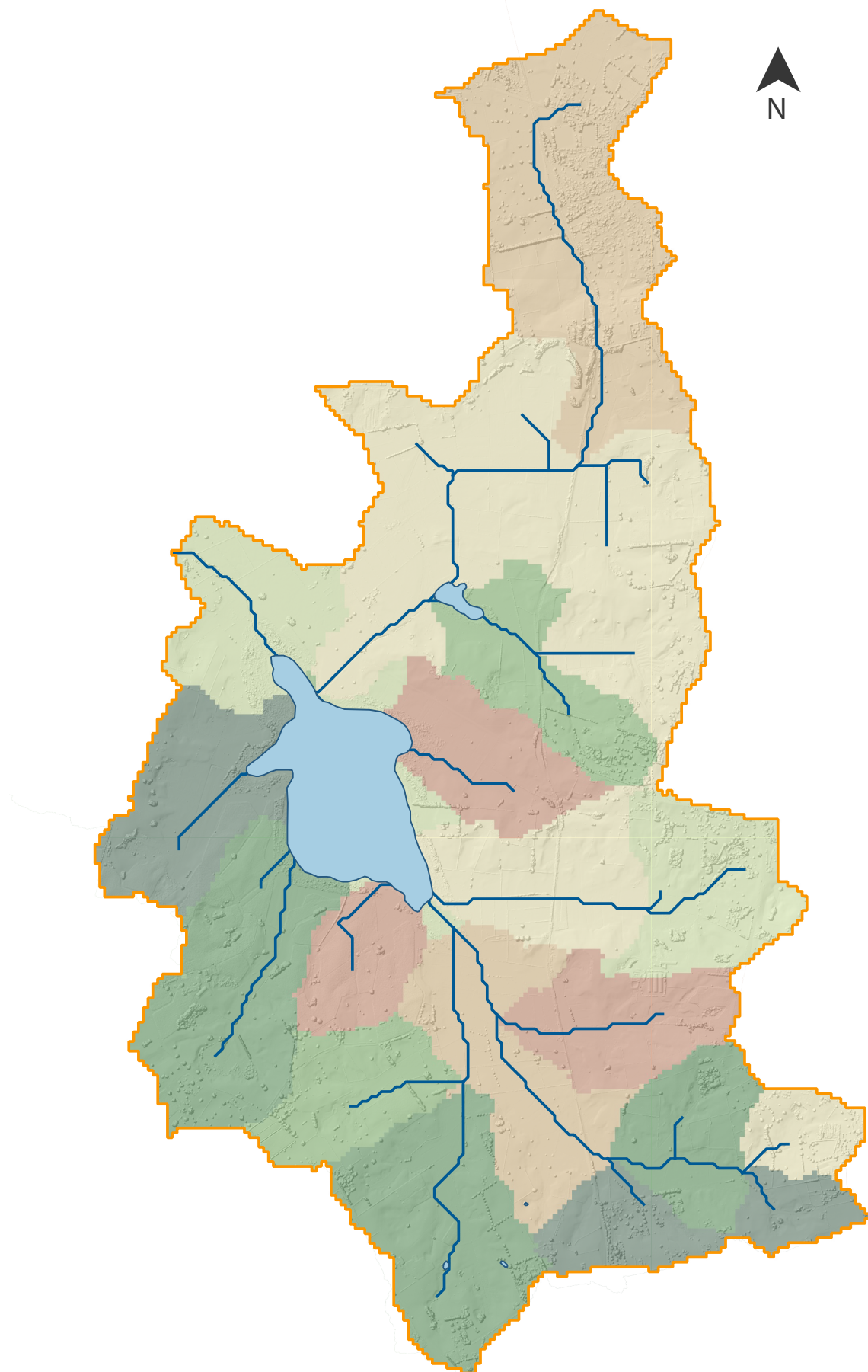
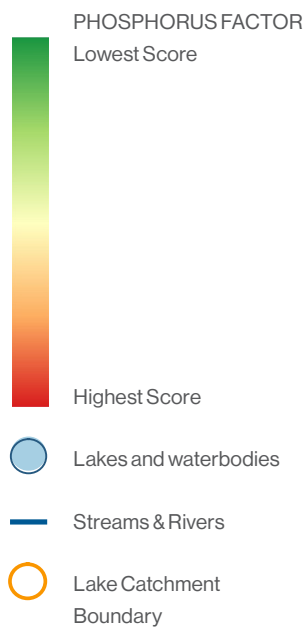
(Source: Waikato Prioritisation Framework²¹)

21 Waikato Prioritisation Framework combines multiple sourced spatial model data and applies geospatial analysis techniques to derive prioritisation rankings (scores) for managing soil conservation and water quality, at multiple scales across the Waikato region. The hydrological and land use framework provides the 'base' on which multiple spatial model data are imposed for the various spatial analyses to create the outputs used for prioritisation. The WPF provides for spatial analysis at multiple scales. This is enabled by the contiguous hydrological framework on which the spatial analysis is based. To provide the flexibility WRC require for decision making and mitigation implementation, the finest scale units (reach-watersheds) which have an average area of about 26 ha, can be aggregated into WRC defined sub-catchments and management zones

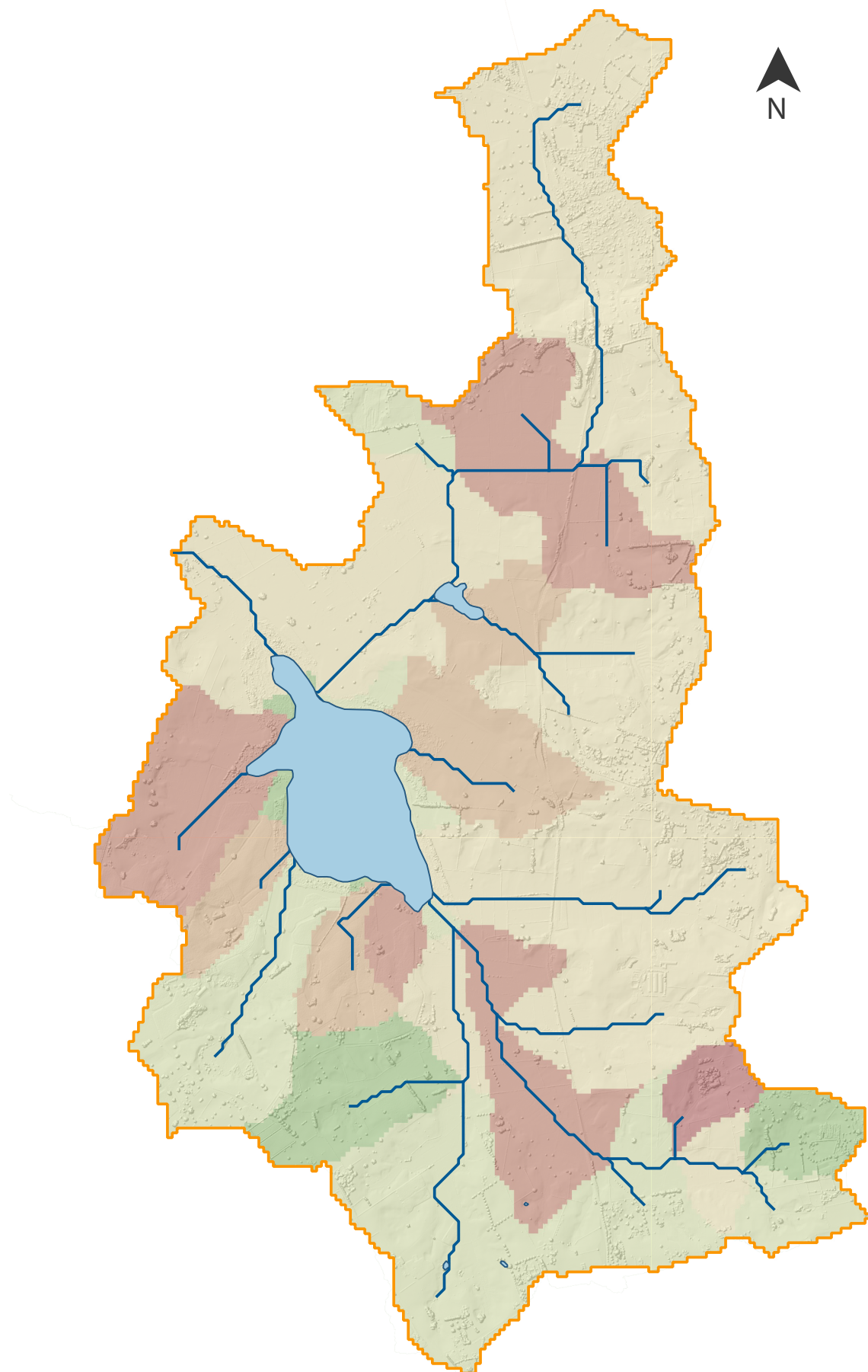
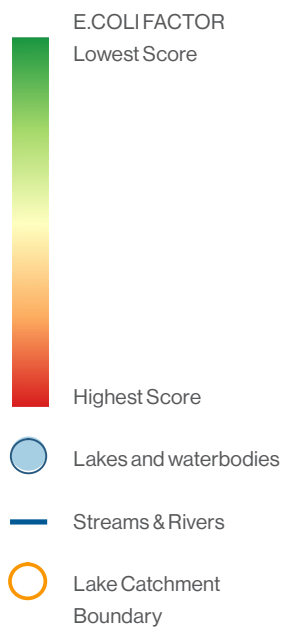
KEY:
NITROGEN FACTOR WRPP20
WATERQUAL LAKE NG? ROTO



KEY:
PHOSPHORUS FACTOR WRPP20
WATERQUAL LAKE NGĀ ROTO



KEY:
E.COLI FACTOR WRPP20
WATERQUAL LAKE NG? ROTO



Appendix 8 Restoration planting plan

(Source: Ngā Roto Biodiversity Assessment and Restoration Plan 2022)

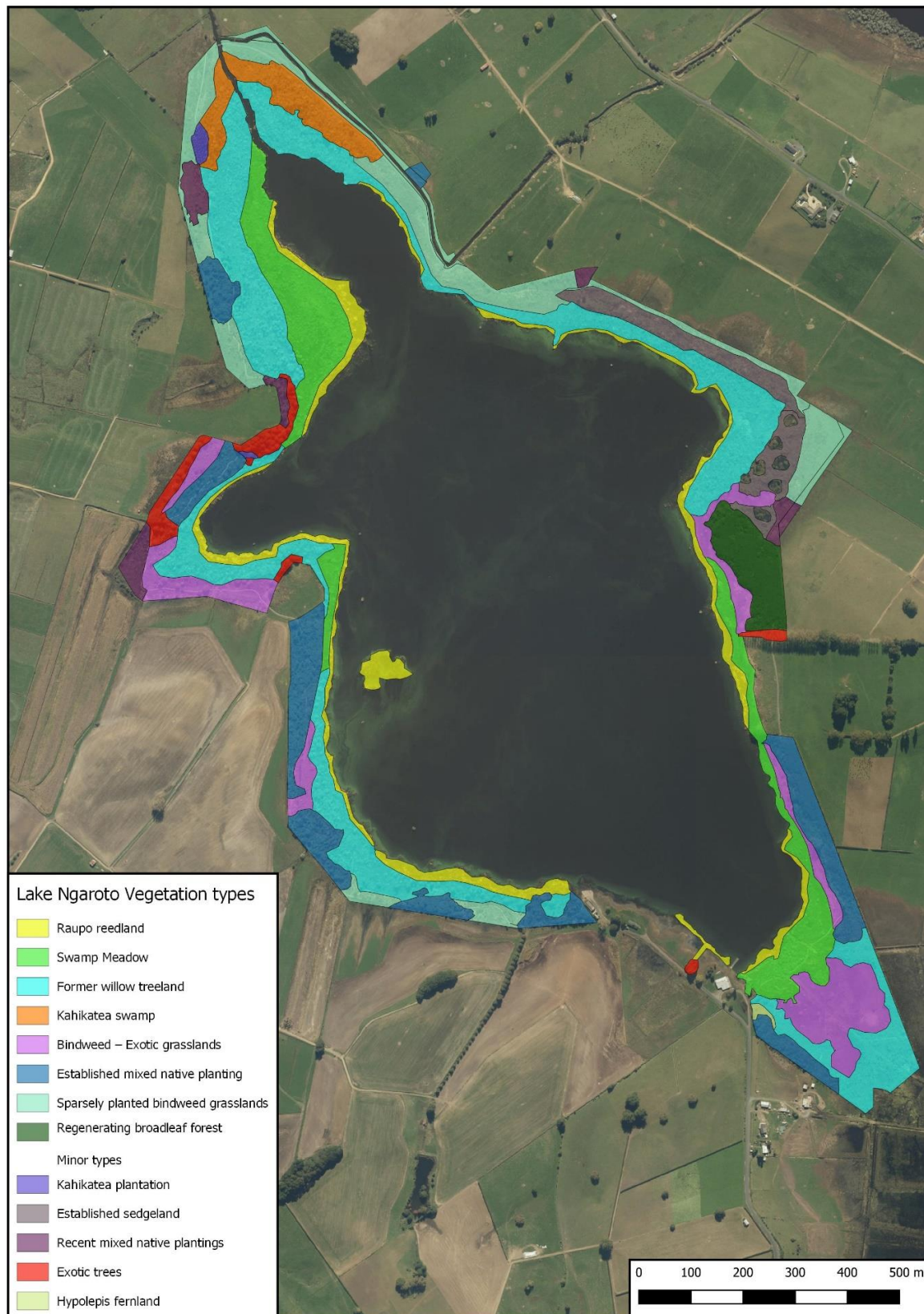
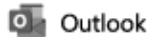


Figure 2: Vegetation Map of Ngā Roto, 61.1 ha of vegetation mapped. Areas of pasture/mown grass, and water are not included on this map.



APPENDIX 3

Email received from Waikato Regional Council (document ID 11447617)



External Sender: RE: Lake Ngā Roto RMP review

From Dawn Pritchard [REDACTED]
Date Tue 8/04/2025 8:27 AM
To Aidan Kirkby-McLeod [REDACTED] Anna McEirea [REDACTED]

CYBER SECURITY WARNING: This email is from an external source - be careful of attachments and links. Please follow the Cybersecurity Policy and report suspicious emails to Servicedesk
 Tēnā kōrua,

Upon further review, in lieu of a submission, we would like to instead extend our sincere thanks for considering and incorporating Waikato Regional Staff's initial comments into the draft Lake Ngā Roto Reserve Management Plan.

Your efforts in this regard are greatly appreciated. We believe that continued collaboration is essential for the success of our shared goals. Therefore, we encourage further discussions with your staff to explore and refine matters including any lake restoration techniques.

Thank you once again for your dedication and cooperation.

Ngā mihi

Dawn

Dawn Pritchard | SENIOR POLICY ADVISOR | Policy Implementation, Science, Policy and Information
 WAIKATO REGIONAL COUNCIL | Te Kaunihera ā Rohe o Waikato
 P: [REDACTED]
 F: facebook.com/waikatoregion
 Private Bag 3038, Waikato Mail Centre, Hamilton, 3240

 This email message and any attached files may contain confidential information, and may be subject to legal professional privilege. If you have received this message in error, please notify us immediately and destroy the original message. Any views expressed in this message are those of the individual sender and may not necessarily reflect the views of Waikato Regional Council. Waikato Regional Council makes reasonable efforts to ensure that its email has been scanned and is free of viruses, however can make no warranty that this email or any attachments to it are free from viruses.

APPENDIX 4

Facebook Comments

The following are Facebook comments left on Council's Facebook post promoting the opportunity to submit on the draft RMP:

- No cycling track at all. Leave it for people wanting a nice walk
- Make sure that Ngāti Apakura, Ngāti Puhiaue, Ngāti Hikairo are involved and Sam Roa to be commissioned to carve pou for the lake to symbolize the battle of Hingakaka as well.
- Make an educational place with multiple pa sites and a culture centre to educate and also return of land around the area, update roads and a small fee for visitors outside TE AWAMUTU, remove access to hunters and clean the rivers and lake and also impose big fines for anyone caught damaging the waterways including farm run off because of bad farming practices etc. Waipa needs to get their head out there ... and put money into better things rather than money on a cycle way and a clock tower to name a few don't add any true value for cost made where a purpose built building for culture educational and community groups etc with a nice walk with multiple spots of carvings and other cultural items/animals the walk is great and easy the lack of commitment from the council to maintain the lake I would suggest gifting the lake to local iwi to manage after implementing these builds to keep them in a good state if the council is serious about a plan for the future that benefits everyone this would be the way...
- Tena koe xxxx, I was mapping out what other kind of educational cultural & historical evidences could be introduced with a fee per person, whanau or group levy. Perhaps even a few cultural and historical guides. Even hold actual live theatre action events of the past, or allow a small stage to showcase and display or hold raranga waanaga or creative whakairoa artistry from our own locals, I'm very pleased to see we are on a similar creative thought page.
- Put some aerators in the water to help with the algae
- Thank you for the opportunity to have input. Number 1. Get the lake water clean and find a way to keep it clean. These bodies of water are "the Canary in Mine." We have a duty to leave them pristine for future generations.
- Half of the lake should be roped off for water skiing. Would oxygenate the water throughout summer. Need a cafe to
- The club rooms are built on an artificial island Pa. Why not reconstruct it accurately with archaeological methods and use it as a tourist attraction and a visitor center nearby
- It really needs a cycle lane around the lake, and a few big speed bumps on the road in.
- There's no more money to invest in lake as most of it spent on stupid cycle ways in Kihikihi
- Let me guess - by the way the form is designed (loaded), this appears to be a box ticking exercise to give a bit of "front" to railroad through a pre-determined plan. Looks like you will do what you will do and this is a bit of warm fuzzy smoke.
- Money would have been better spent there rather than the cycle ways
- A bit of track maintenance would be fantastic no fun tripping over torn mesh on track.
- 1,000 people a week use the walking track?
- Not sure what you mean by feedback never listened to anything from Kihikihi
- From the fancy aerial drone shots, I am impressed to see the riparian zone I recall as a mitigation factor to Nitrogen run off. Apart from the actual water quality, and lake itself, there should be no more development there. The area ambience, visuals etc, would be ruined by anything not currently there. There never used to even be the walkway, or riparian planting 40 years ago, but the lake was used for boating, and other activities a lot - hence the club building. But then came years and years of Cyanobacteria and algal blooms, making the water toxic, even to Dogs.

Fixing and maintaining the lake, water and environs, should be the limit to, and of, council- in my opinion anyway. But like lungs, everyone has them.

- Another waste of money our money not the councils money
- Treason
- Dredge it deeper
- Fill it in an start again b cheaper option. Very cool but lake but way to toxic an the smell
- Yup a leashed dog law there. So many dogs been attacked or killed by unleashed dogs

APPENDIX 5

Map of Restoration areas, Ngā Roto biodiversity assessment and Restoration Plan

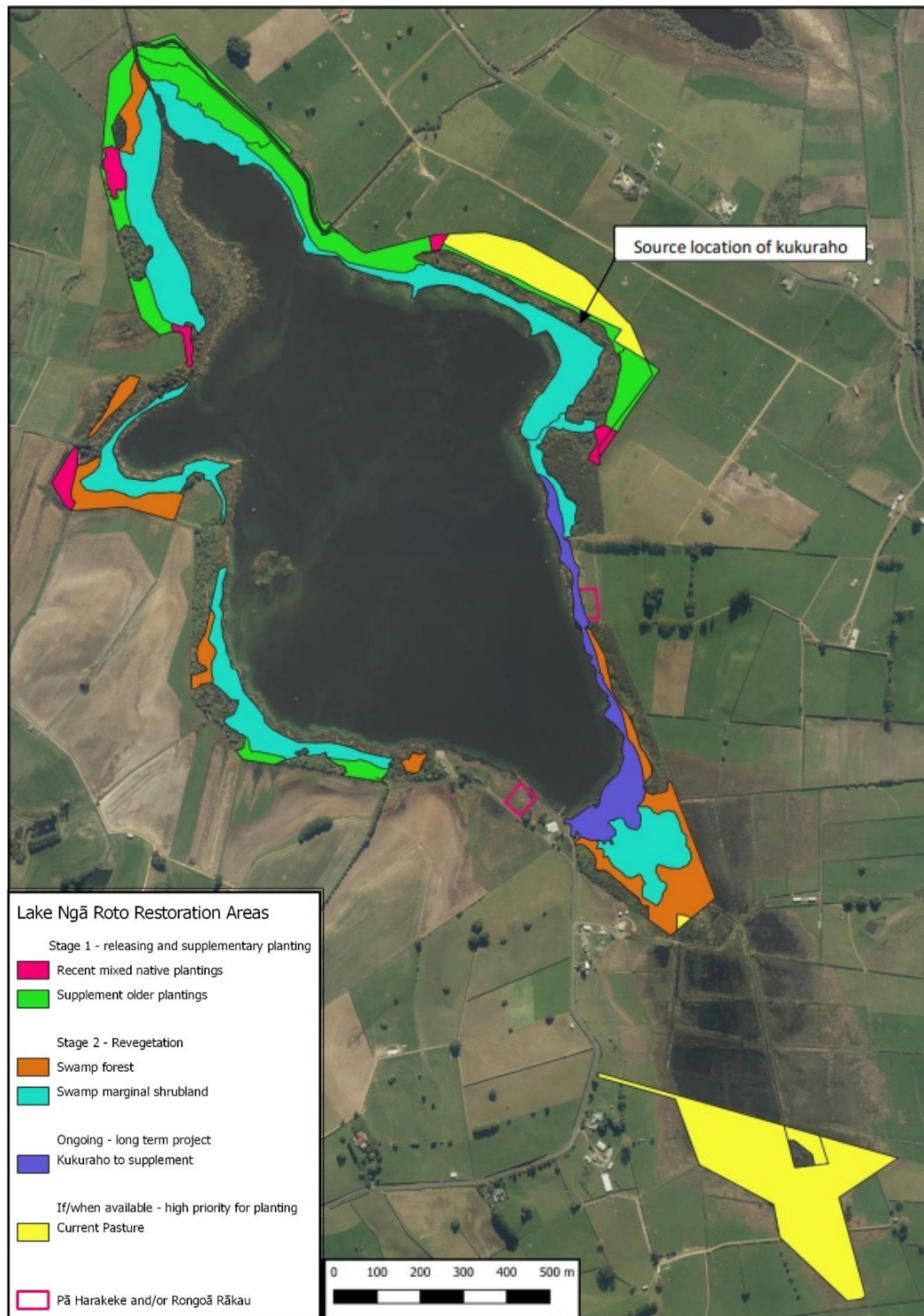


Figure 13: Restoration areas at Lake Ngāroto, and suggested stage in the restoration (Pā Harakeke and Rongoā Rākau described in sections 5.2.4 & 5.2.5)

APPENDIX 6

LIST OF SUBMITTERS

#	Submitter name	Submitter organisation	Type of submission	Requested opportunity to speak to submission
1	Sally Whitaker		Online survey	No
2	Ann Edmondson	Te Awamutu Rowing Club	Online survey	No
3	Tim O'Neill		Online survey	No
4	Heather Sherman		Online survey	No
5	Gareth Seymour	Nō Ngāti Hikairo au	Online survey	Yes
6	Kath Nicholson		Online survey	No
7	Shane Kennard		Online survey	No
8	Nigel Robertson		Online survey	No
9	Toia Zentveld		Online survey	No
10	Ted Ensing		Online survey	No
11	Rebecca Caroe	North Shore Rowing Club	Online survey	No
12	Blake Luff		Online survey	No
13	Oliver Ashby		Online survey	No
14	Geoffrey Boxell		Online survey	Yes
15	Stephen Richard Hutt	Tangata Tiriti	Online survey	No
16	Alice Hicks		Online survey	No
17	Craig Greene		Online survey	Yes
18	Frank Kīngi Thorne	Ngāti Hikairo	Emailed submission	Yes
19	Caroline Barrett		Hard copy submission	No
20	Gordon Wallis	Waikato Thames Coromandel Youth Sailing Development Trust	Emailed submission	Yes
21		Apakura Rūnanga Trust	Emailed submission	Yes
22		Te Awamutu and Kihikihi Community Board	Hard copy submission	No
23	Scott Collett		Emailed submission	No
24	Nick Barton	Schick Civil Waikato Rowing Club	Emailed submission	No
25	Gus Berghan	Clifton Rowing Club Inc	Emailed submission	No
26	Elizabeth Eden	Te Pahu Ratepayers and Pirongia Ward Committee	Hard copy submission	Yes
27	Dr Ursula Edgington		Emailed submission	No

APPENDIX 7

Submission Summary

Submission analysis

The twenty seven submissions comprised:

- 17 online survey, 3 hard copy survey, 7 emailed submissions
- 19 individual submissions (two of who identified as Ngāti Hikairo)
- Eight organisation submissions:
 - One submission received from Apakura Rūnanga Trust
 - One submission from Te Awamutu and Kihikihi Community Board
 - One submission from Te Pahu Ratepayers and Pirongia Ward Committee
 - Five rowing and sailing club submissions: Te Awamutu Rowing Club, North Shore Rowing Club, Waikato Thames Coromandel Youth Sailing Development Trust, Schick Civil Waikato Rowing Club, Clifton Rowing Club Inc

In general there was support for the key aspects of the draft RMP. This is evidenced by the results to the survey questions shown in Figure 1. At least seventy percent of submitters who filled out the submission form questions supported all key aspects, and the remaining submitters partially supported them.

Question	Support	Partially support	Oppose	Total
Do you agree with the Vision?	71%	29%	0%	21
Do you support Objective One and the draft policies to achieve this objective?	70%	30%	0%	20
Do you support Objective Two and the draft policies to achieve this objective?	80%	20%	0%	20
Do you support Objective Three and the draft policies to achieve this objective?	75%	25%	0%	20
Do you support Objective Four and the draft policies to achieve this objective?	70%	30%	0%	20

Figure 1. Submission form question results

Many submitters provided rationale for their position and also provided further feedback that they wanted considered.

In the individual submissions, feedback focused on:

- The importance of improving the lake's water quality

- Changes and improvements to adjoining land management
- Affordability
- Leadership in research
- Revegetation and pest control
- Volunteering
- Developing a strong connection with mana whenua in achieving the plan and working with iwi on lease processes
- Providing further information on the significance of the lake
- Access (including dogs on lead) and accessibility
- Retention of freedom camping
- Visitor infrastructure such as shade, signage and seating
- Transfer of management
- The readability, legibility and length of the draft RMP
- Lack of detail on the logistics and implications of changes proposed

The Te Awamutu and Kihikihi Community Board acknowledged the cultural significance of the land and lake and recognised it as a valued community space that must be protected. It emphasised the importance of incorporating local stakeholder views and ensuring the plan is financially realistic to avoid delays and cost escalations. The Board supported the proposed priorities for the next ten years and the long-term outcomes for the next thirty, but stressed the need to address funding and implementation costs. It called for solutions benefiting all parties and reminded Council the Reserve belongs to the community.

While supportive of all of the key elements of the draft RMP, the joint submission from Te Pahu Ratepayers and Pirongia Ward Committee noted concerns about the lack of reference to recreation in the draft vision, the proposed reclassification from a recreation reserve to a scenic reserve, the lessee requirements to negotiate with mana whenua, and the prohibition of legal substances and drones. They advocated part of the vision should be to include and unite people and encourage recreational activity and healthy living. They also identified the need for more viewshafts; particularly along the northern and western edge.

The five rowing clubs all noted the importance of the lake to the rowing community. Schick Civil Waikato Rowing Club encouraged Council to continue supporting and promoting recreational opportunities on the lake in harmony with its ecological and cultural values. Te Awamutu Rowing Club more specifically noted:

- Support for the policy of facilitating non-motorised recreation, the provision of infrastructure to support water access and events and the promotion of camping before and after regattas
- Support for the intention of developing "high quality infrastructure to support [sporting activities] ... such as clubrooms and storage", facilities which the club urgently requires in order to develop further
- Support for initiatives such as mobile food and drink vendors (Policy 4.15) that will encourage people to spend time in the Reserve and bring the rowing (and sailing) clubs to the notice of the local community

- Concerns about the proposal to plant raupō along the lake edge of the Main Arrival Zone
- The need to be more explicit about what club contribution refers to in the monitoring and reporting section
- The need to adhere to health warnings when advice isn't timely or meaningful, and
- Te Awamutu Rowing Club has been active since 1963 (not the 1970s).

The Waikato Thames Coromandel Youth Sailing Development Trust's submission focused on the appropriateness of Lake Ngā Roto being referred to as a wāhi tapu in the draft RMP.

The Apakura Rūnanga Trust's submission outlined support for the majority of draft RMP, with concerns noted only about commercial and recreational activities that may compromise cultural or environmental values and the lack of specificity around co-governance.

The two submissions from individuals from Ngāti Hikairo focused on:

- The proposal to restore the traditional name of Wairoto
- Clearer pathways to co-governance arrangements
- Describing mana whenua values, connections and roles and responsibilities accurately and from a mātauranga Māori lens
- Archaeological investigations and the treatment of taonga discovered in the lake and the land, and
- Referencing key documents.

Other feedback received

Informal feedback was received by staff at the open day at Lake Ngā Roto on Saturday 1 March 2025.

An email was received 8 April 2025 from Dawn Pritchard, Senior Policy Advisor, Waikato Regional Council in lieu of a submission (see Appendix 3). This email encouraged continued collaboration and discussions to explore and refine matters including any lake restoration techniques.

Twenty-one comments were posted on Council's Facebook post promoting the opportunity to submit on the draft RMP. While these are not treated as submissions, they are recorded in Appendix 4 so that the Committee can read the comments.

A proposal on how to improve the lake's health was received from Marno Raath from Raath and Associates. This has not been treated as a submission as it does not make any reference to it being a submission.

APPENDIX 8

Submission requests and the project team's recommended responses
(document ID 11445039)

SUBMITTER NAME	PAGE(S)	SUMMARY	STAFF RECOMMENDATION(S) AND RATIONALE
VISION			
Geoffrey Boxell	35	Noted concerns that it is too much too soon. Believes Council should sort out finances before formulating plans to understand what is achievable.	Recommend no change. <i>The actions identified in the 'Management focus and expected outcomes' are considered to be achievable in the next ten years. The scale and staging of the actions Council is responsible for will be considered through the Council's Long Term Plan processes.</i>
Gordon Wallis (Waikato Thames Coromandel Youth Sailing Development Trust)	35	Noted their view that the lake isn't a wāhi tapu and the pathway forward to cleaning up Lake Ngā Roto will be more successful with the recognition of the true battle of Hingakākā site and the removal of the wāhi tapu status on Lake Ngā Roto.	Recommend no change. <i>Mana whenua are clear in its position that the lake and surrounding area are a wāhi tapu (sacred site).</i>
Kath Nicholson	35	Noted concern that it will be great at the beginning but once the work is done, the members of the public will lose access.	Recommend no change. <i>The draft RMP clearly outlines intention to continue to provide public access through Objective Four and the associated policies. Furthermore section 19(2) of the Reserves Act 1977 outlines the requirement for the public to have freedom of entry and access to scenic reserves subject to the specific powers conferred on administering bodies by sections 55 and 56, to any bylaws under the Reserves Act applying to the reserve, and to such conditions and restrictions as the administering body considers to be necessary for the protection and well-being of the reserve and for the protection and control of the public using it.</i>
Sally Whitaker	35	Noted view of the draft Vision appearing unaffordable and an unrealistic mission.	Recommend no change. <i>The actions identified in the 'Management focus and expected outcomes' are considered to be achievable in the next ten years. The scale and staging of the actions Council is responsible for will be considered through the Council's Long Term Plan processes.</i>
Te Pahu Ratepayers and Pirongia Ward Committee	35	Raised concern there is no mention of recreational use and part of the vision should be to include and unite people and encourage recreational activity and healthy living.	Recommend no change. <i>It is considered the inclusion of the wording 'communities can flourish' in the draft Vision sufficiently addresses this matter.</i>
OBJECTIVE ONE AND POLICIES			

Alice Hicks	n/a	Requested complete ban of nitrogen fertiliser applications in the catchment area and sweeping restrictions on fertiliser applications in general as the submitter considers this will be the biggest contribution to ensuring the long-term health of the wetlands.	Recommend no change. <i>Control over fertiliser application on farmland within the catchment is the remit of Waikato Regional Council. Policy 1.10 notes Waipā District Council's support for significant controls on land use and drainage within the catchment to substantially reduce or eliminate nutrients passing from private land into the reserve.</i>
Ann Edmondson (Te Awamutu Rowing Club)	36-38	Noted the Club's aspiration for the Main Arrival Zone (between the rowing and sailing clubs) to become a recreation area for families to picnic, BBQ, play games and fish and highlighted this would mean keeping the lake edge free from raupo.	Recommend change to read: 1.7 Protect and restore the lake margin of raupō along the lake edge in the Main Arrival Zone to prevent erosion and provide important nesting and feeding habitat. <i>Policy arose from issues raised in the Ngā Roto Biodiversity Assessment and Restoration Plan 2021 -2031. Specifically, it notes 'The removal of raupō to provide direct access to the water from the sailing club, and more surface area for sailing and rowing also impacts on water clarity, and habitat provision for wildlife. Raupō traps sediment, and prevents erosion of the lake shore, provides important nesting and feeding habitat for birds such as matuku (Australasian bittern), and is also the preferred habitat for juvenile tuna in Waikato Lakes. Raupō provides a nursery area for small tuna, with better availability for of the food they require, and cover to grow to size safely and avoid predation (Chisnall 1996).'</i> <i>It is considered the Main Arrival Zone can still be developed as a recreation area while protecting and restoring the lake margin. Decisions on the extent of planting will be made through the development of the concept plan outlined in Policy 4.1 of the draft RMP.</i>
Craig Greene	36-38	Requested farmers are prosecuted and WRC enforce action for farms neighbouring the lake who do not plant dwarf or normal phormium flaxes along streams and fence these off. Noted all of the streams are disgusting and must be the main reason for the rapid decline in the lakes water quality. Copy Lake Rotokauri and other lakes that are amazing. Requested Council ensures there is enough clear space between farmland and the lake to ensure no contamination. Requested contracting farming environmental consultants who can help with this and specialise in this area.	Recommend no change. <i>WRC sets the regulatory framework controlling these matters on farmland within the catchment. Policy 1.10 notes Council's support for significant controls on land use and drainage within the catchment to substantially reduce or eliminate nutrients passing from private land into the reserve. Additionally, Policy 1.8 sets out Council will promote best practice.</i>

Geoffery Boxell	36-38	Suggested the use of barley straw on feeder streams and potentially the lake itself, noting it decomposes, releasing compounds that inhibit algae growth and binds phosphates, buffers pH, and clarifies the water.	Recommend no change. <i>This suggestion can be explored by Council, WRC and private landowners under the draft RMP policy framework.</i>
Oliver Ashby	36-38	Suggested offering financial assistance to the farmers in exchange for them moving towards organic farming as this would be a key way to mitigate the vast amounts of agrochemicals being spread on the pasture near the lake which the submitter believes is the biggest issue.	Recommend no change. <i>This suggestion can be explored by Council, WRC and private landowners under the draft RMP policy framework; specifically policy 1.9.</i>
Sally Whitaker	36-38	Noted their concerns about costs associated with contractors. Suggests back to basics solutions such as bio char filtration and soil health.	Recommend no change. <i>These suggestions can be explored by Council, WRC and private landowners under the draft RMP policy framework.</i>
Stephen Richard Hutt	36-38	Noted a Nitrogen Reduction Strategy would be good to help combat the increased algae incident events that occur often now.	Recommend no change. <i>WRC sets the regulatory framework controlling nitrogen loss from private land into waterways that feed the lake. WRC's Plan Change 1 – Waikato and Waipā River Catchments will address this issue. Reducing nitrogen loss is also a key focus of Freshwater Farm Plans that most farmers within the catchment were required to prepare. It is however noted that this requirement has been officially paused by Waikato Regional Council.</i>
Stephen Richard Hutt	36-38	Highlighted the importance of leadership in research to look at ways with landowners to reduce the nitrogen intake to the lake. Suggested this could be a collaboration between Ngāti Apakura University of Waikato Federated Farmers AG Research QE11 Trust - led by Iwi advisors in this space.	Recommend no change. <i>This suggestion can be explored by Council, WRC and private landowners under the draft RMP policy framework.</i>
Te Awamutu and Kihikihi Community Board	36-38	Requested local stakeholders views be considered and taken into account as they often hold a wealth of knowledge.	Recommend no change. <i>This suggestion can be explored by Council, WRC and private landowners under the draft RMP policy framework; specifically policies 1.1, 1.4 and 1.8.</i>
Te Pahu Ratepayers and Pirongia Ward Committee	36-38	Requested removal of Policy 1.2 that proposes reclassifying from recreation reserve to scenic reserve, noting this is an intrinsic change of prioritisation from the people to the place. Requested the recreation reserve classification be retained.	Recommend no change. <i>The proposed reclassification is aligned to the draft Vision and supported by mana whenua. Recreation on and adjoining the lake can only be provided at the standard desired by the public if the health and wellbeing of the lake is prioritised. Public access and the ability to</i>

			<i>develop amenities and facilities deemed to enable the public to obtain benefit and enjoyment from the reserve are still provided for on scenic reserves (refer section 19(2) of the Reserves Act 1977).</i>
Dr Ursulla Edgington	36-38	Noted their views Council must stop the farming community draining their toxins into the lake and trying to resolve lake health through the use of chemicals such as glyphosate.	Recommend no change. <i>WRC sets the regulatory framework controlling nitrogen loss from private land into waterways that feed the lake. WRC's Plan Change 1 – Waikato and Waipā River Catchments will address this issue. Reducing nitrogen loss is also a key focus of Freshwater Farm Plans that most farmers within the catchment were required to prepare. It is however noted that this requirement has been officially paused by Waikato Regional Council.</i> <i>The Ngā Roto Biodiversity Assessment and Restoration Plan 2021 - 2031 was prepared by a suitably qualified ecologist company – Nicholas Singers Ecological Solutions and the pest and weed control recommendations in it – which include hand weeding and herbicide use - are considered appropriate.</i>
OBJECTIVE TWO AND POLICIES			
Craig Greene	39-40	Noted concerns about the number of trees and shrubs cut down and the lack of variety of trees and shrubs planted as a replacement. Highlighted the lack of diversification increases the risk of disease and myrtle rust disease is already on some natives. Also noted by planting more variety, the water quality will improve, birdlife will improve, and this would flow on to benefit aquatic life. Suggested a better variety of native plants - e.g. Kowhai, Titoki, Puriri, Ferns, Hebes, Leptospermum, Pittosporum, Pseudopanax, Phormium, Podocarpus, Kauri, Totara, Kahikatea, Dwarf Pohutukawa - Maori Princess. Additionally recommended planting non-NZ natives, noting some big trees such as American plain trees and English oaks would be beneficial in some areas too.	Recommend change to replace the Figure 2 in Appendix 8 of the draft RMP with Figure 13 “Restoration areas at Lake Ngā Roto, and suggested stage in the restoration” from the Ngā Roto Biodiversity Assessment and Restoration Plan 2021 -2031 (see Appendix 8). <i>Through analysing the submission, the Project Team identified the wrong figure from the Ngā Roto Biodiversity Assessment and Restoration Plan 2021 -2031 had been included in the draft RMP.</i> Recommend no change to draft RMP in relation to revegetation policies. <i>The Ngā Roto Biodiversity Assessment and Restoration Plan 2021 - 2031 was prepared by a suitably qualified ecologist company – Nicholas Singers Ecological Solutions and the planting recommendations in it are considered appropriate for the proposed revegetation. Decisions on the appropriate species to be planted in the Main Arrival Zone will be made through the development of the concept plan outlined in Policy 4.1 of the draft RMP.</i>

Craig Greene	39-40	Requested more kanuka and manuka be planted to encourage bees.	Recommend no change. <i>The Ngā Roto Biodiversity Assessment and Restoration Plan 2021 - 2031 was prepared by a suitably qualified ecologist company – Nicholas Singers Ecological Solutions and the planting recommendations in it are considered appropriate for the proposed revegetation. Kānuka and Mānuka is included in the revegetation species for the peaty and granular soils.</i>
Craig Greene	39-40	Requested local nurseries be used and a good deal be sought on a huge variety of plants.	Recommend no change. <i>Procurement methods are not in scope for the RMP.</i>
Craig Greene	39-40	Requested greater investment in pest control e.g. traps, verspex for wasps too.	Recommend no change. <i>Policies 2.1 and 2.4 address terrestrial pest control and development of a pest control programme is identified as a priority action on page 51.</i>
Craig Greene	39-40	Requested Council encourage volunteer groups for donations for funding and planting - just like the signs on Mt Kakepuku and Mt Pirongia.	Recommend no change. <i>Policies 2.4, 2.6, 2.7 and 2.8 address growing volunteering and restoration funding revenue streams.</i>
Sally Whitaker	39-40	Requested Council stops using all chemicals.	Recommend no change. <i>The Ngā Roto Biodiversity Assessment and Restoration Plan 2021 - 2031 was prepared by a suitably qualified ecologist company – Nicholas Singers Ecological Solutions and the pest and weed control recommendations in it – which include hand weeding and herbicide use - are considered appropriate.</i>
Sally Whitaker	39-40	Raised concerns revegetation planting is not being appropriately maintained. Highlighted the need for communication, accountability, transparency and community.	Recommend no change. <i>Policies 2.1 and 2.6 and the actions outlined for Objective Two on page 51 address maintaining revegetation areas in accordance with the Ngā Roto Biodiversity Assessment and Restoration Plan 2021 -2031. Staff agree with submitter's point it is important to ensure operational funding for maintenance for any revegetation projects.</i>
Te Awamutu and Kihikihi Community Board	39-40	Noted their view the plan must be reasonable and affordable so it can be achievable and not constantly delayed and be subject to ever increasing costs.	Recommend no change. <i>The actions identified in the 'Management focus and expected outcomes' are considered to be achievable in the next ten years. The scale and staging of the actions Council is responsible for will be considered through the Council's Long Term Plan processes.</i>

Te Pahu Ratepayers and Pirongia Ward Committee	39-40 and 49	Requested more viewshafts – noting there should be at least one on the north side and one on the west side.	Recommend change to read: 2.2 Maintain viewshafts from the lake circuit track to the lake and beyond from the southern board walk, the centre of the eastern margin (viewshaft to Taurangamirumiru Pā), the northern lake end and the Main Arrival Zone (see Figure 8 in section 4), <u>and explore developing viewshafts from the lake circuit track to the lake and along the southwestern margin.</u> Recommend change to show: Figure 8 – additional ‘potential key viewshaft’ along the south western margin
OBJECTIVE THREE AND POLICIES			
Apakura Runanga Trust	41-42	Noted the draft RMP needs clearer pathways toward genuine co-governance arrangements, with mana whenua represented as decision-makers, not only advisors or stakeholders.	Recommend no change. <i>This aspiration needs to be explored with Council and mana whenua at a higher level rather than at an individual reserve level.</i>
Frank Kīngi Thorne	41-42	Requested Ngāti Hikairo and Ngāti Apakura be provided time to wānanga on the names Ngāroto, Ngā Roto and Wairoto	Recommend change to read: 3.2 <u>Work with mana whenua to confirm the</u> Restore the traditional name of the lake and surrounds, <u>and if different to Lake Ngā Roto undertake through undertaking</u> the necessary Reserves Act requirements to change the name of all the land covered by this Plan to <u>the agreed name.</u> ‘Wairoto’. Explanation: Wairoto has been identified by <u>Apakura Rūnanga Trust</u> mana whenua as the traditional name for the lake, with Ngā Roto the term being used for the many lakes that existed in the area. <u>This name hasn’t been agreed yet with Te Rūnanganui-o-Ngāti Hikairo.</u> Actions to confirm and increase the usage of the correct name are important ways to accurately reflect the area’s history and restore the mana of Lake Ngā Roto. <i>While Apakura Rūnanga Trust in its submission outlined its strong support for the restoration of the traditional name Wairoto for the lake and all lands covered by the draft RMP, there is further discussions required to confirm Te Rūnanganui-o-Ngāti Hikairo also</i>

			<i>support the change to Wairoto. The proposed change will enable mana whenua sufficient time to wananga the proposed name change while still enabling a timely transition if a name change is agreed. It is preferable for mana whenua to agree on one name for the lake and surrounding reserve land.</i>
Frank Kīngi Thorne	41-42	Requested the Arawai instalment for Ngā Roto and Hingakākā and any signage currently standing on the reserve be updated to reflect a tangata whenua narrative – reflective of both Ngāti Hikairo and Ngāti Apakura traditions.	No change. <i>Policy 3.3 enables Council to work with mana whenua to explore this request.</i>
Frank Kīngi Thorne (Ngāti Hikairo)		Noted their view mana whenua wish to have more restrictions and controls in place to limit excavations and extractions of taonga. They suggest continuing to keep taonga in the whenua and lake by all means necessary.	Recommend change to read: Amend policy 3.3. to add a new action ‘ <u>supporting mana whenua’s preferences in relation to the treatment of any taonga found in the lake or surrounding reserve land in line with relevant legislation</u> ’
Gareth Seymour (Ngāti Hikairo)	41-42	Noted their concerns about Council’s proposed name change to Wairoto. Requested retention of current name unless there is conclusive evidence of an original name for Ngā Roto.	Recommend change to read: 3.2 <u>Work with mana whenua to confirm the</u> R restore the traditional name of the lake and surrounds, <u>and if different to Lake Ngā Roto undertake through undertaking</u> the necessary Reserves Act requirements to change the name of all the land covered by this Plan to <u>the agreed name.</u> ‘Wairoto’. Explanation: Wairoto has been identified by <u>Apakura Rūnanga Trust</u> mana whenua as the traditional name for the lake, with Ngā Roto the term being used for the many lakes that existed in the area. <u>This name hasn’t been agreed yet with Te Rūnanganui-o-Ngāti Hikairo.</u> Actions to confirm and increase the usage of the correct name are important ways to accurately reflect the area’s history and restore the mana of Lake Ngā Roto. <i>While Apakura Rūnganga Trust in its submission outlined its strong support for the restoration of the traditional name Wairoto for the lake and all lands covered by the draft RMP, there is further discussions required to confirm Te Rūnanganui-o-Ngāti Hikairo also support the change to Wairoto. The proposed changed will enable mana whenua sufficient time to wananga the proposed name change while still enabling a timely transition if a name change is agreed. It is</i>

			<i>preferable for mana whenua to agree on one name for the lake and surrounding reserve land.</i>
Geoffrey Boxell	41-42	Noted their view that if local Iwi, or Maniapoto in general, want the policies under Objective Three then they need to make a big contribution either in cash or manpower.	Recommend no change. <i>The Reserves Act is one of the Acts in the First Schedule to the Conservation Act 1987. Section 4 of the Conservation Act contains an obligation to give effect to the principles of the Treaty of Waitangi. The obligation in section 4 applies to all the Acts in the First Schedule, including the Reserves Act, insofar as it is not inconsistent with that Act. The draft Objective and associated policies give effect to the principles of the Treaty of Waitangi.</i> <i>Mana whenua have been actively engaged in conservation efforts at Lake Ngā Roto. As noted in its submission, Apakura Rūnganga Trust successfully applied for funding to secure adjoining land for the purpose of retiring farmland however were unable to realise this vision due to limited partnership support.</i>
Gordon Wallis (Waikato Thames Coromandel Youth Sailing Development Trust)	41-42	Requested removal of the wāhi tapu status on Lake Ngā Roto, noting that the pathway forward to cleaning up Lake Ngā Roto will be more successful with the recognition of the true battle of Hingakākā site	Recommend no change. <i>Mana whenua have confirmed their position that the lake and surrounding area are a wāhi tapu (sacred site).</i>
Sally Whitaker	41-42	Noted their view we need to live in the present and reduce the layers of bureaucracy and double standards.	Recommend no change. <i>The Reserves Act is one of the Acts in the First Schedule to the Conservation Act 1987. Section 4 of the Conservation Act contains an obligation to give effect to the principles of the Treaty of Waitangi. The obligation in section 4 applies to all the Acts in the First Schedule, including the Reserves Act, insofar as it is not inconsistent with that Act. The draft Objective and associated policies give effect to the principles of the Treaty of Waitangi.</i>
Tim O’Neill	41-42	Noted they didn’t understand some of the words quoted in the Objective, and they supported the objective and policies as long as ratepayer money is not used for what they considered mad ideas.	Recommend no change. <i>The use of te reo Māori throughout the document is consistent with other Council documents. All te reo Māori used throughout the draft RMP are translated in the glossary in Section 5.</i> <i>Council funding of actions at Lake Ngā Roto will be subject to the Long Term Plan processes which include public consultation.</i>

OBJECTIVE FOUR AND POLICIES			
Ann Edmondson (Te Awamutu Rowing Club)	43-46	Acknowledged the formal requirements listed under policy 4.12, noting most come within the remit of their existing policies and procedures. They raised concern about Policy 4.12(d) 'adhere to health warnings' because they've found WRC's advice to be delayed and not meaningful. They note that 'Unsafe to swim' has an unnecessarily low threshold for boat users, and especially for competent rowers who would not expect to have any contact with the water. They identify implementation of 4.12(d) would necessitate closer monitoring and dissemination of water quality data, and consideration of the differing needs of water users – standards requiring discussion with WRC and WDC.	Recommend no change. <i>The Ministry for the Environment released new guidelines for cyanobacteria in recreational freshwaters on 29 January 2025 to establish public health risks¹. The guidelines set out the alert-level frameworks and addresses matters such as monitoring frequency and responsive communication of health warnings.</i> <i>As a Person Conducting a Business or Undertaking (PCBU), lessees have a legal duty under the Health and Safety at Work Act 2015 to ensure, so far as is reasonably practicable, the health and safety of its volunteers and club members while they are involved in club activities. This duty extends to all aspects of the lessee's operations, including physical workplace, equipment and processes. Lessees cannot rely on assumptions about participant awareness or acceptance of risk. It is important as the landowner and/or administering body of the reserve land that Council requires lessees to meet their PCBU duties. Additionally in order to meet Council's PCBU responsibilities, Policy 4.8 outlines Council will keep its Algal Bloom Response Plan, which includes working with lessees, under continuous review and act in accordance with this Plan.</i>
Apakura Runanga Trust	43-46	Outlined they oppose any future proposals promoting or enabling commercialisation or increased recreational access to the detriment of cultural, ecological or spiritual values.	Recommend no change. <i>Policies 4.11, 4.13 and 4.15 set out that Council will consider mana whenua views on future use and development proposals and impacts of the proposed activities on reserve values and only grant concessions that are compatible with the scenic reserve classification and the reserve's values.</i>
Caroline Barrett	43-46	Requested more stable walkways and also wider ("for people like me who love nature but also have balance issues"), clearer signage about the type of walkway surface in the different sections. Submitter noted they didn't know the whole boardwalk isn't the same as the start of the walk which they found very wobbly.	Recommend no change. <i>Policy 4.2 sets out intention to extend and upgrade the lake circuit track to create a fully accessible off-road circuit track that is sufficiently wide to provide for safe passage for cyclists and pedestrians.</i>

¹ https://environment.govt.nz/assets/publications/Cyanobacteria-Guidelines_ME1851.pdf

Caroline Barrett	43-46	Noted it would be lovely to have lots of dog friendly things like poo bag bins and water stations.	Recommend no change. <i>The draft RMP promotes a 'rubbish-free' approach. The provision of water fountains will be considered through the development of the concept plan for the Main Arrival Zone provided for in Policy 4.1.</i>
Caroline Barrett	43-46	Requested history education and ecological education about the site - signage/events/etc and community engagement opportunities.	Recommend no change. <i>The draft RMP has a range of policies aimed at increasing community awareness of the reserve's values, including policies 1.14, 1.15, 2.8, 3.3 and 4.1.</i>
Craig Greene	43-46	Requested shade trees be planted in the carpark.	Recommend no change. <i>The location and species of shade trees will be determined through the development of the concept plan for the Main Arrival Zone provided for in Policy 4.1.</i>
Craig Greene	43-46	Requested more seating at various stages around the lake.	Recommend no change. <i>The provision of seating around the lake circuit track is included in Policy 4.2.</i>
Craig Greene	43-46	Requested signs to prevent the deaths of dogs due to the lake's water quality.	Recommend no change. <i>The need to provide timely health warnings is addressed in policies 1.13, 4.7 and 4.8.</i>
Geoffrey Boxell	43-46	Requested that the policies in this section are only progressed when Council is either debt free or has debt in a manageable state.	Recommend no change. <i>The actions identified in the 'Management focus and expected outcomes' are considered to be achievable in the next ten years. The scale and staging of the actions Council is responsible for will be considered through the Long Term Plan process.</i>
Heather Sherman	43-46	Requested retention of freedom camping area.	Recommend no change. <i>Freedom camping is provided for in policies 4.16 and 4.17.</i>
Scott Collett	43-46	Requested retention of access for dogs onlead, noting dogs on leads do not pose any danger to wildlife or other users.	Recommend no change. <i>Dog access rules are set through the Council's Dog Control Bylaw. Policy 4.4. recognises this. The draft RMP doesn't propose any changes to dog access rules.</i>
Stephen Richard Hutt	43-46	Noted that as original landowners, Ngāti Apakura & Ngāti Mahanga, who still have Kōiwi buried in the Lake should work with these iwi on leases administration. Submitter noted wording in the draft RMP acknowledges the value of Iwi, but doesn't demonstrate Iwi being involved as part of the process.	Recommend no change. <i>Policy 3.3 notes Council will seek input from mana whenua on proposals for use or developments and Policy 4.13 notes mana whenua's views on the proposal will be considered when assessing new activities requiring authorisation.</i>

Te Pahu Ratepayers and Pirongia Ward Committee	43-46	Noted their view that this objective and associated policies contradict the plan to change the classification from recreational to scenic reserve.	Recommend no change. <i>Public access and the ability to develop amenities and facilities deemed to enable the public to obtain benefit and enjoyment from the reserve are still provided for on scenic reserves (refer section 19(2) of the Reserves Act 1977).</i>
Te Pahu Ratepayers and Pirongia Ward Committee	43-46	Noted their view Policy 4.12b puts the onus on lessees to negotiate with mana whenua and this is unreasonable and effectively gives the power of veto to an unelected body able to supersede the public interest and amenity.	Recommend no change. <i>Lessees are an important partner in sharing information about the reserve's values with members and visitors. It is considered working with mana whenua to better understand their values associated with the area and develop operating practices that recognise those values will enable lessees and mana whenua to create enduring mutually beneficial relationships.</i>
Te Pahu Ratepayers and Pirongia Ward Committee	43-46	Noted their view Policy 4.12d enables a veto power.	Recommend no change. <i>The Ministry for the Environment released new guidelines for cyanobacteria in recreational freshwaters in 29 January 2025 to establish public health risks². The guidelines set out the alert-level frameworks and addresses matters such as monitoring frequency and responsive communication of health warnings. As a Person Conducting a Business or Undertaking (PCBU), lessees have a legal duty under the Health and Safety at Work Act 2015 to ensure, so far as is reasonably practicable, the health and safety of its volunteers and club members while they are involved in club activities. This duty extends to all aspects of the lessee's operations, including physical workplace, equipment and processes. Lessees cannot rely on assumptions about participant awareness or acceptance of risk. It is important as the landowner and/or administering body of the reserve land that Council requires lessees to meet their PCBU duties. Additionally in order to meet Council's PCBU responsibilities, Policy 4.8 outlines Council will keep its Algal Bloom Response Plan, which includes working with lessees, under continuous review and act in accordance with this Plan.</i>

² https://environment.govt.nz/assets/publications/Cyanobacteria-Guidelines_ME1851.pdf

Te Pahu Ratepayers and Pirongia Ward Committee	43-46	Requested legal substances should be discouraged rather than prohibited.	Recommend no change. <i>This prohibition of smoking and vaping is in line with Council's Smokefree and Vapefree Policy 2021.</i>
Te Pahu Ratepayers and Pirongia Ward Committee	43-46	Requested drones should have a permit system rather than being banned.	Recommend change to remove policy 4.20. <i>Council's current Drone Use Policy is considered to be adequate.</i>
OTHER			
Ann Edmondson (Te Awamutu Rowing Club)	26	Noted Te Awamutu Rowing Club has been active since 1963 (not the 1970s as stated in the draft plan).	Recommend change to read: The lake supports a range of water-based recreation, including sailing, rowing, game-bird hunting, and fishing. Many of these activities have been long standing, with Ngā Roto Sailing Club being an important regional sailing hub since the 1960s and Te Awamutu Rowing Club since <u>1963</u> . the 1970s. <i>Date correction.</i>
Ann Edmondson (Te Awamutu Rowing Club)	55	Requested 'Club contribution' in the Monitoring and reporting section be refined to confirm it refers to the rowing and sailing clubs.	Recommend change to read: Lessees' Club contribution to achieving the vision for Lake Ngā Roto <i>Clarification of whose contribution will be monitored.</i>
Craig Greene	35	Requested a copy of the draft RMP that is clearer and doesn't mix English and Māori in same paragraphs.	Recommend no change. <i>The use of te reo Māori throughout the document is consistent with other Council documents. All te reo Māori used throughout the draft RMP are translated in the glossary in Section 5.</i>
Craig Greene	n/a	Suggested handing over management to a volunteer organisation such as Million Meters who restored the Mangaohoe Stream if there is an issue with funding. Noted Council's actions to date haven't worked.	Recommend no change. <i>While funding to achieve the draft RMP Vision will remain a challenge, it is considered Council is best placed to continue as the administering body for the land covered by the draft RMP.</i>
Craig Greene	n/a	Highlighted every step must be taken to immediately restore the lake and improve it. Advocated for working together to make it the best attraction in the Waipa and if necessary closing the lake for a year or two if required to achieve this result.	Recommend no change. <i>The draft RMP outlines all of the actions, many of which outline collaboration, are considered affordable and feasible at this stage. The scale and staging of the actions Council is responsible for will be considered through the Long Term Plan processes.</i>

Frank Kīngi Thorne (Ngāti Hikairo)	n/a	Requested that Ngāti Hikairo and Ngāti Apakura be provided an opportunity at the conclusion of this process to confirm support of the RMP.	Recommend no change. <i>This is a RMP review process request. The Project Team are in discussions with mana whenua with regards to this request.</i>
Frank Kīngi Thorne (Ngāti Hikairo)	3, 16, 24, 69	Noted the mana whenua built island pā are also considered to have been 'floating pā'. Te Pūtere takes its name from this fact.	Recommend change: to all references in the draft RMP to 'island Pā' to 'island/ <u>floating</u> Pā'.
Frank Kīngi Thorne (Ngāti Hikairo)	3	Noted that Tautepō – the Battle of Canoes was fought on the waters and shore of Ngā Roto and many of the mana whenua were slain.	Recommend change to page 3 to read: • 'Many Māori died during the <u>Tautepō – the Battle of Canoes and Battle of Hingakākā</u>, • where Uenuku was stored for safe keeping and later discovered and returned to iwi
Frank Kīngi Thorne (Ngāti Hikairo)	11	Queried whether Allot 54A Mangapiko PSH and the property adjoining it to the south have been assessed for heritage and archaeological values.	Recommend no change. <i>No specific amendment requested. Research was undertaken in 2019 on Allot 54A Mangapiko PSH by Simmons and Associates Ltd. No evidence was identified this reserve parcel contained an archaeological site or sites.</i>
Frank Kīngi Thorne (Ngāti Hikairo)	14	Requested the Iwi Heritage Management Plans associated with Ngā Roto be named.	Recommend change to read: <u>Ngāti Hikairo Iwi Management Plan – Freshwater</u> <u>Te Tahuanui: Ngāti Hikairo Heritage Management Plan</u> <u>Iwi Management Plans</u>
Frank Kīngi Thorne (Ngāti Hikairo)	20	Noted views this page fails to articulate the taonga tuku iho quality of Ngā Roto to mana whenua	Await oral submission prior to considering amendments.
Frank Kīngi Thorne (Ngāti Hikairo)	22	Requested review of the Indigenous Biodiversity Values section to re-examining it from a Mātauranga Māori lens similar to the approach for Mangakaware.	Await oral submission prior to considering amendments.
Frank Kīngi Thorne (Ngāti Hikairo)	26	Noted the listed atua don't match up with seven atua listed with Te Painga o Uenuku.	Await oral submission prior to considering amendments.
Frank Kīngi Thorne (Ngāti Hikairo)	31	Noted concerns about the roles and responsibilities listed for mana whenua; noting: - Ngāti Hikairo and Ngāti Apakura originate from Ngā Roto - Mana whenua hold customary rights and interests in the land and the lake	Recommend change to read: Mana whenua, being Ngāti Apakura and Ngāti Hikairo, hold customary rights and interests in the <u>lake and surrounding reserve</u> land.

		- Mana whenua should be involved in the governance of Ngā Roto and decision making in relation to the restoration of terrestrial indigenous biodiversity of the reserve land surrounding the lake and restoration of the lake's health and wellbeing. - Mana whenua should also be involved in the hands on mahi associated with replanting and reintroduction of species.	Participate in decision-making regarding the conservation and protection of historic places, archaeological sites and wāhi tapu as they relate to Lake Ngā Roto. Work in partnership with local and regional councils to identify, implement and monitor restoration actions that are informed by matauranga Māori and tikanga and based on strong relationships.
Frank Kīngi Thorne (Ngāti Hikairo)	60	Reference Te Tahuanui: Ngāti Hikairo Heritage Management Plan	Recommend change to add: <u>Te Tahuanui: Ngāti Hikairo Heritage Management Plan</u>
Frank Kīngi Thorne (Ngāti Hikairo)	69	Requested history should be consistent, noting only one pā has kōrero and it is focused on narratives from published books and not tanga whenua narratives.	Recommend no change. <i>Resourcing constraints limited the ability to more fully explore the history of these Pā with mana whenua in order to update the description from the operative plan. This will occur through implementation of Policy 3.3. It is considered still important to include the information in Appendix 5 for future reference.</i>
Gareth Seymour	24	Highlighted all of the tupuna wahine names have been put in brackets, which diminishes their mana, and that they stand on their own mana.	Recommend change: These tūpuna are responsible for the construction of the island pā - Te Pūtere (Te Pūtete) and Te Moutere. They are further associated with the construction of Taurangamirumiru (Taurangamiromiro) to the west of Lake Ngā Roto. Taurangamirumiru was occupied by their collective descendants, including Horotakere <u>and his wife Parehaunui</u> (and his wife Parehaunui) and Rakamoana <u>along with his siblings, Reitū, Reipae and Parehaunui</u> (along with his siblings, Reitū, Reipae and Parehaunui). Rakamoana's children - <u>Puhiawe, Waikaha, Huritake</u> (Puhiawe, Waikaha, Huritake) who are tūpuna of various Ngāti Hikairo hapū, and Tūtēgangana the ancestor of Ngāti Apakura continued the occupation - as did his grandson Tūāwhio and great-grandson Tamatātai.
Sally Whitaker	28, 29, 36, 38, 50, 52	Noted their concerns extending reserve boundaries speaks of land grabbing effectively which they are opposed to.	Recommend no change. <i>The draft RMP sets out Council's intention to protect and restore wide buffer zones around the lake and the wetland area in the southern</i>

			<i>catchment through acquisition and encouraging adjoining landowners to retire, fence, and re-naturalise adjoining low-lying areas. The approach to acquisitions will be considered by Council on a case by case basis.</i>
Dr Ursulla Edgington		Noted concerns about costs to develop and implement the draft RMP and the lack of new direction. Noted their view that identified projects are not justified and outside of the scope of Council's job.	Recommend no change. <i>The draft RMP covers matters that are all in scope with managing the reserve land in accordance with the Reserves Act 1977.</i>

APPENDIX 9

Full Submissions (document ID 11444085)

Response No:
1

Contribution ID: 3337

Member ID:

Date Submitted: Apr 18, 2025, 12:52 PM

Q1 First name

Short Text Sally

Q2 Last name

Short Text Whitaker

Q3 Organisation: (if applicable)

Short Text

Q4 Address

Short Text

Q5 Email address

Email

Q6 Do you agree with the Vision?

Select Box Partially

Q7 If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Long Text

Ideology v Reality. Awesome gold standard focus supporting however it would appear unaffordable and an unrealistic mission. Supporting consultancy costs etc etc etc. Waipa as we know is a growth district which also is in this Peat Lake's catchment region. It's not simply the deforestation and farming practices. The past 30yrs demonstrates much change especially accessibility of the lake use enjoyed by many. Look in the mirror, stop the use of All Chemicals don't point the finger.

Q8 Do you support Objective One and the draft policies to achieve this objective?

Select Box Partially

Q9 If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Long Text

This is a bottomless peat lake project where no amount of expenditure on consultants, sub contractors and the like simply goes on and on. This obviously benefits certain group's at much unnecessary cost to the tax/rate payers. Back to basics solutions. Bio char filtration??? Imagine!! Soil health,how novel.

Q10 Do you support Objective Two and the draft policies to achieve this objective?

Select Box Partially

Q11 If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Long Text

Have often walked around this Lake recognizing much labour and care to manage with the Broadway and replanting. I understand from local knowledge however that plantings get done because of the available funding however at time's the after care is lacking. Disappointing. Then the time's when the incorrect machinery is sent for job's. Communication, Accountability, Transparency, Community more Community not over reach and control.

Q12 Do you support Objective Three and the draft policies to achieve this objective?

Select Box Partially

Q13 If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Long Text

Effectively - rigorously monitored???? Apparently only what was needed was ever taken!
 Teach the children well. Our future.
 Learn from the past
 Look to the future - so yes this is a great vision , naturally!
 But live in the present - stop fleecing the public with all these layer's of bureaucratic BS and Double standards.

Q14 Do you support Objective Four and the draft policies to achieve this objective?

Select Box

Partially

Q15 If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Long Text

Realism, let's talk population growth, let's talk Grey water, let's talk plastic, let's talk dog's, let's talk traffic, let's talk a possible incinerator in TeAwamutu, let's talk chain poisons and so it goes on.

Q16 Do you agree with the proposed priorities that have been identified for the next ten years and the proposed outcomes that we want to achieve in thirty years?

Select Box

Partially

Q17 If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Long Text

Dictatorship and Control by governmental departments with nudge theory documentation and word salads with empty productivity and action needs rectifying. And this is a very fine example.

Q18 Please provide feedback on any other aspects of the plan that you'd like us to consider

Long Text

To extend Reserve boundaries speaks of Land grabbing effectively. Not 9kay with this. Very few submissions will be written as the community on a whole either blindly trust, don't know or don't care until it's too late. The submissions, x45 previously I understand will no doubt come from those in the know and directly affected. Silence is not compliance.
 Rest assured, I'd far sooner be out there planting a tree than doing this.

Q19 Do you want to speak to your submission at the hearings?

Select Box

No

Q20 Would you like to stay updated with the progress of the project?

Select Box

Yes

Q21 I acknowledge that I have read the privacy statement and am happy to proceed

Single Checkbox

Yes

Response No:
2

Contribution ID: 3325

Member ID:

Date Submitted: Apr 15, 2025, 10:05 AM

Q1 First name

Short Text Ann

Q2 Last name

Short Text Edmondson

Q3 Organisation: (if applicable)

Short Text Te Awamutu Rowing Club

Q4 Address

Short Text

Q5 Email address

Email

Q6 Do you agree with the Vision?

Select Box Yes

Q7 If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Long Text

Q8 Do you support Objective One and the draft policies to achieve this objective?

Select Box Partially

Q9 If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Long Text The rowing club committee would like the Main Arrival Zone between the rowing and sailing clubs to become a recreation area for families to picnic, BBQ, play games and fish. This would mean keeping the lake edge free from raupo.

Q10 Do you support Objective Two and the draft policies to achieve this objective?

Select Box Yes

Q11 If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Long Text

Q12 Do you support Objective Three and the draft policies to achieve this objective?

Select Box Yes

Q13 If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Long Text

Q14 Do you support Objective Four and the draft policies to achieve this objective?

Select Box Yes

Q15 If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Long Text

Q16 Do you agree with the proposed priorities that have been identified for the next ten years and the proposed outcomes that we want to achieve in thirty years?

Select Box

Yes

Q17 If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Long Text

Q18 Please provide feedback on any other aspects of the plan that you'd like us to consider

Long Text

In Monitoring and reporting (p. 55), presumably 'Club contribution' refers to the rowing and sailing clubs. Please could that be spelled out.

From the rowing club's perspective, we are happy with the overall report and its vision for the future of rowing at Lake Ngā Roto (Objective Four). In particular, the management committee:

- welcomes the policy of facilitating non-motorised recreation and the provision of infrastructure to support water access and events (4.9);
- acknowledges the formal requirements listed under 4.12. Most come within the remit of our existing policies and procedures. However, the need to 'adhere to health warnings' (d) requires that the WRC's advice is timely and meaningful, which is not currently the case. 'Unsafe to swim' has an unnecessarily low threshold for boat users, and especially for competent rowers who would not expect to have any contact with the water. Implementation of 4.12(d) would necessitate closer monitoring and dissemination of water quality data, and consideration of the differing needs of water users – standards requiring discussion with WRC and WDC;
- supports initiatives such as mobile food and drink vendors (4.15) that will encourage people to spend time in the reserve and bring the rowing (and sailing) clubs to the notice of the local community;
- welcomes the promotion of camping before and after regattas (4.16), thereby encouraging participation by competitors from further afield;
- approves (p. 48) the intention of developing 'high quality infrastructure to support ... [sporting activities] ... such as clubrooms and storage', facilities which the club urgently requires in order to develop further.

And (p. 26) Te Awamutu Rowing Club has been active since 1963 (not the 1970s).

Q19 Do you want to speak to your submission at the hearings?

Select Box

No

Q20 Would you like to stay updated with the progress of the project?

Select Box

Yes

Q21 I acknowledge that I have read the privacy statement and am happy to proceed

Single Checkbox

Yes

Response No:
3

Contribution ID: 3304

Member ID:

Date Submitted: Apr 08, 2025, 10:00 AM

Q1 First name

Short Text Tim

Q2 Last name

Short Text O'Neill

Q3 Organisation: (if applicable)

Short Text

Q4 Address

Short Text

Q5 Email address

Email

Q6 Do you agree with the Vision?

Select Box Yes

Q7 If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Long Text

Q8 Do you support Objective One and the draft policies to achieve this objective?

Select Box Partially

Q9 If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Long Text Don't understand the logistics and implications of changes proposed

Q10 Do you support Objective Two and the draft policies to achieve this objective?

Select Box Yes

Q11 If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Long Text

Q12 Do you support Objective Three and the draft policies to achieve this objective?

Select Box Partially

Q13 If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Long Text I don't understand some of the words quoted in the Objective. I support as long as ratepayer money is not used for mad ideas such as playing whale music to Kauri trees

Q14 Do you support Objective Four and the draft policies to achieve this objective?

Select Box Yes

Q15 If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Long Text

Q16

Select Box

Do you agree with the proposed priorities that have been identified for the next ten years and the proposed outcomes that we want to achieve in thirty years?

Yes

Q17

Long Text

If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Q18

Long Text

Please provide feedback on any other aspects of the plan that you'd like us to consider

Q19

Select Box

Do you want to speak to your submission at the hearings?

No

Q20

Select Box

Would you like to stay updated with the progress of the project?

Yes

Q21

Single Checkbox

I acknowledge that I have read the privacy statement and am happy to proceed

Yes

Response No:
4

Contribution ID: 3303
Member ID:
Date Submitted: Apr 08, 2025, 09:59 AM

- Q1

First name

Short Text

HEATHER
- Q2

Last name

Short Text

SHERMAN
- Q3

Organisation: (if applicable)

Short Text
- Q4

Address

Short Text
- Q5

Email address

Email
- Q6

Do you agree with the Vision?

Select Box

Yes
- Q7

If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Long Text
- Q8

Do you support Objective One and the draft policies to achieve this objective?

Select Box

Yes
- Q9

If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Long Text
- Q10

Do you support Objective Two and the draft policies to achieve this objective?

Select Box

Yes
- Q11

If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Long Text
- Q12

Do you support Objective Three and the draft policies to achieve this objective?

Select Box

Yes
- Q13

If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Long Text
- Q14

Do you support Objective Four and the draft policies to achieve this objective?

Select Box

Yes
- Q15

If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Long Text

Q16

Select Box

Do you agree with the proposed priorities that have been identified for the next ten years and the proposed outcomes that we want to achieve in thirty years?

Yes

Q17

Long Text

If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Q18

Long Text

Please provide feedback on any other aspects of the plan that you'd like us to consider

Keeping the freedom camping area is crucial.

Q19

Select Box

Do you want to speak to your submission at the hearings?

No

Q20

Select Box

Would you like to stay updated with the progress of the project?

Yes

Q21

Single Checkbox

I acknowledge that I have read the privacy statement and am happy to proceed

Yes

Response No:
5

Contribution ID: 3302

Member ID:

Date Submitted: Apr 05, 2025, 05:50 PM

Q1 First name

Short Text Gareth

Q2 Last name

Short Text Seymour

Q3 Organisation: (if applicable)

Short Text Nō Ngāti Hikairo au

Q4 Address

Short Text

Q5 Email address

Email

Q6 Do you agree with the Vision?

Select Box Partially

Q7 If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Long Text

My concern is about Waipā wanting to change the name of Ngāroto, with no evidence to justify the change. I have seen this kōrero being discussed: 1. A waiata tawhito that mentions Wairoto but doesn't say where Wairoto is. 2. In that waiata, it's possible Wairoto is a tupuna wahine, not a lake. 3. The other evidence I've seen is all from 2024. Waipā must not change this historic name unless you can provide conclusive evidence of an original name for Ngāroto.

On page 24 all the tupuna wahine names have been put in brackets, which diminishes their mana, as they stand on their own mana.

Q8 Do you support Objective One and the draft policies to achieve this objective?

Select Box Yes

Q9 If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Long Text

Q10 Do you support Objective Two and the draft policies to achieve this objective?

Select Box Yes

Q11 If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Long Text

Q12 Do you support Objective Three and the draft policies to achieve this objective?

Select Box Yes

Q13 If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Long Text

Q14 Do you support Objective Four and the draft policies to achieve this objective?

Select Box Yes

Q15 If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Long Text

Q16 Do you agree with the proposed priorities that have been identified for the next ten years and the proposed outcomes that we want to achieve in thirty years?

Select Box Yes

Q17 If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Long Text

Q18 Please provide feedback on any other aspects of the plan that you'd like us to consider

Long Text

Q19 Do you want to speak to your submission at the hearings?

Select Box Yes

Q20 Would you like to stay updated with the progress of the project?

Select Box Yes

Q21 I acknowledge that I have read the privacy statement and am happy to proceed

Single Checkbox Yes

Response No:
6

Contribution ID: 3301

Member ID:

Date Submitted: Apr 02, 2025, 05:32 PM

Q1 First name

Short Text Kath

Q2 Last name

Short Text Nicholson

Q3 Organisation: (if applicable)

Short Text

Q4 Address

Short Text

Q5 Email address

Email

Q6 Do you agree with the Vision?

Select Box Partially

Q7 If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Long Text It will be great at the beginning but once the work is done the members of the public will loose access

Q8 Do you support Objective One and the draft policies to achieve this objective?

Select Box Yes

Q9 If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Long Text

Q10 Do you support Objective Two and the draft policies to achieve this objective?

Select Box Yes

Q11 If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Long Text

Q12 Do you support Objective Three and the draft policies to achieve this objective?

Select Box Yes

Q13 If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Long Text

Q14 Do you support Objective Four and the draft policies to achieve this objective?

Select Box Yes

Q15 If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Long Text

Q16

Select Box

Do you agree with the proposed priorities that have been identified for the next ten years and the proposed outcomes that we want to achieve in thirty years?

Yes

Q17

Long Text

If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Q18

Long Text

Please provide feedback on any other aspects of the plan that you'd like us to consider

Q19

Select Box

Do you want to speak to your submission at the hearings?

No

Q20

Select Box

Would you like to stay updated with the progress of the project?

No

Q21

Single Checkbox

I acknowledge that I have read the privacy statement and am happy to proceed

Yes

Response No:
7

Contribution ID: 3300

Member ID:

Date Submitted: Apr 02, 2025, 11:08 AM

Q1 First name

Short Text Shane

Q2 Last name

Short Text Kennard

Q3 Organisation: (if applicable)

Short Text

Q4 Address

Short Text

Q5 Email address

Email

Q6 Do you agree with the Vision?

Select Box Yes

Q7 If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Long Text

Q8 Do you support Objective One and the draft policies to achieve this objective?

Select Box Yes

Q9 If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Long Text

Q10 Do you support Objective Two and the draft policies to achieve this objective?

Select Box Yes

Q11 If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Long Text

Q12 Do you support Objective Three and the draft policies to achieve this objective?

Select Box Yes

Q13 If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Long Text

Q14 Do you support Objective Four and the draft policies to achieve this objective?

Select Box Yes

Q15 If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Long Text

Q16

Select Box

Do you agree with the proposed priorities that have been identified for the next ten years and the proposed outcomes that we want to achieve in thirty years?

Yes

Q17

Long Text

If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Q18

Long Text

Please provide feedback on any other aspects of the plan that you'd like us to consider

Q19

Select Box

Do you want to speak to your submission at the hearings?

No

Q20

Select Box

Would you like to stay updated with the progress of the project?

Yes

Q21

Single Checkbox

I acknowledge that I have read the privacy statement and am happy to proceed

Yes

Response No:
8

Contribution ID: 3298

Member ID:

Date Submitted: Apr 01, 2025, 10:31 PM

Q1 First name

Short Text Nigel

Q2 Last name

Short Text Robertson

Q3 Organisation: (if applicable)

Short Text

Q4 Address

Short Text

Q5 Email address

Email

Q6 Do you agree with the Vision?

Select Box Yes

Q7 If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Long Text

Q8 Do you support Objective One and the draft policies to achieve this objective?

Select Box Yes

Q9 If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Long Text

Q10 Do you support Objective Two and the draft policies to achieve this objective?

Select Box Yes

Q11 If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Long Text

Q12 Do you support Objective Three and the draft policies to achieve this objective?

Select Box Yes

Q13 If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Long Text

Q14 Do you support Objective Four and the draft policies to achieve this objective?

Select Box Yes

Q15 If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Long Text

Q16

Select Box

Do you agree with the proposed priorities that have been identified for the next ten years and the proposed outcomes that we want to achieve in thirty years?

Yes

Q17

Long Text

If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Q18

Long Text

Please provide feedback on any other aspects of the plan that you'd like us to consider

Overall, it is a very good plan with excellent objectives. I endorse the development of strong connection with mana whenua in achieving this plan.

Q19

Select Box

Do you want to speak to your submission at the hearings?

No

Q20

Select Box

Would you like to stay updated with the progress of the project?

Yes

Q21

Single Checkbox

I acknowledge that I have read the privacy statement and am happy to proceed

Yes

Response No:
9

Contribution ID: 3297

Member ID:

Date Submitted: Apr 01, 2025, 09:16 PM

Q1 First name

Short Text Toia

Q2 Last name

Short Text Zentveld

Q3 Organisation: (if applicable)

Short Text

Q4 Address

Short Text

Q5 Email address

Email

Q6 Do you agree with the Vision?

Select Box Yes

Q7 If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Long Text

Q8 Do you support Objective One and the draft policies to achieve this objective?

Select Box Yes

Q9 If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Long Text

Q10 Do you support Objective Two and the draft policies to achieve this objective?

Select Box Yes

Q11 If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Long Text

Q12 Do you support Objective Three and the draft policies to achieve this objective?

Select Box Yes

Q13 If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Long Text

Q14 Do you support Objective Four and the draft policies to achieve this objective?

Select Box Yes

Q15 If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Long Text

Q16

Select Box

Do you agree with the proposed priorities that have been identified for the next ten years and the proposed outcomes that we want to achieve in thirty years?

Yes

Q17

Long Text

If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Q18

Long Text

Please provide feedback on any other aspects of the plan that you'd like us to consider

Q19

Select Box

Do you want to speak to your submission at the hearings?

No

Q20

Select Box

Would you like to stay updated with the progress of the project?

No

Q21

Single Checkbox

I acknowledge that I have read the privacy statement and am happy to proceed

Yes

Response No:
10

Contribution ID: 3290

Member ID:

Date Submitted: Mar 26, 2025, 10:02 AM

Q1 First name

Short Text Ted

Q2 Last name

Short Text Ensing

Q3 Organisation: (if applicable)

Short Text

Q4 Address

Short Text

Q5 Email address

Email

Q6 Do you agree with the Vision?

Select Box Partially

Q7 If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Long Text I'd like to be heard.

Q8 Do you support Objective One and the draft policies to achieve this objective?

Select Box Partially

Q9 If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Long Text .

Q10 Do you support Objective Two and the draft policies to achieve this objective?

Select Box Partially

Q11 If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Long Text .

Q12 Do you support Objective Three and the draft policies to achieve this objective?

Select Box Partially

Q13 If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Long Text .

Q14 Do you support Objective Four and the draft policies to achieve this objective?

Select Box Partially

Q15 If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Long Text .

Q16

Select Box

Do you agree with the proposed priorities that have been identified for the next ten years and the proposed outcomes that we want to achieve in thirty years?

Partially

Q17

Long Text

If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

I'd like to be heard on these proposals.

Q18

Long Text

Please provide feedback on any other aspects of the plan that you'd like us to consider

.

Q19

Select Box

Do you want to speak to your submission at the hearings?

Yes

Q20

Select Box

Would you like to stay updated with the progress of the project?

Yes

Q21

Single Checkbox

I acknowledge that I have read the privacy statement and am happy to proceed

Yes

Response No:
11

Contribution ID: 3267

Member ID:

Date Submitted: Mar 02, 2025, 06:34 PM

Q1 First name

Short Text Rebecca

Q2 Last name

Short Text Caroe

Q3 Organisation: (if applicable)

Short Text North Shore rowing Club

Q4 Address

Short Text

Q5 Email address

Email

Q6 Do you agree with the Vision?

Select Box Yes

Q7 If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Long Text

Q8 Do you support Objective One and the draft policies to achieve this objective?

Select Box Yes

Q9 If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Long Text

Q10 Do you support Objective Two and the draft policies to achieve this objective?

Select Box Yes

Q11 If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Long Text

Q12 Do you support Objective Three and the draft policies to achieve this objective?

Select Box Yes

Q13 If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Long Text

Q14 Do you support Objective Four and the draft policies to achieve this objective?

Select Box Yes

Q15 If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Long Text

Q16

Select Box

Do you agree with the proposed priorities that have been identified for the next ten years and the proposed outcomes that we want to achieve in thirty years?

Yes

Q17

Long Text

If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Q18

Long Text

Please provide feedback on any other aspects of the plan that you'd like us to consider

We enjoy visiting the lake for the Te Awamutu rowing regattas. It's a lovely event for our new learn to row class as well as more experienced athletes.

Always on our calendar.

Q19

Select Box

Do you want to speak to your submission at the hearings?

No

Q20

Select Box

Would you like to stay updated with the progress of the project?

Yes

Q21

Single Checkbox

I acknowledge that I have read the privacy statement and am happy to proceed

Yes

Response No:
12

Contribution ID: 3264

Member ID:

Date Submitted: Feb 27, 2025, 09:57 PM

Q1 First name

Short Text Blake

Q2 Last name

Short Text Luff

Q3 Organisation: (if applicable)

Short Text

Q4 Address

Short Text

Q5 Email address

Email

Q6 Do you agree with the Vision?

Select Box Yes

Q7 If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Long Text

Q8 Do you support Objective One and the draft policies to achieve this objective?

Select Box Yes

Q9 If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Long Text

Q10 Do you support Objective Two and the draft policies to achieve this objective?

Select Box Yes

Q11 If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Long Text

Q12 Do you support Objective Three and the draft policies to achieve this objective?

Select Box Yes

Q13 If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Long Text

Q14 Do you support Objective Four and the draft policies to achieve this objective?

Select Box Yes

Q15 If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Long Text

Q16

Select Box

Do you agree with the proposed priorities that have been identified for the next ten years and the proposed outcomes that we want to achieve in thirty years?

Yes

Q17

Long Text

If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Q18

Long Text

Please provide feedback on any other aspects of the plan that you'd like us to consider

The sooner that this asset can return to being a clean water lake then more people will use it. It would be good to be able to utilize the reserve for family outings, picnics etc and utilize the lake for what it is.

Q19

Select Box

Do you want to speak to your submission at the hearings?

No

Q20

Select Box

Would you like to stay updated with the progress of the project?

Yes

Q21

Single Checkbox

I acknowledge that I have read the privacy statement and am happy to proceed

Yes

Response No:
13

Contribution ID: 3263

Member ID:

Date Submitted: Feb 24, 2025, 09:40 PM

Q1 First name

Short Text Oliver

Q2 Last name

Short Text Ashby

Q3 Organisation: (if applicable)

Short Text

Q4 Address

Short Text

Q5 Email address

Email

Q6 Do you agree with the Vision?

Select Box Yes

Q7 If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Long Text

Q8 Do you support Objective One and the draft policies to achieve this objective?

Select Box Yes

Q9 If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Long Text

Q10 Do you support Objective Two and the draft policies to achieve this objective?

Select Box Yes

Q11 If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Long Text

Q12 Do you support Objective Three and the draft policies to achieve this objective?

Select Box Yes

Q13 If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Long Text

Q14 Do you support Objective Four and the draft policies to achieve this objective?

Select Box Yes

Q15 If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Long Text

Q16

Select Box

Do you agree with the proposed priorities that have been identified for the next ten years and the proposed outcomes that we want to achieve in thirty years?

Partially

Q17

Long Text

If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

I don't think it goes far enough really. As you identify, the lake is facing a crisis and urgent action needs to be taken. I think your timeline should be pushed forward and you should be more proactive in how you are going to stop all the farming runoff getting into the water.

Q18

Long Text

Please provide feedback on any other aspects of the plan that you'd like us to consider

I live near the lake and see vast amounts of agrochemicals being spread on the pasture near the lake and ultimately this is the main underlying cause of the lakes problems.

I think you should consider offering financial assistance to the farmers in exchange for them moving towards organic farming as this would be a key way to mitigate the biggest issue.

Q19

Select Box

Do you want to speak to your submission at the hearings?

No

Q20

Select Box

Would you like to stay updated with the progress of the project?

Yes

Q21

Single Checkbox

I acknowledge that I have read the privacy statement and am happy to proceed

Yes

Response No:
14

Contribution ID: 3262

Member ID:

Date Submitted: Feb 18, 2025, 06:29 PM

Q1 First name

Short Text Geoffrey

Q2 Last name

Short Text BOXELL

Q3 Organisation: (if applicable)

Short Text

Q4 Address

Short Text

Q5 Email address

Email

Q6 Do you agree with the Vision?

Select Box Partially

Q7 If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Long Text Too much too soon: you do not have the finances so sorting that out before formulating plans should be done, that way you have a better idea of just what is achievable.

Q8 Do you support Objective One and the draft policies to achieve this objective?

Select Box Yes

Q9 If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Long Text

Q10 Do you support Objective Two and the draft policies to achieve this objective?

Select Box Yes

Q11 If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Long Text

Q12 Do you support Objective Three and the draft policies to achieve this objective?

Select Box Partially

Q13 If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Long Text Costs: if local Iwi, or Maniapoto in general, want this then they need to make a big contribution either in cash or manpower.

Q14 Do you support Objective Four and the draft policies to achieve this objective?

Select Box Partially

Q15 If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Long Text Only as and when WDC is either debt free or has debt in a manageable state. Given WDC's current financial position this is a "nice to have" rather than a "must have".

Q16

Select Box

Do you agree with the proposed priorities that have been identified for the next ten years and the proposed outcomes that we want to achieve in thirty years?

Partially

Q17

Long Text

If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Again: money, money, money. Acquiring land costs and WDC doesn't have it, not unless you intended to keep putting up the rates higher than inflation and, no, don't borrow any more money - interest payments are making rates unaffordable for many.

Work with mana whenua to formally change the name to Wairoto and update promotion and interpretation collateral to reflect the name change and provide further information on the significance of Lake Ngā Roto.

Why? I worked for what was NZ Post Office that became, NZ telecom, and then the many fragments that was split into yet, people would still refer to us as P&T (Post & Telegraph). Fortunes are wasted on "re-branding" and name changing yet so often it is just water off a duck's back and the old terms remain. The subject was also one that the topics dealt with on the Waikato University Master's course I was the Business Manager of and the conclusion was that it should be avoided as much as possible. Not only is it very expensive it pisses Joe & Joanne Soap off.

Q18

Long Text

Please provide feedback on any other aspects of the plan that you'd like us to consider

Are you looking into the use of barley straw? Barley straw decomposes, releasing compounds that inhibit algae growth and binds phosphates, buffers pH, and clarifies the water. This could be used on the feeder streams if not the lake proper: it would certainly be a lot cheaper than buying adjoining farmland.

Oh, and your document could have been reduced by 75%: much of it was repetition - you are not writing a Doctorate thesis!

Q19

Select Box

Do you want to speak to your submission at the hearings?

Yes

Q20

Select Box

Would you like to stay updated with the progress of the project?

Yes

Q21

Single Checkbox

I acknowledge that I have read the privacy statement and am happy to proceed

Yes

Response No:
15

Contribution ID: 3261

Member ID:

Date Submitted: Feb 18, 2025, 04:42 PM

Q1 First name

Short Text Stephen Richard

Q2 Last name

Short Text Hutt

Q3 Organisation: (if applicable)

Short Text Tangata Tiriti

Q4 Address

Short Text

Q5 Email address

Email

Q6 Do you agree with the Vision?

Select Box Yes

Q7 If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Long Text

Q8 Do you support Objective One and the draft policies to achieve this objective?

Select Box Yes

Q9 If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Long Text

Q10 Do you support Objective Two and the draft policies to achieve this objective?

Select Box Yes

Q11 If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Long Text

Q12 Do you support Objective Three and the draft policies to achieve this objective?

Select Box Yes

Q13 If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Long Text

Q14 Do you support Objective Four and the draft policies to achieve this objective?

Select Box Partially

Q15 If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Long Text

Have utilised the partially option, to ask if iwi will be part of the lessee process. Noting that Ngāti Apakura & Ngāti Mahanga still have Koiwi buried in the Lake. As original landowners, it would be a good sign of good relationship working, if Iwi are included in that process. As someone who has worked with Iwi on a lease previously, including Iwi makes sense ethically & administratively.

Wording in the draft, acknowledges the value of Iwi, but doesn't demonstrate Iwi being involved as part of the process, only council led.

Q16 Do you agree with the proposed priorities that have been identified for the next ten years and the proposed outcomes that we want to achieve in thirty years?

Select Box

Yes

Q17 If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Long Text

Q18 Please provide feedback on any other aspects of the plan that you'd like us to consider

Long Text

Leadership in research to look at ways with landowners to reduce the nitrogen intake to the Lake. Could this be something that Ngāti Apakura | University of Waikato | Federated Farmers | AG Research along with the QE11 Trust look at a collaborative - led by Iwi advisors in this space. Mana whenua aspiration and keeping on on key Iwi documents in the same space. Described in the Te Hurihanga Taiao o Tainui Waka - The changing of our environment within Tainui Waka - makes mention of the bird life in Maniapoto districts. The draining of 90% of these lands around Lake Ngāroto in the last 150 years, to support Dairy Farming, has stressed ecosystems, to some species no longer in or around the Lake. Nitrogen Reduction strategy plan would be good to see, to help combat the increased algae incident events that occur often now.

Q19 Do you want to speak to your submission at the hearings?

Select Box

No

Q20 Would you like to stay updated with the progress of the project?

Select Box

Yes

Q21 I acknowledge that I have read the privacy statement and am happy to proceed

Single Checkbox

Yes

Response No:
16

Contribution ID: 3259

Member ID:

Date Submitted: Feb 18, 2025, 01:51 PM

Q1 First name

Short Text Alice

Q2 Last name

Short Text Hicks

Q3 Organisation: (if applicable)

Short Text NA

Q4 Address

Short Text

Q5 Email address

Email

Q6 Do you agree with the Vision?

Select Box Yes

Q7 If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Long Text

Q8 Do you support Objective One and the draft policies to achieve this objective?

Select Box Yes

Q9 If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Long Text

Q10 Do you support Objective Two and the draft policies to achieve this objective?

Select Box Yes

Q11 If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Long Text

Q12 Do you support Objective Three and the draft policies to achieve this objective?

Select Box Yes

Q13 If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Long Text

Q14 Do you support Objective Four and the draft policies to achieve this objective?

Select Box Yes

Q15 If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Long Text

Q16

Select Box

Do you agree with the proposed priorities that have been identified for the next ten years and the proposed outcomes that we want to achieve in thirty years?

Yes

Q17

Long Text

If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Q18

Long Text

Please provide feedback on any other aspects of the plan that you'd like us to consider

I consider that the biggest contribution to ensuring the long-term health of the wetlands is with complete banning of nitrogen fertiliser applications in the catchment area and sweeping restrictions on fertiliser applications in general

I am happy to have my name attached to my submission

Nga mihi Alice Hicks

Q19

Select Box

Do you want to speak to your submission at the hearings?

No

Q20

Select Box

Would you like to stay updated with the progress of the project?

Yes

Q21

Single Checkbox

I acknowledge that I have read the privacy statement and am happy to proceed

Yes

Response No:
17

Contribution ID: 3255

Member ID:

Date Submitted: Feb 14, 2025, 12:48 PM

- | | |
|------------|--|
| Q1 | First name |
| Short Text | Craig |
| Q2 | Last name |
| Short Text | Greene |
| Q3 | Organisation: (if applicable) |
| Short Text | |
| Q4 | Address |
| Short Text | |
| Q5 | Email address |
| Email | |
| Q6 | Do you agree with the Vision? |
| Select Box | Partially |
| Q7 | If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why |
| Long Text | I downloaded the draft reserve management plan to review. It's the most racist and woke document I've ever seen. Can I please have a copy in plain english, both english and maori is ok but paragraphs should not be mixed in different languages, it needs to be clearer. The report is too confusing to read with no key summary points and makes it unclear. |
| Q8 | Do you support Objective One and the draft policies to achieve this objective? |
| Select Box | Partially |
| Q9 | If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why |
| Long Text | Please see detailed reponse in prior answer. |
| Q10 | Do you support Objective Two and the draft policies to achieve this objective? |
| Select Box | Partially |
| Q11 | If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why |
| Long Text | Please see detailed reponse in prior answer. |
| Q12 | Do you support Objective Three and the draft policies to achieve this objective? |
| Select Box | Partially |
| Q13 | If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why |
| Long Text | Please see detailed reponse in prior answer. |
| Q14 | Do you support Objective Four and the draft policies to achieve this objective? |
| Select Box | Partially |

Q15 If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Long Text Please see detailed reponse in prior answer.

Q16 Do you agree with the proposed priorities that have been identified for the next ten years and the proposed outcomes that we want to achieve in thirty years?

Select Box Partially

Q17 If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why

Long Text Please see detailed reponse in prior answer.

Q18 Please provide feedback on any other aspects of the plan that you'd like us to consider

Long Text I emailed Waikato Regional Council on 23/01/25 with my concerns as follows regarding Lake Ngaroto. 1) Too many trees and shrubs cut down. Not enough variety of trees and shrubs planted as a replacement. Not enough diversification of trees and shrubs. For example, hundreds of the same native trees and shrubs have been planted increasing the risk of disease. I can see myrtle rust disease on the same natives. It would be better to plant much more native variety of plants - e.g. Kowhai, Titoki, Puriri, Ferns, Hebes, Leptospermum, Pittosporum, Pseudopanax, Phormium, Podocarpus, Kauri, Totara, Kahikatea, dwarf pohutukawa - maori princess. This would ensure the long term survival of the lake for future generations. In addition to this, I don't think there should be discouragement of planting non NZ natives, some big trees would be beneficial in some areas too - american plain trees, english oak, etc. By planting more variety, the water quality will improve, birdlife will improve and this would flow on to benefit aquatic life. 2) There is no longer any shade in any of the carparks with all the shade trees cut down and replaced with hot tar seal. Please plant either huge natives or nice ornamental trees in the carpark like Cambridge has at Lake Te Koo Utu. Anything is better than nothing - magnolia, elm, claret ash, maple, pohutukawa. Pets and children are suffering in the heat in the summer. 3) Please plant more kanuka and manuka to encourage bees. 4) Please use local nurseries and get a good deal on a huge variety of plants - there are many options available and lucky to be based in the Waikato with so many options. 5) Please invest in pest control more - traps, verspex for wasps too. 6) Please encourage volunteer groups for donations for funding and planting - just like the signs on Mt Kakepuku and Mt Pirongia. 7) Please prosecute farmers and enforce action for farms neighbouring the lake who do not plant dwarf or normal phormium flaxes along streams and fence these off. All of the streams are disgusting and must be the main reason for the rapid decline in the lakes water quality. Copy Lake Rotokauri and other lakes that are amazing. Please ensure there is enough clear space between farmland and the lake to ensure no contamination. Please contract farming environmental consultants who can help with this and specialise in this area. 8) Some more seating would be nice at various stages around the lake. Lots of the old seating is now gone. 9) Please have signs up to prevent the deaths of dogs due to the increased level of risk year after year with the lake being so poor quality. 10) Hand over management to a volunteer organisation such as Million Meters who restored the Mangaohoe Stream if there is an issue with funding. It's a fact council has failed on Lake Ngaroto the past ten years as nothing is working and it keeps getting worse each year. 11) Every step must be taken to immediately restore the lake and improve it. The community feedback is quite often "it's a dump now", "it's a hot exposed contaminated swamp with no shade or trees ruined", "my dog might die if I take it to the lake". Let's team together to make it the best attraction in the Waipa. Close the lake for a year or two if required to achieve this result.

Q19 Do you want to speak to your submission at the hearings?

Select Box Yes

Q20 Would you like to stay updated with the progress of the project?

Select Box Yes

Q21 I acknowledge that I have read the privacy statement and am happy to proceed

Single Checkbox Yes

Response to the Draft Lake Ngāroto Reserve Management Plan Feb 2025.

Frank Kīngi Thorne 18 April 2025

I belong to Ngāti Hikairo. I am an active kaitiaki in our rohe in Te Rohe Pōtae and Waikato. I have been involved in the environmental, history, cultural, and heritage protection on behalf of Ngāti Hikairo for over 22 years now. I submit this feedback as an individual. I do so to support and complement feedback from Te Rūnanganui-o-Ngāti Hikairo. I would like to detail the relationship of Ngāti Hikairo to Ngāroto so that my support for a Reserve Management Plan can be better understood. I will provide background to Ngāti Hikairo being mana whenua at Ngāroto. And secondly I will provide feedback on different components of the RMP.

I will begin by bringing focus to the matakite (prophetic vision) of our tupuna Tiriwā, a resident of Ngāroto and Te Māngeo, a renowned seer, who witnessed the arrival of foreigners, confiscations, and overwhelming land loss. He translated his vision in to the following tongikura (prophetic saying by a charismatic leader) -

***I kite au i tētehi tangata, he whakapakoko te kanohi, e haere mai ana i runga i te
kurī pae ngahuru. Māna te nuku nei e noho.***

*I have seen a man, whose face is like stone (white), who rides forth on a dog ten cubits
in height. This will be his land to occupy.*

The iwi of Ngāti Hikairo and Ngāti Apakura witnessed the reality of this tongikura when Ngāroto and the outlet Manga-o-Tama and the surroundings were taken as part of the 1.6 million acres that were confiscated from Waikato tribes in 1864. The Ngāroto Reserve Management Plan 2025 is an opportunity by both iwi to revisit the prophecy of Tiriwā and in conjunction with Waipā District Council, reclaim a small footing in our tribal territories.

The establishment of the iwi of Ngāti Hikairo is attributed to Whakamarurangi, the son of Hikairo II of Ngāti Puhiawe and Ngāti Apakura and Rangikōpī of Ngāti Horotakere, Ngāti Te Uru, and Ngāti Purapura.

Whakamarurangi te tangata
Ngā tahā i whatia
Nōna te mauri manu e...

Ka tere pīpī whakaaō
 Ngāroto ki Kāwhia
 Ko Hikairo te iwi e...

Whakamarurangi is the leader
 The gourds were fractured
 He possessed the life force talismans for birdlife
 The many hapū gathered from Ngāroto to Kāwhia
 Under the tribal mantle of Ngāti Hikairo

This is a verse taken from the waiata, Tū mai mātātahi composed by the late Ngāti Hikairo rūruhi, Mere Gilmore. It states that Whakamarurangi through courage and determination took control of the bird hunting, and life force talismans for the birdlife, and therefore brought together the confederation of hapū which were subsequently named Ngāti Hikairo.

According to Ngāti Hikairo traditions the iwi, of Tainui origin, is a confederation of hapū from Kāwhia on the West Coast to Pirongia, Ngāroto and Rukuhia. Rakataura III, the son of Tokohei, is the central tupuna that connects all the constituent hapū of Ngāti Hikairo. Pāhorō-i-te-rangi, the son of Rakataura III Pāhorō-i-te-rangi held the mana whenua at Ngāroto. Pāhorō-i-te-rangi had three children, Takupu-o-te-rangi and his two younger sisters, Te Waikauhoe and Ngāmuriwai. The sisters married twins, Tūihu and Tūtengangana, descendants of Whatihua and Apakura. Te Waikauhoe, the eldest sister, married Tūihu, the eldest brother. And Ngāmuriwai, the younger sister married Tūtengangana the younger brother. The majority of the hapū of Ngāti Hikairo descend from Takupu-o-te-rangi and Te Waikauhoe and Tūihu. And Ngāti Apakura descend from Ngāmuriwai and Tūtengangana. It is through this shared tūpuna connection that the hapū were able to unite under the leadership of Whakamarurangi. It is also through this whakapapa that Ngāti Hikairo now claim mana whenua from Kāwhia to Ngāroto and Rukuhia in the Waipā.

The reason Ngāroto is significant to mana whenua, Ngāti Hikairo and Ngāti Apakura is because it is the very location they originated from, and where they developed as hapū and eventually as independent iwi. We consider Ngāroto to be our ūkāipō, our homeland. As our ūkāipō, our mother it provides us with life, sustenance, identity, culture, mātauranga, wairuatanga, belonging, purpose, and somewhere to return to. And as our ūkāipō, it is our responsibility as children and descendants to take care, nurture, protect and sustain life as kaitiaki.

Ngāti Hikairo and Ngāti Apakura originate from Ngāroto. And the pā and kāinga in and around Ngāroto including Taurangamirumiru, Ngāroto, Te Pūtere, Te Moutere, Ōhope and Te Mangeo is where we lived when we became an iwi, and we continued to live without restriction until 1864. In 1864 the whenua, our rohe in Waipā was taken by raupatu. During 1865-1867 we received over 3000 acres at Whatiwhatihoe and the slopes of Pirongia in the Parish of Pirongia and about 1000 acres of the Ngāroto Parish in return land awards granted to members of Te Rūnanga o Ngāti Hikairo on land, just north of Te Rore, that we identified as Manga-o-Tama on the south bank of the Manga-o-tama Stream, the outlet of Ngāroto.

Ngāti Hikairo and Ngāti Apakura have mana whenua and kaitiakitanga over Ngāroto. We have traditions of Takupu-o-te rangi his sisters Te Waikauhoe and Ngāmuriwai and their husbands Tūihu and Tūtengangana living at Taurangamirumiru. Takupu-o-te rangi and his brothers in laws are associated with building the “floating island pā” known as Te Moutere, Te Pūtere/Te Pūtete, and Ngāroto and others on Ngāroto. We share the responsibility of kaitiaki of Ngāroto with our huānga, Ngāti Apakura. We share origins with Ngāti Apakura, but we are not the same people. Ngāroto is a shared space between Ngāti Hikairo and Ngāti Apakura. Ngāti Apakura stretch from Ngāroto east to Rangiaowhia and Puahue. Where as Ngāti Hikairo stretches north to Ōhaupō and Rukuhia and then west to the mouth of the Manga-o-Tama on the Waipā then to Harapepe and then south to Tahuanui (a peak on Pirongia), and south from Ngāroto to Kaipaka and west to Mangapiko, Whatiwhatihoe to Te Ake-a-Hikapiro (a peak on Pirongia). From both Tahuanui and Te Ake-a-Hikapiro, the rohe of Ngāti Hikairo descends to Ōpārau and the northern shores of Kāwhia Harbour.

Tautepō - The battle of the canoes

There was a significant battle at Ngāroto, named Tautepō between Ngāti Puhiaue and Ngā Tūihu, later to become Ngāti Hikairo against Ngāti Apakura. There is debate as to whether Tautepō is a pā and pā tuna on the Manga-o-Tama, the outlet stream of Ngāroto, or on the Mangapiko Stream. A dispute over the pā tuna (eel weir) led to a full scale engagement between Ngāti Puhiaue and Ngāti Apakura which was fought on the waters of Ngāti Roto in waka. Many people on both sides were killed. Ngāti Apakura were defeated and fled south to Te Kawa and Ōtorohanga. It is often referred to as the Battle of the Canoes. It is detailed in Ngā Iwi o Tainui by Pei Te Hurinui and Bruce Biggs. It is also in Ngā Tohu o Tainui by F.L. Phillips and also retold by Roberton in the Māori Population of Te Awamutu.

Story of Ngaroto - Battle of the canoes - 1949

https://paperspast.natlib.govt.nz/newspapers/TAWC19490117.2.28?items_per_page=10&query=tautepo&snippet=true

The known pā at Ngāroto are -

Ngāroto - The Ngāroto Yacht Club
 Taurangamirumiru
 Te Pūtete/TePūtere
 Te Moutere
 Te Mangeo
 Ōhope

Tautepō is either on the Manga-o-Tama or Mangapiko Streams and is directly connected to Ngāroto.

Te Kawa

After Tautepō Ngāti Puhiawe and its Ngā Tūihu allies pursued Ngāti Apakura to Te Kawa south of Kakepuku. Hikairo I of Ngāti Apakura went to Ōtorohanga to seek assistance from Paretūiri and Ngāti Maniapoto to reinforce his warparty and returned to Te Kawa to face Ngāti Puhiawe and the Ngā Tūihu and sub-hapū. Ngāti Apakura took the victory, and the defeated fled to Kāwhia. Ngāti Apakura returned to Mangapiko and Ngāroto.

Te Whakanamu

Following defeat at Te Kawa, Ngāti Puhiawe and Ngā Tūihu took up a position in Kāwhia at the mouths of the Te Kauri and Awaroa Rivers with their relatives of Ngāti Te Uru. They occupied a pā name Te Whakanamu. It was named this to commemorate the statement that once Ngāti Puhiawe and Ngā Tūihu had rebuilt their forces and “become numerous like sand flies” they would return to Waipā to fight Ngāti Apakura. With the support of Ngāti Te Uru they returned to Waipā and attacked Ngāti Apakura at Tūpāpakurua. They were repulsed. And a force led by Hikairo I of Ngāti Apakura came from Ngāroto to assist the besieged Ngāti Apakura. Ngāti Puhiawe and allies feigned a retreat, and Ngāti Apakura fell for the ruse, leaving the protection of the fortified Tūpāpakurua they were ambushed and Hikairo I and his people were killed. This engagement established the boundary between the Ngāti Puhiawe and Ngā Tūihu from the middle of Ngāroto to the west where they merged with Ngāti Horotakere and its hapū, and Ngāti Apakura from the centre of the lake extending eastwards.

Te Kuratūhope - the ceding of mana whenua to Hikairo II

Kuratūhope of Ngāti Horotakere, was the highest ranked descendant of Takupu-o-te rangi. She was the aunty of Rangikōpī, the wife of Hikairo II. Ngāti Horotakere were attacked by Ngāti Apakura, the people of Hikairo II. Hikairo II returned from a war

expedition to discover the situation, and found Kuratūhope. She officially ceded the lands and mana of Ngāti Horotakere to Hikairo II so that he could transfer the mana and lands to his son Whakamarurangi. She asked him to dispatch her so that cession would be ceremonially complete. He reluctantly completed the task. Hikairo II declared himself separate socially, and politically from Ngāti Apakura. So too did some of his siblings and cousins from Ngāti Apakura. He transferred the mana to Whakamarurangi.

Hingakākā

Ngāti Hikairo is a small, independent iwi whose rohe is wedged between two large iwi, Waikato and Ngāti Maniapoto, and to the east Ngāti Apakura. The wedge analogy reflects Ngāti Hikairo's self-determination and independence. It arises from the whakatau-ā-kī coined by the important tupuna, Tiriwā, at the great battle of Hingakākā, "Māku te tītī, māku te whewhera" (I will be the wedge, and I will make my own gap).

Tiriwā was a son of Whatitiri of Ngāti Puhiaue and Te Ate of Ngāti Hineue, a hapū of Ngāti Puhiaue. Tiriwā is a legendary figure of Ngāti Whatitiri, Ngāti Hineue and Ngāti Puhiaue. He was a renowned tohunga and matakite, associated with legendary prophecies. He was, like Hikairo II, recognised as having the ability to fuse his tōhunga abilities and fighting capabilities, to win battles. This is said to have been the case in the battle of Hingakākā at Te Mangeo, which is located at Ngāroto. Taurangamirumiru and Te Mangeo, on the western side of the lake and its wetlands were kāinga of Tiriwā and his multiple hapū of Ngāti Puhiaue. A Ngāti Hikairo tradition maintains that it is not the distribution of the fish that was the cause of Hingakākā, but rather, an attempt to secure the taonga held at Ngāroto. The attempt was directly related to Hikairo & Tiriwā, both invading Kāwhia, and the disappearance of taonga from the Te Ahurei Whare Wānanga in Kāwhia. The taonga were deposited in the waters of the lake. Hingakākā was the result of a power struggle fuelled by a desire to control the houses of learning and the taonga held by them. It is Tiriwā who is said to have used powerful karakia to summon and utilise the powers of local kaitiaki and taniwha to confuse and overwhelm the force with immense numerical advantage that attacked Ngāroto. This strategy and the strategies of warfare saw Ngāti Hikairo, Ngāti Apakura, Waikato, Maniapoto and allies secure victory at Hingakākā.

Whakamarurangi - the formation of Ngāti Hikairo

Whakamarurangi acquired mana from his father Hikairo II, and his tupuna Te Kuratūhope, and then further fame and mana through his own actions. He was ceded mana from a tūpuna from Kāwhia, and he acquired mana over Pirongia Maunga and Mangauika.

Whakamarurangi brought the various hapū descended from Rakataura III together and the tribe was named Ngāti Hikairo. Hence the division between Ngāti Puhiaue and

Ngāti Apakura became between Ngāti Hikairo and Ngāti Apakura. And the boundaries of Ngāti Hikairo extended further east as they included hapū that joined Hikairo in separating themselves from Ngāti Apakura. Whakamarurangi lived at Waiari with Ngāti Puhiawe, when his father deceased father Hikairo II was returned to him. He then established Mātakitaki as his base. Which became the central base for Ngāti Hikairo, when it was attacked in 1822 by Ngā Puhi. Ngāti Hikairo expand in to Kāwhia after the fall of Mātakitaki and the departure of Ngāti Toa.

Tērā ngā tai e āki ki te rae o Mangauika

This is a traditional mōteatea of Ngāti Hikairo, composed for Hihi, a son of Whakamarurangi, who was killed at Roto-o-rangi in the 1820s. It has been continually performed for the last 200 years to mourn the loss of rangatira, prove mana whenua at Mangauika and Whatiwhatihoe and to show tangata whenua status in the wider Waipā. There are many publications, recordings, manuscripts, and oral traditions with varying lyrics, history and explanations. The mōteatea holds great cultural significance to Ngāti Hikairo. There are many words that have been extracted from this waiata and applied as personal names within Ngāti Hikairo, and they continue to be handed down to this generation. One such name is Wairoto. The most consistent version is that Wairoto is another name for Ngāroto. Another version is that rather than Wairoto, it is Te Wai o Roto-o-Rangi - referring to the waters of the lake at Roto-o-rangi where Hihi was killed.

Ngāti Hikairo in Waipā 1822-1864 and beyond

Ngāti Hikairo moved to Kāwhia to join their Ngāti Te Uru, Ngāti Purapura, Te Whānau Pani and Ngāti Horotakere relatives already established there, but the hapū continued to live in Waipā and moved between coast and the interior for seasonal harvests. They were in Waipā when Kaipaka was attacked in 1834. The locations in Waipā were Mangauika, Whatiwhatihoe, Pirongia, Te Rore, Pukerimu, Manga-o-Tama, Pikopiko, Harapepe, Pāterangi, Rukuhia, Ōhaupō, Ngāroto and all its kāinga, Kaipaka, Mangapiko, Tauwhare, Waiari, Mangapōuri. This ended with the war and confiscations in 1864. However lands were returned to Ngāti Hikairo in the Pirongia Parish, Mangapiko Parish, Ngāroto Parish and Pirongia Township, which enabled a continued ahi kā, mana whenua and kaitiakitanga for Ngāti Hikairo in the Waipā. There were also some lands awarded in the Puahue Block.

The hapū of Ngāti Hikairo are:

1. **Ngāti Horotakere** - A large hapū with several sub-hapū. Horotakere, the senior descendant of Takupu-o-te rangi is the take tupuna to Pirongia and Ōpārau. Associated with the eastern slopes of Pirongia, Pirongia Township, Mangapiko, Te Rore, Mātakitaki,

Mangauika, Whatiwhatihoe Ōpārau, and Tōrea, Motutara, Motungaio, Paretao and Paringātai in Kāwhia.

2. **Ngāti Pare** - The descendants of Katohau. A hapū of Ngāti Horotakere. From the eastern slopes of Pirongia and Rangiuru, part of Pirongia Township, Mangapiko, Mātakitaki, Ōpārau, and Paiaka, Kaipāpaka, Hauāuru, Te Puru, Pouewe, Paretao and Ōmiti in Kāwhia.

3. **Ngāti Purapura** - The descendants of Pourewarua, the son of Purapura, a child of Pourāhui. Pourewarua also has strong affiliations to Ngāti Māhanga, through his mother, Parekuku. Pourewarua married two sisters, Te Ngako and Te Urumahora of Ngāti Te Uru and Ngāti Horotakere. A hapū of Ngāti Horotakere. Ngāti Purapura are the recognised tangata whenua at Whatiwhatihoe. They also have interests in Pirongia, Mātakitaki, Mangapiko and Ōpārau.

4. **Ngāti Te Uru** - The descendants of Te Urukahutaraheke, a child of Te Ariari. The descendants of three of Te Urukahutaraheke's children married into Ngāti Horotakere. This hapū is strongly affiliated with hapū on the south side of Kāwhia Harbour and with Ngāti Koata, Ngāti Tahinga, Ngāti Toa, Ngāti Tūirangi and Tainui-ā-whiro. One of the few strictly Kāwhia based hapū of Ngāti Hikairo. A hapū of Ngāti Horotakere. Associated with various places along the foreshore of Ōpārau, including Tiritirimatangi, Pukekohe, Te Kauri, Ngātokakairiri and Kawaroa, and Paretao and Te Papa-ō-Kārewa in Kāwhia.

5. **Ngāti Wai** - The descendants of Te Waihorohanga of Ngāti Māhanga and Te Rorohape of Ngāti Horotakere. A hapū of Ngāti Horotakere. Associated with the eastern slopes of Pirongia, Pirongia Township, Mātakitaki, Mangapiko, Ōpārau and Tōrea in Kāwhia.

6. **Te Matewai** - The origins of this hapū are not clear, however Pūmipi Moke or Pūmipi Kanohi was clearly the principal rangatira. Pūmipi was a rangatira of Te Whānau Pani, Ngāti Puhiaawe, Ngāti Wai, Ngāti Parehinga and Ngāti Horotakere. It is assumed that Te Matewai is a branch of one the above named hapū. Associated with Pirongia and Ōpārau.

7. **Te Whānau Pani** - The descendants of Whakamarurangi and Te Rārangi of Ngāti Pou, Ngāti Ngāhia, and Ngāti Mahuta. Whakamarurangi was the eldest child of Hikairo II and Rangikōpī of Ngāti Horotakere, Ngāti Te Uru and Ngāti Purapura. Predominantly associated with Mātakitaki, Pirongia Township and Whatiwhatihoe in the Waipā, Ōpārau, and Kōpare, Mangaora, Mōkai Kāinga, Te Ruauku, Paretao and Te Papa-ō-Kārewa in Kāwhia.

8. **Ngāti Ngāti** - The descendants of Kopa, the eldest child of Whakamarurangi and Te Rārangi. A hapū of Te Whānau Pani. Associated with Mātakitaki, Whatiwhatihoe, and various places along the foreshore of Ōpārau including Waihōhonu and Ngātokakairiri and Te Papa-ō-Kārewa in Kāwhia.

9. **Ngā Uri-o-Te Makaho** – The descendants of Te Makaho-o-te-rangi, a son of Whakamarurangi and Te Rārangi. The hapū is a sub-hapū of Te Whānau Pani. Te Makaho's children were still alive in the 1890s and this is the name they operated by during Maori Land Court investigations, hearings and petitions. Associated with numerous lands in Kāwhia, Ōpārau, and Pirongia.

10. **Te Whānau-a-Te Ake** - The descendants of Te Akerautangi, the youngest child of Whakamarurangi and Te Rārangi. The hapū is a sub-hapū of Te Whānau Pani. The children of Te Akerautangi were still alive in the 1900s and this is the name they operated by during Maori Land Court investigations, hearings and petitions. Associated with numerous lands in Kāwhia, Ōpārau, and Pirongia.

11. **Ngā Tūihu** – The descendants of Tūihu, are a collective of hapū who descend from Tūihu and originated from Ngāroto, Rukuhia, Ōhaupō, Taurangamirumiru, Mangakaware, Waiari, Mangapiko and Te Rore. The hapū include Ngāti Puhiawe, Ngāti Huritake, Ngāti Waikaha, Ngāti Pōkaia, Ngāti Taiuru, Ngāti Hineue, Ngāti Parehinga, Ngāti Whattirii, Te Matewai, Ngāti Horotakere, Ngāti Wai, Ngāti Pare, Ngāti Te Uru, Ngāti Purapura, Te Whānau Pani, Ngāti Ngāti, Ngā Uri-a-Te Makaho, Te Whānau-a-Te Ake. They have land interests in Kāwhia, Ōpārau, Mangauika (Whatiwhatihoe), Pirongia, Mangapiko, Te Rore, Ngāroto, Taurangamirumiru, Ōhaupō and Rukuhia.

12. **Ngāti Puhiawe** - The descendants of Puhiawe a child of Rakamoana. With Ngāti Waikaha, Ngāti Huritake and Ngāti Pōkaia, they were previously identified as Ngā Tūihu. Ngāti Puhiawe is a large hapū with several sub-hapū. Associated with Waiari, Mangapiko, Te Rore, Mangakaware, Ngāroto, Ōhaupō and Mangauika in the Waipā, Ōpārau, and Pokopoko, Murumurupārāwera and Paretao in Kāwhia.

13. **Ngāti Hineue** - Hineue is the wife of Te Rīmangemange, the son of Puhiawe. Hineue is of Whanganui and Tūwharetoa extraction. Ngāti Hineue is a hapū of Ngāti Puhiawe. Associated with Waiari, Mangapiko, Te Rore, Mangakaware, Ngāroto, Ōhaupō and Mangauika in the Waipā, Ōpārau, and Pokopoko, Murumurupārāwera, and Paretao in Kāwhia.

14. **Ngāti Whatitiri** - The descendants of Whatitiri, particularly from his son Tiriwā. A hapū of Ngāti Puhiaawe. Associated with Te Mangeo, Taurangamirumiru, Te Rore, Mangakāware, Ngāroto, Ōhaupō and Waiari in the Waipā, and Ōpārau.

15. **Ngāti Parehinga** - Parehinga is a daughter of Whatitiri of Ngāti Puhiaawe, and the sister of Tiriwā, whose descendants retain the name Ngāti Whatitiri. Is a hapū of Ngāti Puhiaawe. Associated with Waiari, Mangapiko, Te Rore, Mangakāware, Ngāroto, Ōhaupō in the Waipā, and Ōpārau.

16. **Ngāti Taiuru** - The descendants of Taiuru or Rangitara Taiuru, the child of Taoroa of Ngāti Whanaunga and Paretehuke of Ngāti Puhiaawe and Ngāti Horotakere. A hapū of Ngāti Puhiaawe and Ngāti Horotakere. Associated with Ngāroto, Rangiaowhia, Te Rore, Mangakāware, Waiari and Mangapiko in the Waipā, Ōpārau and Pokopoko in Kāwhia.

17. **Ngāti Huritake** - Huritake, Puhiaawe and Waikaha were siblings. Huritake had a son Taraao, who had a child, named Pōkaia. These four and all Ngāti Puhiaawe sub-hapū come from Ngā Tūihu. Associated with Ngāroto, Ōhaupō, Rukuhia, Waiari and Mangapiko in the Waipā, and Ōpārau.

18. **Ngāti Pokaia** - Pokaia was the mokopuna of Huritake, the sibling of Puhiaawe and Waikaha. The hapū that come from these four were previously named Ngā Tūihu. Mostly associated with Ngāroto, and north towards Ōhaupō, Rukuhia and Puahue and Rangiaowhia in the Waipā, Ōpārau, and Paetonga in Kāwhia.

19. **Ngāti Waikaha** - The descendants of Waikaha, a sibling of Huritake, and Puhiaawe. The hapū that come from these three seem to be named Ngā Tūihu. Mostly associated with Ngāroto, and north towards Ōhaupō and Rukuhia and Puahue and Rangiaowhia in the Waipā and Paiaka in Kāwhia.

20. **Ngāti Rahopūpūwai** - The descendants of Te Apurangi and Tarahitaua of Ngāti Unu. Closely associated to Ngāti Puhiaawe, Ngāti Maru and Ngāti Horotakere. Associated with Mangauika.

21. **Ngāti Maru** - The descendants of Maru, the child of Marutao. Maru was a descendant of both Houmea and Marumāhanga. His child, Te Aotehe is heavily associated with the Mangauika Block. The daughter of Te Aotehe, Te Ngako, married Te Kamonga-o-te-rangi of Ngāti Horotakere, and Ngāti Maru appears to have been absorbed into Ngāti Horotakere. The name Ngāti Maru appears in evidence for the Mangauika and Kōpua-Pirongia-Kāwhia Investigations, but not identified as an active

hapū. It is a strong whakapapa connection for the Ngāti Rahopūpūwai and Ngāti Puhiawe into the Mangauika Block.

22. Ngāti Te Mihinga - Te Mihinga is the mother of Hikairo II and married Puku. Son of Hikairo I of Ngāti Apakura. Through Te Mihinga, Ngāti Hikairo have strong ties with Ngāti Hourua, Ngāti Hauā, and Ngāti Whakamarurangi. This is the hapū to which Hikairo II belonged, before the name Ngāti Hikairo was assumed. Associated with Rukuhia, Ōhaupō, Te Hīnau-ā-Tamatea, Puahue, Rangiaowhia and Ngāroto in the Waipā, and after Mātakitaki in 1822, with Ōpārau and Kaipāpaka, Paretao and Paetonga in Kāwhia.

23. Ngāti Paretāiko - The descendants of Paretāiko, the sister of Hikairo II. Associated with Ngāroto, Rukuhia, Ōhaupō, Puahue, Rangiaowhia, Pirongia, Pākarikari and Maketū in Kāwhia.

24. Ngāti Rāhui - The descendants of Rāhui, the daughter of Tukemata, the older brother of Hikairo I. This is a large grouping, often deemed a hapū of Ngāti Apakura, however, the Ngāti Rāhui branch of Ngāti Hikairo is heavily intermarried with Ngāti Puhiawe. A hapū of Ngāti Puhiawe. Associated with Ngāroto, Puahue, Rangiaowhia, Waiari, Te Rore and Kaipaka in the Waipā and Ōpārau, and Puketutu, Paretao and Paetonga in Kāwhia.

Other hapū of Ngāti Apakura origin who are closely associated with Ngāti Hikairo are Ngāti Te Kiri, Ngāti Rangitaiki, Ngāti Te Rau

Feedback in relation to the Ngāroto Reserve Management 2025 Draft -

I support the wairua of the focus on Whāinga Tuatahi to Tuatoru from the Ngāti Apakura Feedback on Lake Ngāroto recreation Reserve Management Plan.

Ngāti Hikairo and Ngāti Apakura need to be provided an opportunity at the conclusion of this process to confirm support of the RMP.

Ngāti Hikairo and Ngāti Apakura need to be provided time to wānanga on the name Ngāroto or Ngāroto and Ngāroto/Ngāroto or Wairoto.

The Arawai instalment for Ngāroto and Hingakākā needs to be updated to reflect a tangata whenua narrative - reflective of both Ngāti Hikairo and Ngāti Apakura traditions

Any signage currently standing on the reserve needs to be updated to reflect a tangata whenua narrative - reflective of both Ngāti Hikairo and Ngāti Apakura traditions

p. 3 - Mana whenua built the man made island pā

- They are also considered to have been “floating: pā - Te Pūtere takes it’s name from this fact.
- Tautepō - The Battle of Canoes was fought on the waters and shore of Ngāroto, and many of the mana whenua were slain

P.11 - Allot 54A Mangapiko PSH - 3.5612 ha - Has this property and the property adjoining it to the south been assessed for heritage and archaeological values?

P.14 - Can the Iwi Heritage Management Plans associated with Ngāroto be named?

P.16 - I ngā rā o mua he hokinga mahara

- The historical kōrero tuku iho above

P.20 He Taonga Tuku Iho - This page fails to articulate the taonga tuku iho quality of Ngāroto to mana whenua

P.22 - The Indigenous Biodiversity values - Can this be approached similar to Mangakaware. Looking at historical, current and proposed future work for reintroduced indigenous species. For example - mirumiru, mangeo related to local place names. Can this be re-examined from a Mātauranga Māori lens? Kahikatea need to be replanted in appropriate locations. Other species associated with local tūpuna include hīnau and tutu.

P.26 - The listed atua do not match up with the seven atua listed with Te Paenga o Uenuku.

- There has been many taonga extractions, and furthermore several archaeological digs with the removal of artifacts. Mana whenua wish to have more restrictions and controls in place to limit excavations and extractions. And also to build relationships with extracted material now in museums, and gain access to said materials.
- Ngāti Hikairo have long been opposed to archaeological digs and excavations. And I suggest we continue to keep our taonga in the whenua and lake by all means necessary.

P.31 - **Table 1. Roles of key parties involved in administering and restoring Lake Ngāroto**

- Mana whenua, being Ngāti Apakura and Ngāti Hikairo originate from Ngāroto
- Mana whenua, being Ngāti Apakura and Ngāti Hikairo, hold customary rights and interests in the land.

- Participate in decision-making regarding the conservation and protection of historic places, archaeological sites and wāhi tapu as they relate to Lake Ngāroto.
- Mana whenua should be involved in the governance of Ngāroto and decision making at that level
- Work in partnership with local and regional councils to identify, implement and monitor restoration actions that are informed by mātauranga Māori and tikanga and based on strong relationships.
- All three roles of mana whenua are terrestrial focussed . It excludes the lake and waterways.
- All three roles also limit mana whenua to customary, tikanga and mātauranga advise.
- Mana whenua should be considered to hold customary rights and interests in the lake
- Mana whenua should be involved in the decision making and participating in the restoration of the terrestrial indigenous biodiversity of the reserve land surrounding the lake.
- Mana whenua should be involved in the decision making, and participating in the restoration of the lake's health and wellbeing.
- Mana whenua should be involved in the decision making and participating in the monitoring and reporting programme for Lake Ngāroto's lake health.
- Mana whenua should be involved in the replanting, and reintroduction of species
 - both the decision making and the hands on mahi.

p. 60 - Iwi Heritage Management Plans acknowledged and referenced - ie - Te Tahuanui
 - Ngāti Hikairo Heritage Management Plan

Appendix 5 - Overview of pā

History should be consistent. It only has kōrero for one pā, and it seems to be focussed on narratives from published books, not tangata whenua narratives relating to Reitū and Reipae and Hingakākā.

Reitū and Reipae

Reitū and Reipae are not part of Ngāti Apakura, they are of Ngā Tūihu, they are siblings of Rakamoana. Rakamoana is the source of Ngāti Huritake, Ngāti Waikaha, Ngāti Pōkaia, Ngāti Puhiaawe and it's sub-hapū of Ngāti Whatitiri, Ngāti Parehinga, Ngāti Hineue, Te Matewai, Ngāti Taiuru, and a large branch of Ngāti Rāhui, and Parehaunui who married Horotakere, the origin of Ngāti Horotakere, Ngāti Wai, Ngāti Pare, Ngāti Te Uru, Ngāti Purapura, Te Whānau Pani, Ngāti Ngāti, Ngā Uri a Te Makaho and Te Whānau o Te Ake. We come from the siblings of Reitū and Reipae.

Ngāti Hikairo maintain that the descendants of Tūihu and the hapū descending from him are not Ngāti Apakura and that all descendants of Tūihu, known as Ngā Tūihu, constitute the majority of Ngāti Hikairo.

Ngāti Puhiawe

Ngāti Puhiawe are registered as a separate grouping within the Waikato Raupatu beneficiary hapū list, and as a result are considered not to be a hapū of Ngāti Hikairo. Ngāti Puhiawe has many sub-hapū. Ngāti Hikairo traditions state Ngāti Puhiawe is a hapū of Ngāti Hikairo.

Karamū Whaiki identified his hapū as Ngāti Puhiawe, while giving evidence for the Pirongia West Rehearing in 1894. He was asked what his other hapū were, and he clarified that they included Ngāti Pōkaia, Ngāti Rāhui and Ngāti Hineue. He was asked what the tribal name was while in Waipā, his response was Ngā Tūihu. He was then asked:

“Are Ngāti Puhiawe also called Ngāti Hikairo?” “Yes” when they go to other places as visitors.” This is understood in the comment of Karamū Whaiki: “When among Ngāti Hikairo, Ngāti Puhiawe are Ngāti Puhiawe, when outside of the rohe of Ngāti Hikairo, they are viewed as Ngāti Hikairo.”

Ngāti Puhiawe leaders Karena Tāmaki, Rore Erueti, Marae Erueti and others led a petition in 1947 on behalf of Ngāti Puhiawe and Ngāti Apakura to have confiscated lands returned as they were landless. Due to this Ngāti Puhiawe was included in the Tainui Māori Trust Board, and the 1946 Tainui Settlement, and named again in the 1995 Waikato Settlement alongside Ngāti Hikairo as beneficiary hapū of Waikato-Tainui with Waipapa as the constituent marae.

Lake Ngā Roto Recreation Reserve Management Plan review



Feedback closes: 5pm, Friday 18 April

Your details

Full name: CAROLINE BARRETT

Organisation: (if applicable) _____

Address: _____

Email: _____

Phone: _____

For office use only:

Submission No. _____

Privacy statement: Feedback (including names and contact details) may be provided in full to elected members. Feedback (including names but not contact details) may be made available to the public at our office and on our website. Your personal information may also be used for the administration of the process, including informing you of the outcome of the feedback. All information collected will be held by Waipā District Council, 101 Bank Street, Te Awamutu with submitters having the right to access and correct personal information. View the full privacy statement at waipadc.govt.nz/privacy-statement.

☒ I acknowledge that I have read the privacy statement and am happy to proceed.

Te whakakitenga | Vision

Do you agree with the Vision?

The life-sustaining capacity of Lake Ngā Roto is brought back to life and protected and the wāhi tapu (sacred site) status acknowledged so that the Waikato and Waipā Rivers, indigenous species, mana whenua and communities can flourish.

☒ Yes

☐ Partially

☐ No

If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why:

Definitely support all these

Ngā whāinga me ngā kaupapa here | Objectives and policies

Do you support Objective One and the draft policies to achieve this objective?

View on pages 36 - 38

☐ Yes

☐ Partially

☐ No

If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why:

Do you support Objective Two and the draft policies to achieve this objective?

View on pages 39 - 40

☐ Yes

☐ Partially

☐ No

If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why:

Do you support Objective Three and the draft policies to achieve this objective?

View on pages 41 - 42

☐ Yes

☐ Partially

☐ No

If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why:

Do you support Objective Four and the draft policies to achieve this objective?

View on pages 43 - 46

☒ Yes

☒ Partially

☐ No

If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why:

I would like ~~★~~ more stable walkways and also wider
(for people like me who love nature but also have balance issues)
★ clearer signage about the type of walkway surface in
the different ~~areas~~ sections (eg. I did not know that the
whole boardwalk is not the same as the start of the walk
which ^{I found} ~~is~~ very wobbly).
★ would be lovely to have lots of dog friendly things
like poo bag bins and water stations

Thank you

Management focus and expected outcomes

Do you agree with the proposed priorities that have been identified for the next ten years and the proposed outcomes that we want to achieve in thirty years?

View on pages 50 - 53

☒ Yes

☐ Partially

☐ No

If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why:

Other feedback and comments

Please provide feedback on any other aspects of the plan that you'd like us to consider

Also support lots of history education + ecological
education about the site - signage / events / etc...
community engagement opportunities

Hearings

Do you want to speak to your submission at the hearings?

Council will be holding a hearings on the Draft Lake Ngā Roto Reserve Management Plan (date to be confirmed).

☐ Yes ☒ No

Would you like to stay updated with the progress of the project?

☒ Yes ☐ No

Submissions can be:

Online:

waipadc.govt.nz/ngarotoreview

Emailed to:

haveyoursay@waipadc.govt.nz

Subject: Ngā Roto Recreation RMP review

Posted to:

Waipā District Council Private Bag
2402

Te Awamutu 3840

Attn: Aidan Kirkby-McLeod

Delivering it to Council offices:

Waipā District Council 101
Bank Street

Te Awamutu

Attn: Aidan Kirkby-McLeod

OR Waipā District Council 23 Wilson
Street Cambridge

Attn: Aidan Kirkby-McLeod

0800 WAIPA DC (924 723) | waipadc.govt.nz |  /WaipaDistrictCouncil

Submission to the Waipa District Council

Lake Ngaroto Reserve Management Plan

Moot of Submission

The removal of the belief that the Ngaroto Lake is considered wāhi tapu (sacred site)

From the 16th Century Lake Ngaroto was central to five Maori settlements on its perimeter, being an abundant fishing resource.

The lake area was approximately 40% larger than it is today giving it a centre of lake depth of approximately 5 to 6 metres.

In approximately 1780 the battle of Hingakākā took place primarily brought about by a disagreement between paramounts of Ngāti Toa (Pikauterangi) Marakopa and Ngāti Mahuta (Te Rauangaanga) Ngaroto and their allies.

Being that Ngaroto is of the lowest ground in the area and strategically a poor area to meet / defend an attacker, Ngāti Mahuta prepared and met Ngāti Toa on the southern side of the ridge of what is now Ngaroto Road. Approximately 4 to 5 Kilometres to the south of Lake Ngaroto.

This gave Ngāti Mahuta the advantage of height, and that the battlefield was above a smaller swamp lake to the south of Ngaroto Road. The area is now farmland on the flat closer to Te Awamutu.

Strategically this site proved to be successful with the defenders being able to manoeuvre many of the attackers into the swamp lake with what is understood hyperthermia taking many lives.

There is no record of any battle taking place on the edges of Lake Ngaroto Persei.

We respect Maori for;

Being culturally very sensitive to the placement of the dead.

Being very firm on differentiating between food gathering areas, food preparation and eating areas with the dead.

There is no record of Lake Ngaroto residents having to vacate the area or stop gathering food (fish – eels, freshwater cray etc) after and as a result of the battle.

It is on record, that Maori were living at the perimeter of Lake Ngaroto into the 20th century.

From their actions we can conclude that Lake Ngaroto was and until agricultural nutrients and invasive fish contaminated the lake was a premier fishing ground.

No dead have been buried in the lake.

Any dead that may have drowned in the lake would have been removed for burial.

Any drownings, if any would have occurred over what is now dry land brought about by drainage.

Conclusion

While with respect the battle of Hingakākā was a significant event in the history of the Lake Ngaroto residents and their supporters. Unfortunately, they also were probably without loss.

You cannot shift the actual battle site to establish a wāhi tapu status on an adjacent surviving lake to establish a position of control.

Fact

Lake Ngaroto was a premier food source for the Waipa area and should be recognised as.

Maori not involved in the holding of this wāhi tapu status view Ngaroto as being a lake contaminated by agricultural chemicals (fertiliser sprays) and invasive fish and should be cleaned up like any other contaminated site.

That the pathway forward to cleaning up Lake Ngaroto will be more successful with the recognition of the true battle of Hingakākā site and the removal of the wāhi tapu status on Lake Ngaroto.

Gordon Wallis

Chairman / Trustee

Waikato Thames Coromandel Youth Sailing Development Trust

[REDACTED]

[REDACTED]

Ngaati Apakura Runanga Trust
 61 Rangiaowhia Road
 Te Awamutu
admin@ngatiapakura.co.nz
ngatiapakura.co.nz



April 2025

‘Tēna Koutou katoa

Re: Feedback on the Draft Lake Ngā Roto Reserve Management Plan

*Maaku anoo e hanga i tooku nei whare
 Ko ngaa pou o roto, he mahoe, he patate, ko te taahuuhuu he hinau
 Me whakatupu ki te hua o te rengarenga
 Me whakapakari ki te hua o te kawariki*

Te Tongi aa Kingi Tawhiao

Ngaati Apakura is a tribe of the Waikato and Waipā districts with history that can trace its links to the Tainui waka making landfall at Maketu, Tāmaki Makaurau and finally Kawhia. Many Rangatira traversed Aotearoa whenua (lands) with some settling in Kawhia while other chose to explore inland to take advantage of the resources in the forests often naming landmarks on the way. Whatihua is a well known descendant of Hoturoa, captain of the Tainui waka.

Hoturoa
 I
 Hotuope
 I
 Hotumatapu
 I
 Motai
 I
 Ue
 I
 Rakamaomao
 I
 Kakati
 I
 Tawhao
 I
 Whatihua

Whatihua had children to two women – Ruapuutahanga and Apakura and from the latter union stems the tribe Ngaati Apakura. Although Apakura whakapapa is disputed between Te Arawa and Tākitimu, Kingi Tāwhiao alluded in 1876 to Apakura being from the Te Arawa district with

Ngaati Apakura Runanga Trust
 61 Rangiaowhia Road
 Te Awamutu
admin@ngatiapakura.co.nz
ngatiapakura.co.nz



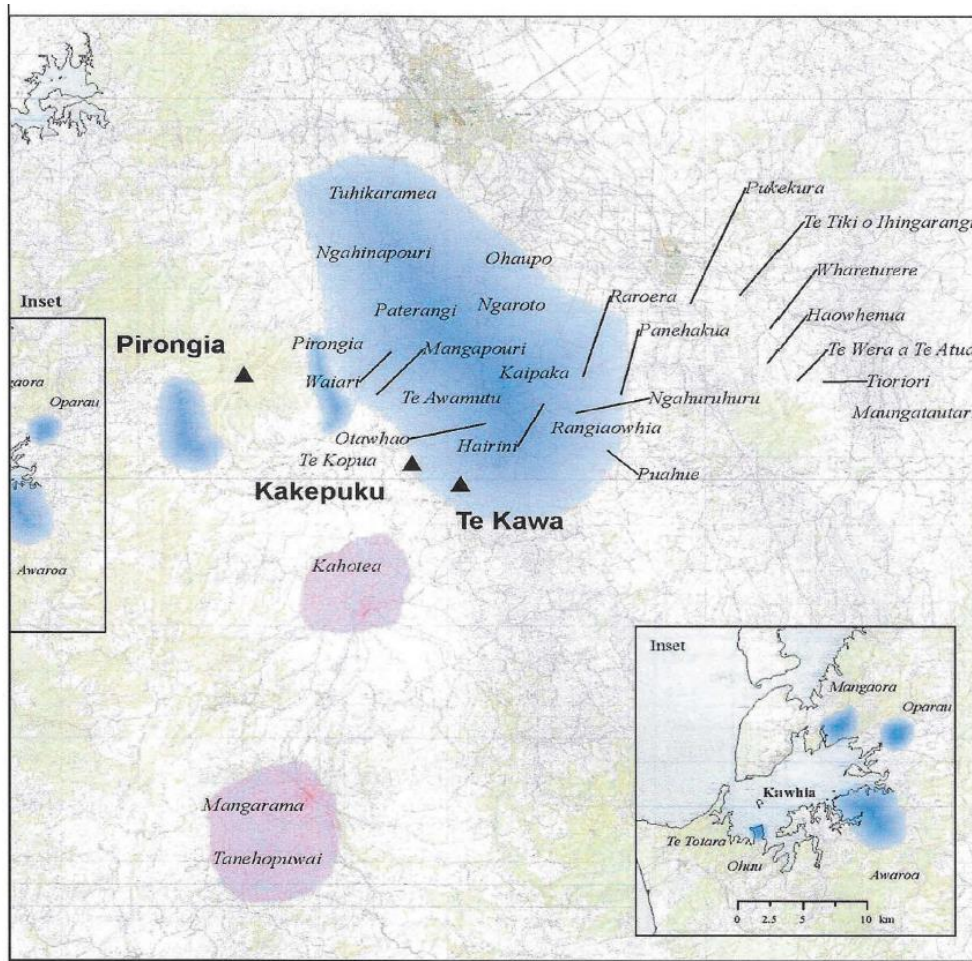
whakapapa to Ngātoroirangi. Some kaumaatua have also argued that she had a whakapapa to the Patupaiarehe (people of red hair known as fairies that lived on Pirongia mountain) (Joseph, 2013)

Ngātoroirangi
 I
 Whakairopapa
 I
 Moepua
 I
 Whanua-a-rangi
 I
 Apakura

Ngāti Apakura is a distinct iwi, consisting of at leave five hapuu though sometimes it included up to 17 including Ngāti Hikairo, Ngaati Hinetu, Ngāti Rangimahora, Ngāti Rahui, Ngāti Puhiaawe, Ngāti Tukemata, Ngāti Takekore, Ngāti Waikohika, Ngāti Pareterakau, Ngaati Te Rau, Ngāti Waitapu, Ngāti Te Mihinga, Ngāti Paretaiko, Ngāti Taheke and Ngāti Ngahia. (Joseph, 2013)

The whakapapa connections is foundational to understanding the historical context of Ngāti Apakura whenua, Pā and occupation. It also highlights an intricate relationship between the tribe and its environment. The fluidity of tribal landscapes, shaped by seasonal resource availability, underscores their deep understanding of the land and its rhythms.

The historic maps below outline the complexities of the tribal landscapes and boundaries as being fluid and complex and not fitting neatly into a square box and the various hapu of Ngāti Apakura had established mana whenua over lands which extended from Kāwhia along the coast and into the interior with established pā at Kakepuku, Pirongia, Waipā and Wairoto currently known as Ngaroto. Ngāti Apakura also had mana whenua in what is now known as the southern portions of Hamilton city, Te Awamutu, Pirongia and surrounding areas. Apakura still continue to have firm footprints through their marae at Puurekireki, Hiiona and Kahotea today.



(Joseph, 2013)

Each hapu would effectively have its own catchment area which would have been rigorously monitored, maintained and protected.

The lakes and expansive Kahikatea forests once served as abundant sources of both sustenance and medicinal resources for Māori communities. These areas functioned as natural storehouses, providing vital elements of the traditional Māori diet, including eels, Karaka berries, edible rhizomes, and a diverse array of forest and aquatic birdlife. Located near the



vast wetland systems of Rukuhia, Mangakaware, and Moanatuatua, the settlement of Wairoto was a *kainga* (village) of considerable means. It supported not only its own residents but also numerous closely and distantly related *hapu*, all of whom shared in the plentiful resources offered by the wetlands.

Certain parts of the wetlands were navigable by canoe, while others were accessible only on foot. Some swamp areas were strategically fortified, either as defensive structures or as refuges, utilizing natural barriers such as quicksand and deep mud to deter access.

Additionally, these wetlands were employed as secure storage zones where valuable tribal heirlooms—such as carvings—could be hidden from potential raiders. Although these lands spanned tens of thousands of acres, each area was distinctly recognized and delineated among *whānau*, *hapu*, and *iwi*, with clearly defined responsibilities for their sustainable management (Maki-Midwood, 2016).

Wairoto holds deep historical and cultural significance for Ngāti Apakura, serving as the backdrop for several notable events:

- It is the site of Taurangamirumiru, a well-known *pā* (fortified village) of considerable importance.
- The surrounding wetlands were an abundant resource, teeming with life. Species such as *matuku* (bittern) and other wading birds thrived here, alongside *kōura* (freshwater crayfish), *īnanga* (whitebait), *ika* (fish), and *tuna* (eels) in the lakes.
- Reitū and Reipae, two *puhi ariki* (women of high rank) and daughters of Apakura chief Tuihu, lived at Taurangamirumiru before migrating north. They eventually settled and married prominent chiefs of the Tai Tokerau region.

Ngaati Apakura Runanga Trust
 61 Rangiaowhia Road
 Te Awamutu
admin@ngatiapakura.co.nz
ngatiapakura.co.nz



- Wairoto is the site of *Te Pakanga o Hingakākā*, the largest known Māori battle, which took place in the late 1700s. Because of the pakanga we recognise this space as a deeply tapu (sacred) site because of the large amount of koiwi that is present and great care is needed.
- During this conflict, *Uenuku*—a revered *taonga* (treasure) of the Tainui people—was buried near Lake Ngāroto for safekeeping. It was later rediscovered and went on to feature in the internationally acclaimed *Te Māori* exhibition in 1984. Today, Uenuku is held in high esteem at the Te Awamutu Museum.

Apakura Rūnanga Trust is pleased to provide feedback on the Draft Lake Ngā Roto Reserve Management Plan. Apakura holds a deep historical and cultural connection to Lake Ngā Roto and carries a vital kaitiaki (guardianship) responsibility for its protection and wellbeing. As kaitiaki, our role extends beyond environmental stewardship; it involves upholding the mauri (life force) of the lake, protecting wāhi tapu, restoring taonga species such as tuna and native plants used in Rongoā Māori and weaving, and maintaining the integrity of our cultural knowledge systems (Coromandel-Wander, 2013). Lake Ngā Roto provides mana whenua with ongoing opportunities to sustain our physical and spiritual relationship with wai and whenua Māori, to fulfil our kaitiaki responsibilities, and to engage in both traditional and contemporary practices that strengthen mātauranga Māori and cultural identity.

We acknowledge and commend the Waipā District Council (the Council) for its collaborative approach in working alongside mana whenua in the development of this draft plan, and for recognising the significant cultural importance of this area to Ngāti Apakura. We are confident that Apakura Rūnanga can continue to actively support the Council's vision to enhance the wellbeing of the Waipā district and its people, by contributing meaningfully to social resilience, cultural heritage, environmental sustainability, and a thriving local economy. In our view, supporting the development



and review of the Reserve Management Plan is a tangible example of our commitment to providing grounded and enduring support to both Council and the wider community, and we look forward to working in partnership on the projects outlined in the draft plan.

Whakakitenga - Vision

We support the vision that the life-sustaining capacity of Lake Ngā Roto is brought back to life, protected, and its status as a *wāhi tapu* (sacred site) acknowledged—so that the Waikato and Waipā Rivers, indigenous species, mana whenua, and local communities can flourish. This vision lays the foundation for important conversations that extend across generations and kaupapa, including but not limited to:

- **Intergenerational Responsibility & Legacy**

Ensuring that the mauri of Lake Ngā Roto is restored and sustained for future generations, allowing them to inherit a lake that is spiritually alive, ecologically thriving, and culturally honoured.

- **Revitalisation of Mātauranga Māori**

Supporting the transmission and application of mātauranga Māori to guide restoration efforts, affirm cultural identity, and reawaken traditional practices connected to the lake.

- **Active Protection of Indigenous Species and Habitats**

Restoring ecological balance through the reintroduction and protection of native species, including taonga such as tuna, kōura, and culturally significant plant species.

- **Cultural Integrity and Sacredness**

Upholding the spiritual and cultural significance of wāhi tapu through active recognition, protection, and integration within environmental management frameworks.

- **Unified Community Stewardship**

Promoting collective responsibility and shared guardianship between mana whenua, local

Ngaati Apakura Runanga Trust
 61 Rangiaowhia Road
 Te Awamutu
admin@ngatiapakura.co.nz
ngatiapakura.co.nz



communities, and the Council—where all voices contribute to the care and wellbeing of the lake.

- **Climate and Environmental Resilience**

Recognising Lake Ngā Roto as a key contributor to regional climate resilience—through carbon sequestration, biodiversity protection, and improved water quality.

Whāinga Tuatahi : Kia whakaora anō te mauri me te mana o Lake Ngā Roto

Objective one: The health and wellbeing of Lake Ngā Roto freshwater is restored

Apakura Rūnanga Trust strongly supports the directive to work collaboratively with mana whenua, Peat Lake Accord partners, landowners within the catchment, and the wider community to realise the shared vision for Lake Ngā Roto. We believe that broad and sustained buy-in from all stakeholders is essential to meaningful progress. Given the wāhi tapu status of the lake, we fully support the recommendation to reclassify existing recreation reserve parcels as scenic reserve and to gazette and classify all other land covered by the Plan accordingly. This shift underscores that the future management of Lake Ngā Roto must prioritise the protection and restoration of its ecological and cultural values.

We also support efforts to protect and restore buffer zones around the lake and the wetland area in the southern catchment, including through land acquisition and encouraging neighbouring landowners to retire, fence, and rewild adjoining low-lying areas. Apakura had previously applied for and secured funding to purchase a property along Banks Road for the purpose of retiring farmland, though we were unable to realise this vision due to limited partnership support.

Apakura supports maintaining the outlet weir, Lake Ngarotoiti diversion channel, and sediment traps in working order unless clear evidence suggests that alternative lake level regimes would

Ngaati Apakura Runanga Trust
 61 Rangiaowhia Road
 Te Awamutu
admin@ngatiapakura.co.nz
ngatiapakura.co.nz



improve lake health. We reiterate our strong opposition to dredging, as the area is a wāhi tapu. We also support an investigation—alongside the Waikato Regional Council—into the potential transfer of management for the Ōhaupō/Ngā Roto Drainage District (4016) to Waipā District Council and/or a review of drainage rate levies to better manage expectations within the catchment.

We strongly support the protection and restoration of the raupō margins around the lake, particularly in the Main Arrival Zone, to prevent erosion and create important habitat for nesting and feeding. We also endorse promoting best practice farm management across the catchment, including limiting drainage within 200 metres of the lake, fencing of waterways, constructed wetlands, and extensive native revegetation to minimise contaminants, nutrients, and sediment entering the lake.

We encourage greater collaboration between Peat Lake Accord partners, industry stakeholders (such as Fonterra and DairyNZ), and the Waikato River Authority to provide technical, financial, and advisory support to landowners. These partnerships are crucial to advancing sustainable land use and maintaining interventions like swales, wetlands, and sediment traps.

Apakura supports significant controls on land use and drainage across the catchment to prevent peat subsidence and loss, and to improve water quality. We would also welcome opportunities to collaborate with mana whenua, WRC, and research entities to better understand the ideal lake depth and restoration strategies to build long-term resilience.

We support WRC's leadership in implementing in-lake interventions such as pest fish and plant eradication, sediment management, and native macrophyte re-establishment. Continued monitoring and research are critical for identifying and guiding effective management responses. We also support public health measures such as timely health warnings and awareness campaigns.

Ngaati Apakura Runanga Trust
 61 Rangiaowhia Road
 Te Awamutu
admin@ngatiapakura.co.nz
ngatiapakura.co.nz



We urge the Council and stakeholders to enhance community awareness of the lake's condition and restoration needs through onsite and digital education, open days, volunteering initiatives, and regular public reporting.

Apakura supports a proactive approach to biosecurity and disease management and enabling movement of indigenous freshwater species through regular weir maintenance and development of fish passage solutions. We also support the prohibition of commercial harvesting of indigenous fauna, including tuna (eel).

Finally, we reaffirm our strong support for reclassifying Lake Ngā Roto as a Scenic Reserve rather than a Recreation Reserve. This better reflects its tapu (sacred) history and ecological importance. Under the Reserves Act 1977, scenic reserves exist to preserve and protect areas of natural beauty and intrinsic value for future generations, while still allowing for public access, visitor infrastructure, and compatible recreational and educational activities. Lake Ngā Roto is a landscape of regional and local significance, and its value will only increase as conservation efforts continue to restore its mana, health, and mauri.

Whāinga Tuarua : Kia whakaora anō te mauri me te mana o Lake Ngā Roto

Objective Two : Lake Ngā Roto has a thriving terrestrial ecosystem that enhances Waipā's indigenous biodiversity

The Trust strongly supports the implementation of the Lake Ngā Roto Restoration Plan 2021–2031, particularly the planting plan outlined in Appendix 8. We advocate for a focus on:

- Protecting restoration planting through a comprehensive releasing programme, herbaceous weed control, and supplementary planting.

Ngaati Apakura Runanga Trust
 61 Rangiaowhia Road
 Te Awamutu
admin@ngatiapakura.co.nz
ngatiapakura.co.nz



- Eradicating high-priority weeds that pose a threat to ecosystem integrity, especially those currently at low density and able to be eradicated efficiently.
- Continuing the willow control programme.
- Confirming the goals, methods, monitoring, and reporting requirements of the animal pest control programme, and committing to its full implementation.

Cultural Planting and Restoration

We **strongly support** working with mana whenua to:

- Establish pā harakeke areas.
- Restore culturally significant species such as kukuraho and rākau rongoā for harvest and intergenerational use.
- Retire and revegetate key areas, including:
 - The recently acquired southern block (Lot 6 DP 526717), with kahikatea forest.
 - The currently farmed eastern boundary area (Allot 462 Ngaroto PSH).
 - Swamp forest and swamp margin zones, which are vital for both biodiversity and cultural identity.

Viewshaft Protection

We support the retention and protection of key viewshafts from the lake circuit track to preserve visual connections with the lake and its surrounding features. These include:

- The southern boardwalk.



- The centre of the eastern margin—**especially the protected viewshaft to Taurangamirumiru Pā**, which holds deep cultural significance.
- The northern lake end.
- The Main Arrival Zone (as shown in Figure 8, Section 4 of the Draft Plan).

Pest and Exotic Species Management

We support the progressive removal of exotic trees, particularly shelterbelts, **where they are confirmed to not provide habitat for bats**, and their replacement with native species. We also encourage:

- A proactive, strategic pest eradication programme within and around the reserve to reduce predation pressure on native wildlife.
- Council leadership in establishing clear pest control objectives, with sustainable resourcing to expand current volunteer-led trapping and monitoring efforts. The main pest threats—feral cats, hedgehogs, rats, mice, possums, and mustelids—must be addressed urgently.

Public Access, Education, and Volunteer Support

We **strongly support** encouraging visitors to remain on the lake circuit track to protect native flora and fauna, including sensitive species like banded rail and marsh crake. We also advocate for:

- The exploration of species reintroductions in collaboration with mana whenua and partner organisations—such as mokomoko (geckos and skinks)—where ecologically appropriate.

Ngaati Apakura Runanga Trust
 61 Rangiaowhia Road
 Te Awamutu
admin@ngatiapakura.co.nz
ngatiapakura.co.nz



- Actively growing a strong, coordinated volunteer base to support planting, pest control, and ecological monitoring.
- Developing avenues for individuals and organisations to contribute funding to restoration initiatives.

Community Engagement and Dog Control

Promoting greater public awareness of the lake's ecological and cultural values is essential.

We support the use of:

- Interpretive signage, displays, guided walks, field days, and online information to engage visitors.
- Education programmes and enforcement to increase compliance with the Dog Control Bylaw, particularly ensuring dogs remain on-lead to minimise their impact on vulnerable native species.

These policies and actions are critical for restoring and enhancing the terrestrial ecosystem of Wairoto and improving indigenous biodiversity in Waipā. While it is important that Council protects and maintains previous investments in planting and weed control, it is equally critical that it accelerates the retirement, fencing, and revegetation of all Council-owned land in the area. This work will require external funding and a thriving volunteer programme. Apakura Rūnanga Trust looks forward to working in partnership to achieve this vision.

Ngaati Apakura Runanga Trust
 61 Rangiaowhia Road
 Te Awamutu
admin@ngatiapakura.co.nz
ngatiapakura.co.nz



Whāinga Tuatoru: Ka tū ngā mana whenua Objective Three: Mana whenua's connections with Lake Ngā Roto are recognised and provided for and mātauranga Māori and tikanga are integrated into the governance and management of Lake Ngā Roto

Apakura Rūnanga Trust **strongly supports** the Draft Wairato Reserve Management Plan and specifically endorses the implementation of the *Lake Ngā Roto Restoration Plan 2021–2031*.

Key priorities include:

Restoration and Biodiversity

- Implementing Appendix 8's planting plan with a focus on:
 - Protecting planting through weed control, releasing, and supplementary planting.
 - Eradicating high-risk and low-density weeds.
 - Continuing willow and animal pest control programmes with clear goals, monitoring, and reporting.
- Retiring and revegetating key areas, including:
 - Southern block (Lot 6 DP526717) and eastern farmed boundary (Allot 462).
 - Swamp forest and margin zones, using native species (e.g., kahikatea).
- Restoring culturally significant species: pā harakeke, kukuraho, and rākau rongoā.
- Maintaining viewshafts (e.g., to Taurangamirumiru Pā) from the lake circuit track.
- Removing exotic trees (where no bat habitat exists) and replacing them with natives.
- Supporting volunteer-led and community-driven ecological restoration.

Cultural Recognition and Kaitiakitanga

Ngaati Apakura Runanga Trust
 61 Rangiaowhia Road
 Te Awamutu
admin@ngatiapakura.co.nz
ngatiapakura.co.nz



Restoring the Name Wairoto

Apakura Rūnanga Trust **strongly supports** the restoration of the traditional name **Wairoto** for the lake and all lands covered under this plan. This is not a symbolic gesture, but a necessary act of cultural restoration and accuracy. Our **kaumātua have clearly and consistently expressed strong support** for returning to the name **Wairoto**, which is the original ingoa tuku iho (ancestral name) of this significant taonga.

The term **Ngā Roto**, while widely used today, simply means “the lakes” and refers to the many lakes that once existed across the area. It is **generic and does not reflect the distinct identity, mana, or cultural significance** of this particular lake. In contrast, **Wairoto is specific, historic, and deeply rooted in the whakapapa and identity of mana whenua.**

Restoring the name Wairoto:

- **Reaffirms the historical and spiritual connection** of mana whenua to the lake.
- Enables mana whenua to **exercise their kaitiakitanga and cultural responsibilities** more meaningfully.
- **Restores the mana** of the site and acknowledges its wāhi tapu status, especially in relation to events such as **Te Pakanga o Hingakākā.**
- Ensures the lake is no longer misrepresented or lost among other water bodies under the generic “Ngā Roto” label.
- Aligns with national and local efforts to **honour Te Tiriti o Waitangi and uphold te reo Māori** as a living language.

We urge Waipā District Council to initiate the required **Reserves Act process to formally change the name** and to work in partnership with mana whenua throughout the renaming, interpretation, and public education process. This action would be a meaningful step toward genuine bicultural partnership and environmental restoration.

Ngaati Apakura Runanga Trust
 61 Rangiaowhia Road
 Te Awamutu
admin@ngatiapakura.co.nz
ngatiapakura.co.nz



Education, Enforcement and Engagement

- Promote public education through signage, guided walks, events, and online content.
- Encourage visitors to stay on track and comply with dog control rules to protect flora and fauna.
- Explore funding avenues and expand the volunteer base.
- Support external pest control in surrounding halo areas.
- Ensure any development respects the historic and cultural context, in collaboration with mana whenua and Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga.

Final Summary – Apakura Rūnanga Trust Submission

Apakura Rūnanga Trust wishes to acknowledge and commend Waipā District Council for the significant effort in preparing the Draft Lake Ngā Roto Reserve Management Plan. We are broadly supportive of the kaupapa and direction of the Plan, and wish to reiterate the following key points:

Areas of Strong Support:

- **Restoration of the Lake's Original Name – Wairoto:** Our kaumātua strongly support restoring the traditional name *Wairoto*, as this reflects our historical, cultural, and ancestral relationship with the lake. The current name "Ngā Roto" is generic and refers to a number of lakes. Restoring the specific name *Wairoto* is essential to reasserting the mana of the whenua and re-establishing the unique identity of this taonga. *We strongly urge Council to proceed with the formal name change as a priority.*

Ngaati Apakura Runanga Trust
 61 Rangiaowhia Road
 Te Awamutu
admin@ngatiapakura.co.nz
ngatiapakura.co.nz



- **Integration of Mātauranga Māori and Partnership with Mana Whenua:** We support the Plan's commitment to embedding mātauranga Māori and tikanga into governance and management, and creating living partnerships with mana whenua through co-governance, cultural planting initiatives, employment in restoration, and recognition of wāhi tapu and wāhi tūpuna.
- **Ecological Restoration and Revitalisation:** We support the extensive restoration actions proposed to heal the mauri of Wairoto, including replanting kahikatea forest, establishing swamp forest ecosystems, and halting peat subsidence. We endorse the integrated efforts with WRC, Peat Lakes Accord and mana whenua, and look forward to contributing to the ecological transformation of the area.
- **Mahinga Kai and Native Species Recovery:** The Trust supports restoration that enables the return of culturally significant species such as tuna and kawau, and ensures safe and meaningful access to mahinga kai sites for our people.

Areas of Concern or Opposition:

- **Commercial and Recreational Activities That May Compromise Cultural or Environmental Values:** We *oppose* any future proposals that may promote or enable commercialisation or increased recreational access to the detriment of cultural, ecological or spiritual values.
- **Lack of Specificity Around Co-Governance:** While the Plan includes strong language on partnership and involvement, there is still a need for clearer pathways toward genuine co-governance arrangements, with mana whenua represented as decision-makers, not only advisors or stakeholders.

Ngaati Apakura Runanga Trust
61 Rangiaowhia Road
Te Awamutu
admin@ngatiapakura.co.nz
ngatiapakura.co.nz



We remain committed to being active kaitiaki of Wairoto, and to working with Council and the wider community to restore the mana and mauri of this treasured lake. Mā te mahi tahi, ka taea e tātou te whakahoki mai i te oranga o Wairoto mō ngā uri whakatipu.

Nā mātou noa, nā

Apakura Rūnanga Trust

Ngaati Apakura Runanga Trust
61 Rangiaowhia Road
Te Awamutu
admin@ngatiapakura.co.nz
ngatiapakura.co.nz



References

- Coromandel-Wander, H. (2013). *Koorero tuku iho: Waahine maaori voices from the embers of Rangiaowhia*. Palmerston north: Massey University.
- Joseph, R. (2013). *Apakura mana motuhake report for Ngāti Apakura claimants and the waitangi tribunal for te rohe pōtae inquiry (Wai 898)*. Wellington.
- Maki-Midwoord, H. (2016). *A brief history of Kaipaka*. Te Awamutu: Waipa District Council.

Lake Ngā Roto Recreation Reserve Management Plan review



Feedback closes: 5pm, Friday 18 April

Your details

Full name: Te Awamutu and Kihikihi Community Board

Organisation: (if applicable) _____

Address: C/: Waipa District Council, 101 Bank Street, Te Awamutu

Email: [REDACTED]

Phone: [REDACTED]

For office use only:

Submission No. _____

Privacy statement: Feedback (including names and contact details) may be provided in full to elected members. Feedback (including names but not contact details) may be made available to the public at our office and on our website. Your personal information may also be used for the administration of the process, including informing you of the outcome of the feedback. All information collected will be held by Waipā District Council, 101 Bank Street, Te Awamutu with submitters having the right to access and correct personal information. View the full privacy statement at waipadc.govt.nz/privacy-statement.

☒ I acknowledge that I have read the privacy statement and am happy to proceed.

Te whakakitenga | Vision

Do you agree with the Vision?

The life-sustaining capacity of Lake Ngā Roto is brought back to life and protected and the wāhi tapu (sacred site) status acknowledged so that the Waikato and Waipā Rivers, indigenous species, mana whenua and communities can flourish.

☒ Yes

☐ Partially

☐ No

If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why:

The Community Board wishes to acknowledge and in doing so show their utmost respect to the cultural significance of this historical piece of land/whenua and lake/roto. That it is a sacred site/ waahi tapu and as such is a very special place to local whaanau, hapu, and iwi.

We certainly support taking care of this precious resource so that it can sustain life (fish etc) as it has done for hundreds of years.

On behalf of our local Te Awamutu, Kihikihi and district, we know this is a much loved space and it is important for the benefit of all that it is kept as clean as possible so that we can all enjoy using it, walking around it, camping etc

Ngā whāinga me ngā kaupapa here | Objectives and policies**Do you support Objective One and the draft policies to achieve this objective?***View on pages 36 - 38*☒ Yes☐ Partially☐ No***If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why:***Supports Objective One and the draft policies to achieve this objectiveHowever we stress local stakeholders views need to be considered and taken into account as they often hold a wealth of knowledgeThe plan needs to be reasonable and realistically financial (ie affordable) so that it can be achievable and not constantly delayed and be subject to ever increasing costs**Do you support Objective Two and the draft policies to achieve this objective?***View on pages 39 - 40*☒ Yes☐ Partially☐ No***If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why:***Supports Objective Two and the draft policies to achieve this objectiveThe plan needs to be reasonable and realistically financial (ie affordable) so that it can be achievable and not constantly delayed and be subject to ever increasing costs**Do you support Objective Three and the draft policies to achieve this objective?***View on pages 41 - 42*☒ Yes☐ Partially☐ No***If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why:***Supports Objective Three and the draft policies to achieve this objective

Do you support Objective Four and the draft policies to achieve this objective?

View on pages 43 - 46

☒ Yes

☐ Partially

☐ No

If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why:

[Supports Objective Four and the draft policies to achieve this objective](#)

Management focus and expected outcomes

Do you agree with the proposed priorities that have been identified for the next ten years and the proposed outcomes that we want to achieve in thirty years?

View on pages 50 - 53

☒ Yes

☐ Partially

☐ No

If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why:

[Agree with the proposed priorities that have been identified for the next ten years and the proposed outcomes that we want to achieve in thirty years](#)

[This needs to include the issue of costs for implementation and how this will be funded](#)

[We need to see win-win outcomes when possible. Wai roto/ Ngāa roto belongs to the communities of our district, not to consultants wishing to stamp their mark on our space](#)

Other feedback and comments

Please provide feedback on any other aspects of the plan that you'd like us to consider

1. Work done with our Financial Constraints - we cant have the costs escalating over and above the cost of living. We need to find good affordable solutions.

2. Work done need to be maintained and not let go to ruin, ie eg planted trees get regularly weeded

3. It is important that progress needs to be closely monitored, measured and expected outcomes are met within realistic time frames.

4. We need to involve the stakeholders in meaningful ways, this may include volunteer groups doing work, whaanau/hapu and iwi providing guidance, history and stories etc
That we take notice of and work with the landowners as there is a wealth of knowledge and lived experience on tap

Hearings

Do you want to speak to your submission at the hearings?

Council will be holding a hearings on the Draft Lake Ngā Roto Reserve Management Plan (date to be confirmed).

☐ Yes ☒ No

Would you like to stay updated with the progress of the project?

☒ Yes ☐ No

Submissions can be:



Online:

waipadc.govt.nz/ngarotoreview



Emailed to:

haveyoursay@waipadc.govt.nz

Subject: Ngā Roto Recreation RMP review



Posted to:

Waipā District Council Private Bag
2402
Te Awamutu 3840
Attn: Aidan Kirkby-McLeod



Delivering it to Council offices:

Waipā District Council 101 Bank Street
Te Awamutu
Attn: Aidan Kirkby-McLeod

OR Waipā District Council 23 Wilson Street Cambridge
Attn: Aidan Kirkby-McLeod

0800 WAIPA DC (924 723) | waipadc.govt.nz | /WaipaDistrictCouncil

External Sender: Lake Ngā Roto Recreation RMP review



Scott Collett [REDACTED]

To [Have Your Say](#)

[REDACTED]

Keep access for dogs onlead!

Tha councils tendency to stop responsible dog owners from accessing walks should change.

Dogs on leads do not pose any danger to wildlife or other users.

Sent from my iPhone

Dear Waipa District Council,

I hope this message finds you well. I am writing on behalf of the Waikato Rowing Club to provide feedback on the draft Reserve Management Plan for Lake Ngāroto. As an active and long-standing user of the lake, particularly through our involvement in the annual Masters Regatta and the training activities of our affiliated schools, we wish to express our strong support for the ongoing use of the lake for rowing purposes, while acknowledging the importance of the lake's environmental and cultural values.

Our club, along with our affiliated schools, regularly trains and trials on Lake Ngāroto. This waterway plays a crucial role in fostering the development of young athletes and contributes significantly to the local community's engagement in sport. The Masters Regatta, a major annual event hosted on the lake, draws participants from a wide region, and this event is an important part of the local rowing calendar. It brings together individuals of all ages, promoting physical fitness, community spirit, and a sense of achievement. We believe that continued access to this lake for rowing is essential not only for the benefit of our club members but for the wider rowing community.

We fully understand and respect the cultural significance of Lake Ngāroto and we appreciate the efforts to balance the lake's ecological health and indigenous connections with recreational activities. As rowing clubs, we are committed to working alongside the Council and local iwi to ensure that any waterborne activities are carried out responsibly, with respect for the lake's values, and in ways that contribute to its environmental restoration.

Regarding the four objectives outlined in the draft report—restoring the health of the lake, creating a thriving indigenous ecosystem, recognising mana whenua's connections, and enhancing recreational opportunities for a range of users—we believe that rowing can coexist with these goals. We are open to collaborating on initiatives that enhance water quality and environmental stewardship, and we are committed to being active participants in these efforts.

We kindly ask the Council to consider the importance of Lake Ngāroto for the rowing community in the context of the Reserve Management Plan. We also encourage the Council to continue supporting and promoting recreational opportunities on the lake that are in harmony with its ecological and cultural values.

Thank you for the opportunity to provide feedback. We look forward to the continued positive relationship between the rowing community and the Waipa District Council. Should you require any further information or clarification, please do not hesitate to contact us.

Kind regards,
Nick Barton
Schick Civil Waikato Rowing Club



Schick Civil Waikato Rowing Club, New Zealand
Web: www.waikatorowingclub.kiwi



Kia ora Waipa District Council,

Clifton Rowing Club would like to express their support for the Te Awamutu Rowing Club regatta held on Lake Nga Roto.

The annual event enables our Masters rowers, in ages ranging from 27 to 75, to compete and socialise in a unique and valued environment. The preparation keeps rowers active in our club and the gains in fitness and well being have wide ranging health benefits. Our club plant and equipment get regular use and maintenance at a time of year when the main club training and competition is on hold and Masters rowers are able to combine training with the winter Learn to Row program for new rowers.

Clifton has always been very happy with the running of the Te Awamutu regatta and have never had issues with the water quality of the lake when it has been deemed unsafe for swimming.

The hospitality shown by the hosts can only be described as outstanding. There is never enough that they can do for you and we always feel like a welcome family whenever we return or see club members at other regattas.

Clifton looks forward to a long association with Te Awamutu Rowing Club and their regatta on Lake Nga Roto.

nga mihi

Gus Berghan. [REDACTED]
President/Coach/Masters Rower
Clifton Rowing Club Inc.
Est.1888
<https://www.cliftonrowing.org.nz/>

[REDACTED]

Friday 18th May

Lake Ngā Roto Recreation Reserve Management Plan review



Feedback closes: 5pm, Friday 18 April

Your details

Full name: Elizabeth Eden.

Organisation: (if applicable) Te Poho Roto Payers + Brongia Ward Committee

Address: [REDACTED]

Email: [REDACTED]

Phone: [REDACTED]

For office use only:

Submission No.

Privacy statement: Feedback (including names and contact details) may be provided in full to elected members. Feedback (including names but not contact details) may be made available to the public at our office and on our website. Your personal information may also be used for the administration of the process, including informing you of the outcome of the feedback. All information collected will be held by Waipā District Council, 101 Bank Street, Te Awamutu with submitters having the right to access and correct personal information. View the full privacy statement at waipadc.govt.nz/privacy-statement.

☒ I acknowledge that I have read the privacy statement and am happy to proceed.

Te whakakitenga | Vision

Do you agree with the Vision?

The life-sustaining capacity of Lake Ngā Roto is brought back to life and protected and the wāhi tapu (sacred site) status acknowledged so that the Waikato and Waipā Rivers, indigenous species, mana whenua and communities can flourish.

☒ Yes

☐ Partially

☐ No

If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why:

There is no mention of recreational use however which concerns us.

Ngā whāinga me ngā kaupapa here | Objectives and policies

Do you support Objective One and the draft policies to achieve this objective?

View on pages 36 - 38

☐ Yes

☒ Partially

☐ No

If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why:

pg 188 1'2 + pg 190.

We do not agree with the reclassification from Recreation Reserve to Scenic reserve. This is an intrinsic change of prioritisation from the people to the place.

We do not agree to a change of classification and want the lake to stay as a recreational reserve.

Do you support Objective Two and the draft policies to achieve this objective?

View on pages 39 - 40

☐ Yes

☒ Partially

☐ No

If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why:

We would like to see more Viewshafts the plan includes 5 all on the South + South East, there should be at least one on the North side and one on the West as well.

Do you support Objective Three and the draft policies to achieve this objective?

View on pages 41 - 42

☒ Yes

☐ Partially

☐ No

If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why:

Do you support Objective Four and the draft policies to achieve this objective?

View on pages 43 - 46

☐ Yes

☒ Partially

☐ No

If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why:

This contradicts the plan to change the classification from recreational to scenic reserve.
Pg 196 (4.12b) - Putting the DnOS on leaselines to negotiate with Mana Whenua is unreasonable and effectively gives the power of Veto to an unelected body able to supersede the public interest + amenity, (4.12d) again enables a veto power.
pg 197 - (4.18) + (4.2) legal substances ~~and drones~~ should not be prohibited rather discouraged + drones should have a permit system not banned.

Management focus and expected outcomes

Do you agree with the proposed priorities that have been identified for the next ten years and the proposed outcomes that we want to achieve in thirty years?

View on pages 50 - 53

☐ Yes

☒ Partially

☐ No

If you answered 'partially' or 'no', please let us know why:

Table 2 - There should be more view shafts. (pg 201) to accommodate the pleasure of the current 50,000 visitors annually in addition PA should be accessible to all visitors. Unity should be encouraged to bring understanding and appreciation to those outside of Mana Whenua.

Other feedback and comments

Please provide feedback on any other aspects of the plan that you'd like us to consider

The Overall plan for Lake Ngā Roto is well thought out and once delivered will be a jewel to the surrounds and the public Amenity of the area.

We need to be mindful of not excluding any part of the public whose taxes pay for the maintenance. Part of the vision should be to include and unite people and encourage recreational activity and healthy living.

Hearings

Do you want to speak to your submission at the hearings?

Council will be holding a hearings on the Draft Lake Ngā Roto Reserve Management Plan (date to be confirmed).

☒ Yes ☐ No

Would you like to stay updated with the progress of the project?

☒ Yes ☐ No

Submissions can be:



Online:

waipadc.govt.nz/ngarotoreview



Emailed to:

haveyoursay@waipadc.govt.nz

Subject: Ngā Roto Recreation RMP review



Posted to:

Waipā District Council Private Bag
2402

Te Awamutu 3840

Attn: Aidan Kirkby-McLeod



Delivering it to Council offices:

Waipā District Council 101 **OR** Waipā District Council 23 Wilson
Bank Street Street Cambridge

Te Awamutu

Attn: Aidan Kirkby-McLeod

Attn: Aidan Kirkby-McLeod

0800 WAIPA DC (924 723) | waipadc.govt.nz | /WaipaDistrictCouncil



External Sender: Re: Draft Lake Ngā Roto Reserve Management Plan open for consultation

From Dr Ursula Edgington [REDACTED]
 Date Tue 18/02/2025 11:47 AM
 To [REDACTED]
 Cc [REDACTED]

You don't often get email from [REDACTED] [Learn why this is important](#)

CYBER SECURITY WARNING: This email is from an external source - be careful of attachments and links. Please follow the Cybersecurity Policy and report suspicious emails to Servicedesk
 You seem to have paid thousands of our dollars to publish a repetitive 76 page report that basically just seems to repeat the same old tired rhetoric.

And after asking for submissions, and receiving 45 of them, you need more submissions? Clearly these submissions did not contain the 'correct' content?

Do you realise we are in a global economic recession with unknown levels of debt?
 Do you realise that vanity projects, including unnecessarily changing the name of this lake, just reinforce how totally out of touch Council is with its citizens?
 Stop wasting time on this busy-work gravy train. It must end.

When are Council going to wake up to the facts? Stop interfering with the lake, stop covering it with glyphosate and diquat and other toxic chemicals. Stop allowing the farming community to drain their toxins into the lake from surrounding fields, including leachate from waste tyres.

It is common sense. You cannot continue to spend our money on projects that are simply not needed, or wanted and have no rationale in science.

A council's job is to be a utility provider - that means collecting rubbish and basic services only - especially in times of austerity and societal problems. NOT this!

Dr Ursula Edgington
 Educationalist, Adult Tutor, Writer
 Website: <https://ursulaedgington.com>
 Personal blog: Substack "informed heart"
 [REDACTED]

Sent with [Proton Mail](#) secure email.

On Tuesday, February 18th, 2025 at 10:23 AM, Victoria Wightman
 [REDACTED] wrote:

Thank you for submitting your feedback last year on the Lake Ngā Roto Reserve Management Plan review.

The current Lake Ngā Roto Recreation Reserve Management Plan was approved in 2009. Over the last 15 years, there have been a number of changes to the lake and surrounding reserve, which mean the plan needs to be reviewed and updated.

These include changes to the environmental conditions, catchment management and visitor numbers, as well as legislative changes. We also have a greater appreciation of mana whenua values and aspirations and improved knowledge and experience about the value of peat lakes and actions required to protect and restore them.

We received 45 individual responses, along with input from recreational sports clubs. Waipā District Council staff and councillors worked closely with mana whenua representatives and met with Peat Lake Accord partners, lessees and lake users, adjoining landowners, Waikato Regional Council and Sport Waikato to explore the issues, challenges and opportunities for the new plan.

Key themes from the feedback included the significance to mana whenua, lake health, biodiversity and open space, public amenities and recreation, cycling connectivity, the effects of lake management on adjoining private land, and fiscal responsibility. This feedback has informed our development of the draft plan, which will set the direction of the reserve for the next ten years and the vision for the next 30 years, and consultation is now open for two months.

We'd like to hear your further feedback and invite you to make another submission.

To view the plan, visit waipadc.govt.nz/ngarotoreview or drop in to our council offices or libraries. You can also come to our drop-in session at Lake Ngā Roto on Saturday 1 March, from 9am – 1pm.

Consultation closes 5pm, Friday 18 April. Once consultation closes submitters will have the opportunity to present their submissions at a hearing.

Thank you

Victoria Wightman Communication Advisor **WAIPĀ DISTRICT COUNCIL**



=====
This electronic message and any attached files may contain confidential information, and may be subject to legal professional privilege. If this message is not intended for you, do not use, read, distribute or copy it. Please contact the sender immediately and delete the original message and any attachments. Before opening or using attachments, check them for viruses and effects. Waipā District Council makes reasonable efforts to ensure that its electronic messages have been scanned and are free of viruses, however takes no responsibility for affected messages or attachments.
=====

COMMITTEE REPORT



To: The Chairperson and Members of the Strategic Planning and Policy Committee

From: Director Museums & Heritage

Subject: **Public Art – Art Loan and Mural**

Meeting Date: 4 June 2025

1 PURPOSE - TAKE

The purpose of this report is to provide information and seek approval from the Strategic Planning and Policy Committee (the Committee) regarding a proposal for an indefinite public art loan of the sculpture "Wag" to be located on Council-owned land, and for a mural to be painted on the west facing side of Gaslight Theatre Cambridge.

2 EXECUTIVE SUMMARY – WHAKARĀPOPOTOTANGA MATUA

Council has received a proposal from the Te Awa River Ride Charitable Trust (The Trust) to relocate the "Wag" sculpture onto Council-owned land and develop a mural on the side of the Gaslight Theatre, which is not owned by Council but on Council owned land.

Any new public art in the Waipā District is required to be assessed in accordance with Waipā District Council's Arts Policy (the Policy) (Appendix 1) and Art Collection Management Plan (the Plan) (Appendix 2).

Staff sought and gained endorsement for the proposal from the Cambridge Community Board at their May 2025 meeting. As the Policy stipulates all public art is to be approved through the Committee, this report considers the two proposed pieces of public art to be displayed in Cambridge on and near the Gaslight Theatre and is seeking approval for this proposal.

3 RECOMMENDATION – TŪTOHU Ā-KAIMAHI

That the Strategic Planning and Policy Committee

a) Receive the report of Anne Blyth, titled Public Art – Art Loan and Mural;

- b) *Approve the public art loan of the sculpture “Wag” to go in the dog off-leash area adjacent to Gaslight Theatre; and*
- c) *Approve the proposed mural art work to go on the side of the Gaslight Theatre (as included in Appendix 4 of this report).*

4 BACKGROUND – KŌRERO WHAIMĀRAMA

Waipā District Council’s Art Policy and Art Collection Management Plan

The Policy and Plan were approved in March 2018 with a purpose to provide a framework for decision-making around public art, its acquisition and management.

The Policy also aims to ensure residents and visitors experience thought-provoking, culturally vibrant, enjoyable, challenging, and inspiring art and public spaces that are distinctive and unique.

Provision is made in the Plan for the loan of art works to Council (Appendix 2 page 8). Loan proposals are assessed in the same manner as acquisition proposals.

The Proposal

“Wag” a sculpture by artist James Wright, made of corten steel depicting a dog catching a frisbee, was installed on private land situated along the Te Awa Cycleway, Cambridge in 2024. The Trust have since identified an alternative artwork that better suits the site “Wag” currently occupies. They propose “Wag” is relocated to the off-leash dog area near the Gaslight Theatre, which is on Council-owned land.

“Wag” sculpture is proposed to be on loan to Council ‘indefinitely’, with maintenance costs to be covered by the Trust.

The Trust are currently in the process of expanding their art collection along Te Awa Cycleway. The Trust has identified an opportunity to add a mural to the side of the Gaslight Theatre, to support the Trust’s aspiration to become one of the great New Zealand bike rides. Well renowned artist Jeremy Shirley has been involved in the design process and will be engaged to complete the artwork upon approval.

All costs for the mural are to be covered by the Trust, including all maintenance requirements. The life of the mural is anticipated to be 10 years.

Discussions have occurred with Gaslight Theatre and they are supportive of this mural being completed on the side of their building.

Assessment of proposal against Policy

Staff have assessed both “Wag” and the proposed art mural, very highly – scoring near the maximum value possible in the assessment (Appendix 3 and 4). Therefore, staff are recommending approval of both art features.

5 SIGNIFICANCE & ENGAGEMENT – KAUPAPA WHAI MANA ME NGĀ MATAPAKINGA

Staff have considered the key considerations under the Significance and Engagement Policy, in particular sections 7 and 8 and have assessed that the matter(s) in this report has a low level of significance.

6 OPTIONS – NGĀ KŌWHIRINGA

Option	Advantages	Disadvantages
Option 1: Do nothing	No further staff resources required to facilitate the mural.	- An opportunity to create a sense of place and provide the community with an engaging piece of public art will be lost - Council is not seen to support community funded projects for the betterment of the district - Potential to damage Council's relationship with the Trust.
Option 2: Adopt the recommendation to loan the "Wag" sculpture and to approve the proposed mural.	- A sense of place is created and the provision of an engaging piece of public art is achieved - Council supports community funded project to install more public art.	There are no perceived disadvantages.

The recommendation is Option 2. The reason for this is a sense of place is created, and the provision of an engaging piece of public art, is achieved. Council supports a community funded project to install more public art within the district.

7 OTHER CONSIDERATIONS – HEI WHAIWHAKAARO

Council's Vision and Strategic Priorities

This project supports Council vision, Waipā Home of Champions – building connected communities and the external strategic priority of creating vibrant communities by creating a sense of place and a piece of public art for the community to engage with.

Legal and Policy Considerations – Whaiwhakaaro ā-Ture

Staff confirm that option 2 complies with Council's legal and policy requirements.

Financial Considerations – Whaiwhakaaro ā-Pūtea

- All costs for design, implementation/construction and relocation of the sculpture and mural will be funded by the Trust
- Ongoing maintenance costs for the sculpture are likely to be minimal due to the highly durable construction materials and will be covered by the Trust in accordance with the terms and conditions of the loan agreement as set out in section 5.2 of the Plan and the Loan Agreement Application (Appendix 3).

Risks - Tūraru

There are no known significant risks associated with the decisions required for this matter.

Iwi and Mana Whenua Considerations - Whaiwhakaaro ki ngā Iwi me ngā Mana Whenua

Following discussion with a representative from Ngāti Koroki Kahukura, it is not considered the proposed “Wag” sculpture impacts on the interests, values and aspirations of Iwi and Mana whenua in the district. It will also not impact on the relationship of Iwi and Mana whenua to their ancestral land, water, sites, waahi tapu, valued flora and fauna, and other taonga.

No discussion was required with Mana whenua regarding the mural as this is on a building not owned by Council (the Committee is still required to approve the mural as it is on Council owned land).

Climate Change – Hurihanga Āhuarangi

The proposal to install the public art sculpture “Wag”, and to create a mural on the side of the Gaslight Theatre will not influence climate change other than minor installation, and maintenance related emissions.

8 NEXT ACTIONS

Action	Responsibility	By When
Advise the Trust of the outcome of the Committee meetings outcome so they can take the appropriate actions.	Anne Blyth	6 June 2025

9 APPENDICES – ĀPITITANGA

No:	Appendix Title
1.	Waipā District Council Arts Policy (document number 6856685)
2.	Art Collection Management Plan (document number 6515884)
3.	Public Art Loan Agreement and Criteria Assessment “Wag” (document number 11426560)
4.	Acquisition Proposal and Criteria Assessment “Mural” (document number 11437774)



Anne Blyth

MUSEUMS & HERITAGE DIRECTOR



Reviewed by Brad Ward

MANAGER COMMUNITY SERVICES



Approved by Sally Sheedy

GROUP MANAGER CUSTOMER & COMMUNITY SERVICES

APPENDIX 1

Waipā District Council Arts Policy (document number 6856685)

ARTS POLICY

MAY 2018



He mihi

Tuatahi, me wehi ki te Atua, te tīmatanga o ngā mea katoa.
Tuarua, me whakahōnoretia tō tātou Ariki Kīngi Tūheitia me
te whare kāhui ariki whānui tonu;
Pai mārire ki a rātou.
Kia hoki ngā mahara ki ngā tini aituā; haere, haere atu rā!
Huri noa ki a tātou o te ao mārama,
Ki ngā tāngata o te rohe o Waipā, ko tēnei te mihi ki a koutou katoa.
Ko te pukapuka kaupapa here tēnei mō ngā kohinganga mahi toi o Waipā.
Nō reira, e ngā kaitiaki o ā tātou taonga me ā tātou mahi toi hoki, tēnā koutou katoa.
Āpiti hono, tātai hono; rātou kua wehi ki te pō.
Āpiti hono, tātai hono; tātou e tū ana i te ao mārama.

First, we honour the Creator, the originator of all things.
Second, we honour our King Tūhetia and his royal household;
Peace upon them all.
At this time we remember the many who have now passed on
and bid them farewell.
Let us return to the realm of light,
To the people of Waipā, here is our greeting to you.
This book of policy is for the collective artworks of Waipā.
Therefore, to the caretakers of our treasures and our artworks
we acknowledge you.
The lines are joined; those who are in spirit have departed to the night.
The lines are joined; we the living stand in the world of light.

Table of Contents

1.	Introduction.....	4
2.	Policy purpose	4
3.	Policy Scope	5
4.	Definitions.....	6
5.	Our guiding principles.....	7
6.	Policies	7
7.	Procedures.....	9
8.	Legal and ethical guidelines.....	10
9.	Schedule 1.....	11
	Appendix 1 - Acquisition Criteria	12

Arts Policy

1. Introduction

- 1.1 The Arts Policy ("the Policy") has been prepared by Council to provide a framework for decision-making around public art and its acquisition. Art management, such as care and disposal of art, is covered in the Waipa District Council Art Collection Management Plan.

2. Policy purpose

- 2.1 The purpose of Waipa District Council's Arts Policy is to ensure that residents and visitors experience thought-provoking, culturally vibrant, enjoyable, challenging and inspiring art and public spaces that are distinctive and unique.
- 2.2 Waipa's public art needs to celebrate the district's residents' creativity, reflect and express our heritage, history, stunning natural landscape and character of Waipa, generate pride and belonging, transform our public places and attract additional publicity.
- 2.3 Council's public art activities should give expression to the place-making aspirations of our communities and groups. The activities include:
- (a) Integrating art into place making.
 - (b) Considering the integration of art in infrastructure delivery.
 - (c) Encouraging the development of all community arts.
 - (d) Planning for, acquiring, maintaining, and renewing public works of art.
 - (e) Preserving the integrity and security of public art.
 - (f) Re-siting and removing or disposing of works of art.
 - (g) Developing partnership projects (including gifted works and development of joint projects).
 - (h) Strengthening arts relationships with support organisations, government and individuals who wish to deliver public art or community art activities within the district.
 - (i) Considerations of cultural integrity and significance, relevance and connection to its location.
- 2.4 This policy provides alignment and transparency in Council activities to facilitate or provide community and public art. It also helps Council to bring clarity and cohesion to public art and public space delivery, and to care for and maintain the public art collection.

2.5 Council's role is to facilitate the public art activity through:

- (a) The 10-year plan, District Plan, Town Concept Plans, Activity Management Plans and public space designs.
- (b) Planning, promoting, integrating, acquiring, installing, maintaining and managing public art.
- (c) Supporting public art and public space design activities.
- (d) Providing venues for staging temporary public art activities.
- (e) Providing advice and support to build capability in the arts sector.
- (f) Supporting community arts groups through the sharing of public facilities and/or buildings when the opportunity arises.

2.6 The Arts Policy reflects Council's long-term commitment to developing and supporting public art activities. This policy therefore articulates:

- (a) Why and how Council is involved in community and public art.
- (b) What we want to achieve by supporting and investing in community and public art.
- (c) The principles that guide our actions.
- (d) The various roles we play.
- (e) The context within which decision-making for public art takes place.

3. Policy Scope

3.1 The scope of this policy includes:

- (a) Art works on council-owned land, or in council buildings. This is for both art owned or produced by Council or by members of the public.

3.2 Excluded from the scope of this policy:

- (a) Art works on land not owned or cared for by Council.
- (b) Te Awamutu Museum Trust Board Collection, and heritage items (such as historic memorials, military artefacts, heritage plaques and historic monuments).
- (c) Other heritage or art work collections owned by a trust or private individual.
- (d) Sister city gifts and other corporate memorabilia.
- (e) Private architectural features, either incorporated as part of a larger project (a building or a landscape), or standalone elements (e.g. tiles created by a designer).
- (f) Privately owned works of art on private property that simply happen to be visible or accessible to the public (unless they have been developed through, or directly benefited from any council-controlled public art incentive schemes).

- (g) Publicly owned works of art on Crown land (e.g. New Zealand Transport Agency initiatives on its own land), unless developed in partnership with Council, or covered by a standard loan agreement or memorandum of understanding with Council.
- (h) The support of individual artists.

4. Definitions

4.1 For the purposes of this policy the definitions in the table below shall apply.

Term	Definition
Bequeath	When a person leaves art work to Waipa District Council in their will.
Community art	All those activities based in a community setting which involve groups of people doing creative things together while emphasising community involvement and collaboration.
Council	Waipa District Council
Council's public art collection	All visual art assets owned by Council.
Deaccession	The formal process to permanently remove an object from the public art collection.
Gift / koha	An art work that is given to Waipa District Council willingly and without expectation of payment at any time.
Kaitiakitanga	Guardianship. Ensuring the appropriate care, conservation and preservation.
Mana whenua	Customary authority exercised by an iwi or hapu in an identified area.
Mātauranga Māori	Literally translated Mātauranga Māori means Māori Knowledge. Mātauranga Māori is a collective, dynamic and evolving pool of knowledge drawn from the accounts of ngā atua o te pō (Māori gods) and the lived and ethereal experiences of tūpuna (Māori ancestors).
Mauri	The vital essence within all things that connects the spiritual to the physical.
Performing art	Types of art (such as music, dance, or drama) that are performed for an audience.
Public art	Any mural, carving, mosaic, painting, sculpture, photograph or other art medium that is owned by or on loan to Council, and is accessible to the general public.
Public space	A place that is under the control of Council and that is open to, or being used by, the public; whether or not there is a charge for admission.
Suitably qualified staff	Waipa District Council staff who have qualifications in art and/or collection management.

Temporary public art	Works of art intended as temporary, which may include performances, time-based sculptural installations, temporary installations of permanent works of art, light art, sound art, video projections, poster art, broadcast art and other media arts, flash mobbing and/or movable works of art.
Tikanga	Ensuring the appropriate process is applied to all artworks.

5. Our guiding principles

- 5.1 *Community art should emphasise community involvement* and collaboration and should involve some empowerment of the community members who come together to create and provide artwork/s with artists.
- 5.2 *Public art should delight, welcome, challenge and inspire.* It has a part in creating places that people recognise as their own and which reflect back to them their history, character, stories, sense of place and culture. However, art should not discriminate.
- 5.3 *Both community art and public art should generate emotions* - surprise, laughter, pride, awe or reflection. They have a role in challenging people's ideas, feelings and values. They may confront what we know, think and feel; they may create mystery or intrigue; they may engage and provoke thought and inspire debate.
- 5.4 *Community and public art should be memorable.* Whether familiar and reassuring or unexpected and challenging, it should enhance one's experience; or contribute to Waipa's attractiveness; or become a destination or place of enjoyment, and should contribute to uniqueness of the district.
- 5.5 *Artists will have access to a public space to display or perform their works.* Council will support artists as far as practicable and appropriate by providing or directing them to a public space to display or perform their works.
- 5.6 Recognise and respect the mauri held within the work and the role it plays as part of the enduring story of our district.
- 5.7 Ensuring kaitiakitanga (guardianship) is applied within the correct tikanga (process).

6. Policies

6.1 Acquiring art policies

- (a) From time to time Council may acquire gifted or bequeathed works of art, or purchase works of art. This process will be managed and recommendations made by a suitably qualified member of Council staff. Council will work carefully to ensure all offers of art gifts are considered in a fair, transparent and consistent manner (including assessment of the long term maintenance costs) in line with criteria in Appendix 2 of the Art Collection Management Plan.

- (b) Our public art commissioning process and the acceptance of art donations is governed by the Acquisition Criteria, contained in Appendix 1 of this policy and Appendix 2 of the Art Collection Management Plan.
- (c) Council does not generally acquire public works of art that are not site-specific (i.e. fixed in place), except in certain circumstances where the work of art:
 - Makes a significant contribution to Council's public art collection or a public event.
 - Is able to be installed and subsequently cared for and maintained within available resources for the duration of its intended lifespan.

6.2 Deaccessioning art policies

- (a) When the retention of public art is reviewed, the retention evaluation criteria upon which a final decision is made must include consideration of whether the decision to re-site or remove it has been:
 - Supported by the artist, or their heirs or legal representatives, and by the work of art donor, lender or any other parties directly involved in the original commission.
 - Supported by directly affected Mana Whenua.

6.3 Supporting art policies

- (a) Council staff will support, if possible, and within existing budgets, community arts groups to establish arts installations on existing Council infrastructure or facilities if the proposed art meets this Policy. For further details, refer to section 7.3(b) of this policy.
- (b) Council funds art projects either through the Creative Communities Scheme or on an as-needs basis, with Council's decision based on recommendations made by suitably qualified staff members. Staff members will use the Acquisition Criteria which is in Appendix 2 of the Art Collection Management Plan.
- (c) Council will partner with Mana Whenua when appropriate to use public art to enhance the visibility and celebration of local stories and histories, including valuing mātauranga Māori. Council will, in particular, consult with Mana Whenua at the earliest stages of planning relevant new projects to identify and work together on areas of shared interest.
- (d) Council will endeavour to support community arts groups within the constraints of existing budgets. This may include (as and when available/appropriate):
 - Assistance to access central government funding schemes such as the Creative Communities Scheme (funding allocations from Creative NZ) and others.
 - Involvement in the design of public space, infrastructure or facilities.
 - Public space in Council buildings for artists to show / perform their work.

6.4 Managing Art Policies

- (a) Council will ensure that all works of public art are cared for and maintained in accordance with the artistic and cultural protocols appropriate to their origin, intended purpose and location. This will be managed by nominated Council staff who are suitably qualified to do so. For further information on Council's art management refer to the Waipa District Council Art Collection Management Plan.
- (b) Suitably qualified Council staff will carry out operational maintenance on public art works on an annual basis.

7. Procedures

7.1 Acquiring art procedures

- (a) For a public art proposal to be considered, an Acquisition Proposal Form needs to be completed (see appendix 1 of the Waipa District Council Art Collection Management Plan). The proposed art will be assessed against the Acquisition Criteria set out in Appendix 1 of this policy and Appendix 2 of the Management Plan by a suitably qualified Council staff member. The art must meet a minimum scoring threshold to be considered further for acquisition.
- (b) The business case design briefs and project briefs for all Council public place development projects and major infrastructure projects will include consideration of integrating permanent public art.
- (c) Council's place-making teams engage collaboratively with third parties at the earliest stages in order to assess the strategic potential for integrating permanent public art. These include the following types of development projects:
 - Capital works place-making projects such as town concept plans, open space/reserve developments, new local facility projects (including, but not limited to, community centres, libraries, recreational facilities, swimming pools, service centres, museums, theatres and stadiums).
 - Town and village centres and major street upgrades or development projects.
 - Infrastructure projects funded by Council (including, but not limited to, pedestrian and transport bridges, cycleways and walkways).
 - Architectural projects where public space objectives or public art outcomes can be achieved through collaborations.
 - Park and landscaping developments where public space objectives or public art outcomes can be achieved through collaborations between artists, landscape architects and community funders.
 - Greenfield and brownfield developments funded by Council or where Council is a development partner.
 - Utility structures (e.g. working with telecommunications and energy distributors).

7.2 Deaccessioning art procedures

- (a) Evaluation criteria for deaccessioning of art can be found in section 4.2 of the Waipa District Council Art Collection Management Plan.
- (b) Information on the deaccessioning process can be found in section 4.3 of the Waipa District Council Art Collection Management Plan.

7.3 Supporting art procedures

- (a) The Creative Communities Scheme grants will be administered through two funding rounds each year, closing on the last working days of April and September. Creative Community Grants will be allocated by an assessment committee made up of members of the Community Arts Councils (Te Awamutu and Cambridge) and members of the public from local community arts and cultural groups.
- (b) As available / appropriate, publicly accessible parts of Council buildings will be available for artists to showcase their work. The Museum Exhibitions Coordinator is the point of contact. Duration of exhibitions is to be agreed between Council and the artist depending on availability and exhibition costs. All costs associated with an exhibition are the responsibility of the artist. Council staff can assist by providing advice and guidance for resources associated with the exhibition. All exhibition proposals will be considered on a case-by-case basis.

7.4 Managing art procedures

- (a) Permanent public works of art planned by others (external to Council) and located on Council-owned land requires prior approval from Council. Best practice will be followed; this process will be managed by the nominated, appropriately qualified and experienced Council team. Further information on the management of art can be found in the Waipa District Council Art Collection Management Plan.
- (b) Procedural resources available to Council staff will be shared by listing them in Schedule 1 of this Policy.

8. Legal and ethical guidelines

8.1 Legal guidelines

- (a) Any art acquired by Council must have clear legal title, documented by the appropriate records. The rights acquired with the art must be clearly spelled out in any records documenting the transaction. Council should not acquire any art that have been acquired in, or exported from, its country of origin in violation of that country's laws.

8.2 Ethical guidelines

- (a) Council should only acquire art that can be catalogued, maintained, stored or displayed, as appropriate, in a proper manner. In any case where a conflict of interest develops between the needs of an individual Councillor or staff member, those of the Council would prevail. Special care must be taken in considering any art offered for sale or donation to the Council by Councillors, staff, or their families. Councillors and staff cannot compete with the Council for art, nor can they take advantage of privileged information in acquiring art.

9. Schedule 1

9.1 List of procedural resources:

- (a) Art Collection Register (*document number 16096849*)
- (b) Waipa District Council Art Collection Management Plan (*document number 16111533*)
 - Acquisitions procedure
 - Deaccessioning procedure
 - Loans
 - Art cataloguing
 - Collection care
 - Access, security and insurance
 - Conflicts of interest

Appendix 1 - Acquisition Criteria

The following table outlines the criteria against which art acquisition proposals will be assessed. Deaccessioning of art is done on a case by case basis. This is to ensure art work is considered objectively. Art will be scored according to how well it meets each criteria point – either low (doesn't meet criteria), medium (somewhat meets criteria) or high (meets criteria).

A proposal seeking Council support must gain a score of 26 or above to be considered for acquisition.

Criteria	Low (1 point each)	Medium (2 points each)	High (3 points each)	Score & Justification
Public art must respond to local character, including consideration of place, people and stories	Doesn't respond to local character	Somewhat responds to local character	Responds strongly to local character	
Where possible, public art is to be used to mark sites of significance and to honour our treasured memories	Doesn't mark a site of significance or link to local history	Marks a site of significance and / or has links to local history	Marks a site of significance and links strongly to local history	
Public art is to be placed where it will make the most difference to a public place, as it has a key place-making role	Lacks place-making role	Will somewhat play a place-making role	Will play a strong place-making role	
Public art ties in with capital works projects	Doesn't tie in with a capital works project	Ties in somewhat with capital works project	Ties in strongly with capital works project	
High-quality materials must be used in permanent works of art to ensure their robustness and durability	Art is made of materials unsuited to desired durability	Art is partly made of materials suited to desired durability	Art is made of materials highly suited to desired durability	
Art makes a significant contribution to Council's public art collection or a public event	Art does not make a significant contribution to Council's public art collection or public event	Art makes a contribution to Council's art collection and / or public event	Art does make a significant contribution to Council's public art collection or public event	

Criteria	Low (1 point each)	Medium (2 points each)	High (3 points each)	Score & Justification
Art is able to be installed and subsequently cared for and maintained within available resources for the duration of its intended lifespan	No	Possibly	Yes	
Cost – acquisition	Outside budget	Marginal	Within budget	
Cost – maintenance (per year)	Outside budget	Marginal	Within budget	
Art is a duplicate of an existing piece in Council's collection	Yes	Possibly	No	
Art aligns with guiding principles outlined in Arts Policy (5.1 – 5.6)	Does not align with any of the guiding principles	Aligns with one or two of the guiding principles	Aligns with three or four of the guiding principles	
Art is relevant to Waipa	Art is not relevant to Waipa	Art is somewhat relevant to Waipa	Art is relevant to Waipa	
Art could be construed as offensive	Yes	Somewhat	No	
			TOTAL	

APPENDIX 2

Art Collection Management Plan (document number 6515884)

ART COLLECTION MANAGEMENT PLAN

MARCH 2018

Table of Contents

1. Purpose and scope	5
2. Definitions	5
3. Acquisitions	6
4. Deaccessioning	7
5. Loans	8
6. Art cataloguing	10
7. Collection care	10
8. Access, security and insurance	11
9. Conflicts of interest	11
10. Exhibitions / performances in Council buildings	11
11. Appendices	12
12. Application and review	12

Issue	Reason for Issue	Author	Reviewer	Date
1				
2				

Waipa District Council Art Collection Management Plan

1. Purpose and scope

- 1.1. The aim of the Waipa District Council Art Collection Management Plan is to clearly outline processes and conditions for:
- (a) art acquisition; and
 - (b) art deaccession; and
 - (c) art loaned to Council by external parties; and
 - (d) care of art; and
 - (e) access, security and insurance; and
 - (f) conflicts of interest; and
 - (g) scheduling and management of art exhibitions when using Council premises.
- 1.2. This Art Collection Management Plan includes all art owned or loaned to Council; or art that is privately produced or owned; that is on public display on or within Council-owned land or buildings in the Waipa district with the permission of the artist.
- 1.3. Excluded from the scope of this Plan are artworks on private property and art piece(s) on public land that have not been loaned to or are not owned by Council.
- 1.4. This Plan should be read in conjunction with the Waipa District Council Arts Policy (14159495), Art Collection Register (16096849), Condition Assessment Register (17025685) and Care Requirements Register (17025686).

2. Definitions

- 2.1. For the purposes of this Plan the following definitions shall apply:

Term	Definition
Bequeath	When a person leaves art work to Waipa District Council in their will
Community art	All those activities based in a community setting which involve groups of people doing creative things together while emphasising community involvement and collaboration
Council	Waipa District Council

Council's public art collection	All visual art assets owned by Council
Deaccession	The formal process to permanently remove an object from the public art collection
Gift / koha	An art work that is given to Waipa District Council willingly and without expectation of payment at any time
Kaitiakitanga	Guardianship. Ensuring the appropriate care, conservation and preservation.
Mana whenua	Mana whenua means customary authority exercised by an iwi or hapu in an identified area
Mātauranga Māori	Literally translated Mātauranga Māori means Māori Knowledge. Mātauranga Māori is a collective, dynamic and evolving pool of knowledge drawn from the accounts of ngā atua o te pō (Māori gods) and the lived and ethereal experiences of tūpuna (Māori ancestors).
Mauri	The vital essence within all things that connects the spiritual to the physical.
Performing art	Means types of art (such as music, dance, or drama) that are performed for an audience.
Public art	Means any mural, carving, mosaic, painting, sculpture, photograph or other art medium that is owned by or on loan to Council, and is accessible to the general public.
Public space	A place that is under the control of Council and that is open to, or being used by, the public; whether or not there is a charge for admission
Suitably qualified staff	Waipa District Council staff who have qualifications in art and/or collection management.
Temporary public art	Is defined as works of art intended as temporary, which may include performances, time-based sculptural installations, temporary installations of permanent works of art, light art, sound art, video projections, poster art, broadcast art and other media arts, flash mobbing and/or movable works of art
Tikanga	Ensuring the appropriate process is applied to all artworks

3. Acquisitions

- 3.1. For art to be purchased by or gifted to Council, it must first go through an acquisition process, which will ensure that the art is suitable for public display. First, an

Acquisition Proposal Form (see appendix 1) must be completed and returned to Waipa District Council. The proposal will be tested against acquisition criteria (set out in appendix 2) and suitably qualified staff will make an initial recommendation which will be considered by the Strategic Planning and Policy Committee. Council will send out written notification of the Committee's decision to the applicant within 10 working days.

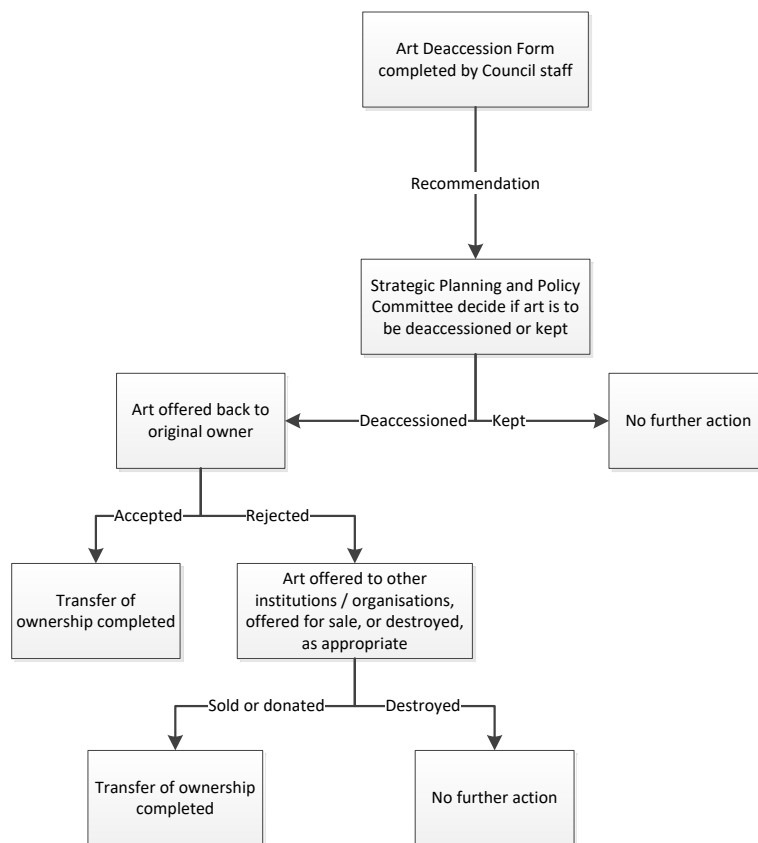
4. Deaccessioning

4.1. As outlined in section 7 of the Arts Policy, art retention is reviewed periodically. When art no longer meets evaluation criteria set out in 4.2 of this Plan, the deaccessioning process will commence.

4.2. Evaluation criteria:

- (a) Cost of maintenance and repair
- (b) Duplication
- (c) Irreparable damage or defacing by natural or human causes
- (d) No longer meets the guiding principles of the Arts Policy
- (e) Relevance

4.3. The deaccession process:



- Initially, a suitably qualified Council staff member will complete an Art Deaccession Form (appendix 4) for each public art piece that is being considered for deaccession.
- The Council staff member will make a recommendation whether the art should be deaccessioned or kept. The recommendation will be justified using the evaluation criteria as well as general observations.
- The recommendation from staff will be considered and decided upon by the Strategic Planning and Policy Committee.
- In the first instance, the art piece will be offered to the original owner or their family. If they refuse the offer, Council will offer the art to other institutions or organisations, offer the art for sale or destroy the art if appropriate. Note that art being deaccessioned from Council's public art collection cannot be bought, gifted to or in any way acquired by a Council staff member or elected member.

5. Loans

- 5.1. The Loan Agreement Form can be found in appendix 3. This form is to be used when an external party wishes to loan art to Waipa District Council.

5.2. Terms and conditions of incoming loan agreement:

(a) Ownership

The art listed in the agreement is lent to Waipa District Council for the purpose and period specified in the Loan Agreement Form. Ownership and copyright is retained by the lender.

(b) Protection of borrowed items

Waipa District Council cannot guarantee against loss, damage or deterioration of art in an outdoor public space. The use of certain materials, the surrounding area, securing the art piece to immovable objects e.g. concrete slabs, appropriate lighting and physical barriers where appropriate can reduce the likelihood of loss, damage or deterioration of a public art piece.

Waipa District Council can take steps to reduce the likelihood of loss, damage or deterioration of art in an indoor public space. Such steps can include, but are not limited to, the use of UV filtered glass, placement of art, ensuring building security after hours and securing art to walls.

(c) Liability

Waipa District Council cares for borrowed items to the same high standard as it cares for its collections. However it is unable to accept financial liability in the event of damage or loss. The lender may arrange insurance coverage where appropriate for the period of the loan.

(d) Damage to borrowed items

In the event of loss or damage, Waipa District Council will notify the lender in writing as soon as practicable. A Damage Report will be completed and provided to the lender within 10 working days of the event of loss or damage.

(e) Conservation

Waipa District Council may not clean, treat or change art in any manner without first notifying and gaining written consent of the lender.

(f) Period of the loan

Waipa District Council will receive and return the borrowed art within the dates specified under 'Period of Loan' in the Loan Agreement Form. Any change or extension of the loan period must be approved in writing by the lender.

(g) Credit / Acknowledgements

Waipa District Council will acknowledge the loaned art in the manner specified under 'Credit' in the Loan Agreement Form.

(h) Copyright and reproduction

Photographing the art for the purpose of Council documentation and visitor interest is permitted. Permission for other reproduction and publication must be obtained in writing from the lender.

(i) Return of borrowed art pieces

Following deinstallation of art, borrowed art will be returned to the lender before the end of the loan period. Art will be packed by suitably qualified staff from Waipa District Council or contractors with the approval of the lender to ensure safe return to the lender, and any original packaging or object supports will also be returned.

6. Art cataloguing

- 6.1. Council will ensure that all public works of art are catalogued. Catalogues will include descriptive information such as the artist, what the work represents, location, ownership status and condition. The catalogues will be reviewed regularly and will also serve to inform maintenance records.

7. Collection care

- 7.1. Waipa District Council cannot guarantee against loss, damage or deterioration of art in an outdoor public space. The use of certain materials, the surrounding area, securing the art piece to immovable objects e.g. concrete slabs, appropriate lighting and physical barriers where appropriate can reduce the likelihood of loss, damage or deterioration of a public art piece. Waipa District Council will take all reasonable steps to reduce the likelihood of loss, damage or deterioration of art in an indoor public space. Such steps can include, but are not limited to, the use of UV filtered glass, placement of art, ensuring building security after hours and securing art to walls.
- 7.2. All art will have appropriate documentation completed when coming or going from the collection and records will be maintained and updated. Regular maintenance of the collection will be completed to ensure adequate care of all art. An ongoing inventory of the entire collection will ensure appropriate location, storage and care of art.
- 7.3. To maintain control of the collection, Waipa District Council will maintain a robust system of documentation. Copies of accession registers, condition reports, loan documents and acquisition paperwork will be kept in secure locations. There are digital copies of all condition reports, loan documents and acquisition paperwork.

Vernon Collection Management System is routinely backed up on the Waipa District Councils server. Collection information is consistently updated on Vernon.

- 7.4. Suitably qualified Council staff will carry out operational maintenance on public art works on an annual basis.

8. Access, security and insurance

- 8.1. Waipa District Council cannot restrict access to art in outdoor public spaces, but it will take all reasonable steps to ensure that art in outdoor public spaces is secure.
- 8.2. Waipa District Council can only restrict access to art in public buildings during closing hours. Council will take all reasonable steps to ensure that art in indoor public spaces is secure.
- 8.3. Art works will be considered on a case by case basis for inclusion as a listed item in Council's material damage insurance policy.

9. Conflicts of interest

- 9.1. In any case where a conflict of interest develops, the needs of the Council will prevail.
 - Waipa District Council staff and Council members involved in collecting art within the same areas as the Council will not use their Council affiliation to advance their personal art collecting practices.
 - Waipa District Council staff or Council members must not purchase, trade or receive into their personal ownership any deaccessioned art.
- 9.2. Waipa District Council staff and Council members will not compete with Council in the acquisition of art.

10. Exhibitions / performances in Council buildings

- 10.1. In the first instance, artists should contact the Museum Exhibitions Coordinator to discuss their exhibition / performance aspirations. Once the facility for the exhibition / performance has been determined, the manager of the facility will proceed as per their internal processes.
- 10.2. Council will not be held liable for any damage to or loss of artworks.

11. Appendices

11.1. Appendix 1. Acquisition Proposal Form

11.2. Appendix 2. Acquisition Criteria

11.3. Appendix 3. Loan Agreement Form

11.4. Appendix 4. Art Deaccession Form

12. Application and review

12.1. The plan will be reviewed as required, to meet the needs of the organisation and best practice.

12.2. The policy will take effect from the date it is signed by both the policy owner and Chief Executive; however a one (1) year period from that point will be allowed for implementation and full compliance to be achieved.

Signed:..... Date:.....

Anne Blyth

MANAGER – MUSEUMS & HERITAGE DIRECTOR (PLAN OWNER)

Signed:..... Date:.....

Garry Dyet

CHIEF EXECUTIVE

Appendix 1. Acquisition Proposal Form

DETAILS OF SELLER / GIFTER	
Name	
Address	
E-mail	
Phone	

DETAILS OF ART			
Value	\$		
Name / Title			
Material(s) used			
Art type (e.g. sculpture)			
Life expectancy			
Connection to location, culture and history			
Alignment with Arts Policy guiding principles			
Artist CV attached	Yes ☐	Photograph of art attached	Yes ☐
	No ☐		No ☐
Preferred placement (e.g. name of park or building)			

STAFF ASSESSMENT			
Maintenance requirements			
Score from acquisition criteria			
Recommendation	Accept ☐	Justification	
	Decline ☐		
Name		Date	
Signed			

STRATEGIC PLANNING AND POLICY COMMITTEE DECISION			
Decision	Accept ☐	Justification	
	Decline ☐		
Name		Date	
Signed			



Appendix 2. Acquisition Criteria

The following table outlines the criteria against which art acquisition proposals will be assessed. This is to ensure art work is considered objectively. Art will be scored according to how well it meets each criteria point – either low (doesn't meet criteria), medium (somewhat meets criteria) or high (meets criteria).

A proposal seeking Council support must gain a score of 26 or above to be considered for acquisition.

Criteria	Low (1 point each)	Medium (2 points each)	High (3 points each)	Score & Justification
Public art must respond to local character, including consideration of place, people and stories	Doesn't respond to local character	Somewhat responds to local character	Responds strongly to local character	
Where possible, public art is to be used to mark sites of significance and to honour our treasured memories	Doesn't mark a site of significance or link to local history	Marks a site of significance and / or has links to local history	Marks a site of significance and links strongly to local history	
Public art is to be placed where it will make the most difference to a public place, as it has a key place-making role	Lacks place-making role	Will somewhat play a place-making role	Will play a strong place-making role	
Public art ties in with capital works projects	Doesn't tie in with a capital works project	Ties in somewhat with capital works project	Ties in strongly with capital works project	
High-quality materials must be used in permanent works of art to ensure their robustness and durability	Art is made of materials unsuited to desired durability	Art is partly made of materials suited to desired durability	Art is made of materials highly suited to desired durability	

16111533

Criteria	Low (1 point each)	Medium (2 points each)	High (3 points each)	Score & Justification
Art makes a significant contribution to Council's public art collection or a public event	Art does not make a significant contribution to Council's public art collection or public event	Art makes a contribution to Council's art collection and / or public event	Art does make a significant contribution to Council's public art collection or public event	
Art is able to be installed and subsequently cared for and maintained within available resources for the duration of its intended lifespan	No	Possibly	Yes	
Cost – acquisition	Outside budget	Marginal	Within budget	
Cost – maintenance (per year)	Outside budget	Marginal	Within budget	
Art is a duplicate of an existing piece in Council's collection	Yes	Possibly	No	
Art aligns with guiding principles outlined in Arts Policy (5.1 – 5.7)	Does not align with any of the guiding principles	Aligns with some of the guiding principles	Aligns with all or the majority of the guiding principles	
Art is relevant to Waipa	Art is not relevant to Waipa	Art is somewhat relevant to Waipa	Art is relevant to Waipa	
Art could be construed as offensive	Yes	Somewhat	No	
			TOTAL	



Appendix 3. Loan agreement form

DETAILS OF LENDER	
Name	
Address	
E-mail	
Phone	

DETAILS OF BORROWER	
Name	
E-mail	
Phone	

DETAILS OF LOAN		
The art listed in the following schedule are borrowed in accordance with the terms and conditions set out in 5.2, and for the following purpose:		
Period of loan		from the date of this agreement
Schedule of art		
The art will be acknowledged in the following manner		

APPROVAL			
I have read and agreed to the terms and conditions set out in this document and certify that I have full authority to enter into this loan agreement.			
Name (lender)		Date	
Signed			
Name (borrower)		Date	
Signed			

16111533

Appendix 4. Art Deaccession Form

DEACCESSION OF ART			
Art for consideration			
Reason(s) for deaccession Select all that apply	Cost of maintenance and repair		☐
	Duplication		☐
	Irreparable damage or defacing by natural or human causes		☐
	No longer meets the guiding principles of the Arts Policy		☐
	Relevance		☐
Recommended method of disposal	Note: art may not be disposed of to anyone employed by, or in a governance position at Waipa District Council.		
Legal ownership			
Interested parties			
Recommendation	Deaccession	☐	Justification
	Maintain	☐	
Name		Date	
Signed			

STRATEGIC PLANNING AND POLICY COMMITTEE DECISION			
Decision	Deaccession	☐	Justification
	Maintain	☐	
Name		Date	
Signed			

APPENDIX 3

Public Art Loan Agreement and Criteria Assessment “Wag” (document number 11426560)



Loan agreement form

DETAILS OF LENDER	
Name	Te Awa River Ride Charitable Trust
Address	Perry House, 8 Peake Rd, Cambridge 3283
E-mail	info@te-awa.org.nz
Phone	021333623

DETAILS OF BORROWER	
Name	Waipa District Council
E-mail	Gina.Scott@waipadc.govt.nz
Phone	0272587747

DETAILS OF LOAN		
The art listed in the following schedule are borrowed in accordance with the terms and conditions set out in 5.2, and for the following purpose:		
A transfer of art from the current site along the Te Awa River Ride, to the off-leash dog area at Gaslight Theatre		
Period of loan	Indefinitely	from the date of this agreement
Schedule of art	"Wag" by James Wright. Corten Steel Dog catching frisbee	
The art will be acknowledged in the following manner	Signage on site Included in Te Awa Art Trail (on Te Awa website/brochures) Included in Cambridge Public Art Trail (TBC – in discussions with Carey Church)	

APPROVAL			
I have read and agreed to the terms and conditions set out in this document and certify that I have full authority to enter into this loan agreement.			
Name (lender)	Sarah Ulmer	Date	27 February 2025
Signed			
Name (borrower)		Date	
Signed			

ART DETAILS



"Wag" by James Wright



Sculpture Plaque

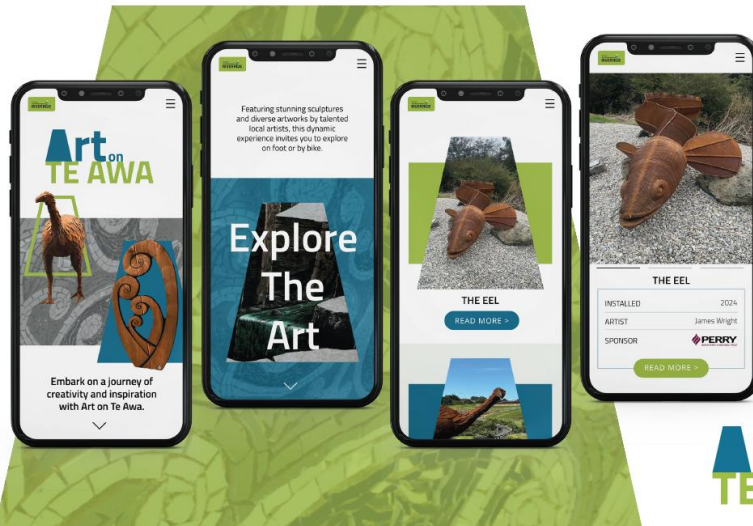


Art on Te Awa Webpage

Virtual Art Adventure

The Art on Te Awa webpage allows visitors and the community to explore the art from anywhere.

Featuring your logo alongside your sponsored artwork provides your brand with increased visibility, showcasing your support for local artists and the community.



Art on
TE AWA

Art on Te Awa Brochure

Art on
TE AWA

Exploring the Art



Printed marketing collateral will promote Art on Te Awa and provide a resource to the community & visitors.



Acquisition Criteria

The following table outlines the criteria against which art acquisition proposals will be assessed. This is to ensure artwork is considered objectively. Art will be scored according to how well it meets each criteria point – either low (doesn't meet criteria), medium (somewhat meets criteria) or high (meets criteria).

A proposal seeking Council support must gain a score of **26** or above to be considered for acquisition.

Assessment Panel: Anne Blyth – Director Museums and Heritage, Sarah Dawe – Te Awamutu Museum Collections Manager, Gina Scott – Community Advisor, Aidan Kirkby-McLeod – Reserves Planning Team Leader, Henriata Nicholas – Te Awamutu Museum Exhibitions Coordinator

Artwork: 'Wag" Sculpture **Date:** 1 April 2025

Criteria	Low (1 point each)	Medium (2 points each)	High (3 points each)	Score & Justification
Public art must respond to local character, including consideration of place, people and stories	Doesn't respond to local character	Somewhat responds to local character	Responds strongly to local character	2 – responds to the character of the off-leash dog area and peoples love of dogs.
Where possible, public art is to be used to mark sites of significance and to honour our treasured memories	Doesn't mark a site of significance or link to local history	Marks a site of significance and / or has links to local history	Marks a site of significance and links strongly to local history	1 – doesn't mark a site of significance or have a strong link to local history.
Public art is to be placed where it will make the most difference to a public place, as it has a key place-making role	Lacks place-making role	Will somewhat play a place-making role	Will play a strong place-making role	3 – provides a welcoming entrance to the off-leash dog area, offers people the opportunity to

Criteria	Low (1 point each)	Medium (2 points each)	High (3 points each)	Score & Justification
				interact, take photo's etc.
Public art ties in with capital works projects	Doesn't tie in with a capital works project	Ties in somewhat with capital works project	Ties in strongly with capital works project	2 - Ties in with the significant infrastructure asset that is the cycle trail, supports the trail to qualify as a Great Ride. Cycle trail is intended to be extended in the future.
High-quality materials must be used in permanent works of art to ensure their robustness and durability	Art is made of materials unsuited to desired durability	Art is partly made of materials suited to desired durability	Art is made of materials highly suited to desired durability	3 – durable material used (coreten steel), working with parks team to ensure maintenance is not negatively impacted by the installation.
Art makes a significant contribution to Council's public art collection or a public event	Art does not make a significant contribution to Council's public art	Art makes a contribution to Council's art collection and / or public event	Art does make a significant contribution to Council's public art	3 – high quality of material, skills of artist, artist of renown, aligns with the caliber of the other artists we have,

Criteria	Low (1 point each)	Medium (2 points each)	High (3 points each)	Score & Justification
	collection or public event		collection or public event	adds to the river trail artwork.
Art is able to be installed and subsequently cared for and maintained within available resources for the duration of its intended lifespan	No	Possibly	Yes	3 – no cost to Council coreten steel is designed to weather, owners have proven track record of looking after artwork.
Cost – acquisition	Outside budget	Marginal	Within budget	3 – no cost to Council
Cost – maintenance (per year)	Outside budget	Marginal	Within budget	3 – no cost to Council Maintenance cost to owner envisaged to be low due to robustness of materials
Art is a duplicate of an existing piece in Council's collection	Yes	Possibly	No	3 – not a duplicate
Art aligns with guiding principles outlined in Arts Policy (5.1 – 5.7)	Does not align with any of the guiding principles	Aligns with some of the guiding principles	Aligns with all or the majority of the guiding principles	2 – aligns with 5.2, 5.3, 5.4
Art is relevant to Waipa	Art is not relevant to Waipa	Art is somewhat relevant to Waipa	Art is relevant to Waipa	2 – dogs have been involved agricultural

Criteria	Low (1 point each)	Medium (2 points each)	High (3 points each)	Score & Justification
Art could be construed as offensive	Yes	Somewhat	No	3 – art could not be construed as offensive
			TOTAL	33

APPENDIX 4

Acquisition Proposal and Criteria Assessment “Mural” (document number 11437774)

Acquisition Proposal Form

DETAILS OF SELLER / GIFTER	
Name	Te Awa River Ride Charitable Trust
Address	8 Peake Road, Cambridge 3283
E-mail	info@te-awa.org.nz
Phone	021333623

DETAILS OF ART			
Value	\$7,000 + GST		
Name / Title	Te Awa River Ride Mural (<i>Title TBC</i>)		
Material(s) used	Paint		
Art type (e.g. sculpture)	Mural		
Life expectancy	10 years +		
Connection to location, culture and history	Scene of Te Awa River Ride path amongst native flora and fauna and birdlife – regularly seen on this section of the Te Awa River Ride.		
Alignment with Arts Policy guiding principles			
Artist CV attached	Yes ☐	Photograph of art attached	Yes x (see below)
	No ☐		No ☐
Preferred placement (e.g. name of park or building)	Gaslight Theatre building (on southern end wall)		

STAFF ASSESSMENT			
Maintenance requirements	The Te Awa River Ride Trust have committed to cover any ongoing maintenance costs.		
Score from acquisition criteria	30		
Recommendation	Accept ☒	Justification The mural will enable placing making within the area as it reflects scenery and activities that are common in this area.	
	Decline ☐		
Name	Gina Scott	Date	2 May 2025
Signed			

STRATEGIC PLANNING AND POLICY COMMITTEE DECISION			
Decision	Accept ☐	Justification	
	Decline ☐		
Name		Date	
Signed			



Proposed DRAFT Mural Design - Jeremy Shirley, 10 April 2025



Acquisition Criteria

The following table outlines the criteria against which art acquisition proposals will be assessed. This is to ensure art work is considered objectively. Art will be scored according to how well it meets each criteria point – either low (doesn't meet criteria), medium (somewhat meets criteria) or high (meets criteria).

A proposal seeking Council support must gain a score of 26 or above to be considered for acquisition.

Criteria	Low (1 point each)	Medium (2 points each)	High (3 points each)	Score & Justification
Public art must respond to local character, including consideration of place, people and stories	Doesn't respond to local character	Somewhat responds to local character	Responds strongly to local character	2 – Waikato River environment, birdlife, river ride
Where possible, public art is to be used to mark sites of significance and to honour our treasured memories	Doesn't mark a site of significance or link to local history	Marks a site of significance and / or has links to local history	Marks a site of significance and links strongly to local history	1 – contemporary interpretation
Public art is to be placed where it will make the most difference to a public place, as it has a key place-making role	Lacks place-making role	Will somewhat play a place-making role	Will play a strong place-making role	3 – enables a sense of placemaking and belonging for many
Public art ties in with capital works projects	Doesn't tie in with a capital works project	Ties in somewhat with capital works project	Ties in strongly with capital works project	3 – the cycleway is considered a major capital works project, involving council, private landowners, funders and community

Criteria	Low (1 point each)	Medium (2 points each)	High (3 points each)	Score & Justification
High-quality materials must be used in permanent works of art to ensure their robustness and durability	Art is made of materials unsuited to desired durability	Art is partly made of materials suited to desired durability	Art is made of materials highly suited to desired durability	3 – has a life expectancy of 10+ years. Artist known to council through previous projects.
Art makes a significant contribution to Council's public art collection or a public event	Art does not make a significant contribution to Council's public art collection or public event	Art makes a contribution to Council's art collection and / or public event	Art does make a significant contribution to Council's public art collection or public event	Not rated as considered N/A - building not owned by Council therefore mural will not be considered our asset
Art is able to be installed and subsequently cared for and maintained within available resources for the duration of its intended lifespan	No	Possibly	Yes	3 – Te Awa River Ride Trust will fund the project
Cost – acquisition	Outside budget	Marginal	Within budget	3 -Te Awa River Ride Trust will fund the project
Cost – maintenance (per year)	Outside budget	Marginal	Within budget	3 – Te Awa River Ride have agreed cover any maintenance costs
Art is a duplicate of an existing piece in Council's collection	Yes	Possibly	No	N/A
Art aligns with guiding principles outlined in Arts Policy (5.1 – 5.7)	Does not align with any of the guiding principles	Aligns with some of the guiding principles	Aligns with all or the majority of the guiding principles	3 – Aligns with 6 out of 7 of the guiding principles

Art is relevant to Waipa	Art is not relevant to Waipa	Art is somewhat relevant to Waipa	Art is relevant to Waipa	3 – Art is relevant to Waipa. Reflects typical countryside scenes, activities/events relevant to the district
Art could be construed as offensive	Yes	Somewhat	No	3 – Not considered offensive
			TOTAL	30

COMMITTEE REPORT



INFORMATION ONLY

To: The Chairperson and Members of the Strategic Planning and Policy Committee

From: Manager District Plan & Growth & Principal Strategic Planner

Subject: **Fast-track Approvals Act 2024 & North Waipā/South Hamilton Spatial Study Update**

Meeting Date: 4 June 2025

1 EXECUTIVE SUMMARY – WHAKARĀPOPOTOTANGA MATUA

The purpose of this report is to provide an update on the application of the Fast-track Approvals Act 2024 as it pertains to Waipā and the North Waipā/South Hamilton Spatial Study led by Future Proof.

2 RECOMMENDATION – TŪTOHU Ā-KAIMAHI

That the Strategic Planning and Policy Committee receive the report of Quentin Budd, Manager District Plan & Growth and Vanessa Honore, Principal Strategic Planner, titled Fast-track Approvals Act 2024 & North Waipā/South Hamilton Spatial Study Update [ECM number 11439445].

3 COMMENTARY - KŌRERO

Fast-track Approvals Act 2024 update

This is a follow-up from the report presented at the Strategic Planning & Policy Committee meeting on 5 February 2025, providing an update on the Fast-track Approvals Act 2024 (the Act).

The Act establishes a fast-track approval framework for considering and determining resource consents and notices of requirement for regionally or nationally significant projects that would otherwise be considered under the Resource Management Act 1991. The Act applies to seven other statutes such as the Reserves Act 1977 and Conservation Act 1987. The Act is administered by the Fast-track team of the Environmental Protection Authority (EPA).

On 6 October 2024, the Government announced its decision to list 149 projects in Schedule 2 (Listed projects) of the Act. Three projects are located in Waipā District. The

three projects are the NZTA Waka Kotahi Southern Links State Highway project, the NZTA Waka Kotahi SH1 Cambridge to Piarere project, and Southern Links 1 (a consortium of landowners to subdivide land for 1035 residential lots and 48 hectares of industrial activity to the north of the Southern Links designation).

Projects not listed in Schedule 2 require approval by the Minister for Infrastructure through a referral process administered by the Fast-track team. Listed projects can then proceed through a substantive application process. A summary of the substantive application process is in the table below:

Table 1 – Application Process

Step	Description
1. Substantive Application	A substantive application is submitted through the Fast-track application portal.
2. Completeness and Eligibility Check	The Fast-track team checks the application for completeness and eligibility.
3. Referral to Expert Panel	If the application is deemed complete and eligible, it's referred to an expert panel for consideration.
4. Panel Receives Application	The panel receives the application and must obtain advice or reports.
5. Panel Invites Comments	The panel invites comments from specified parties.
6. Applicant Response	Applicants can respond to comments.
7. Panel Consideration and Decision	The panel considers the application, comments, advice and reports and makes a decision.
8. Decision Notification	Parties are notified of the decision, and specified parties may appeal.

No substantive applications have been made to the Fast-track team for the listed projects in Waipā District at this current time. A summary of possible projects is included in the table below.

Table 2 – Possible Fast-track Projects in Waipā

PROJECT	STATUS	COMMENTS
NZTA Waka Kotahi Southern Links state highway project	Listed in Schedule 2	Work is underway but there is no definitive date to submit a substantive application for the NZTA Waka Kotahi

PROJECT	STATUS	COMMENTS
		Southern Links state highway project.
The NZTA Waka Kotahi SH1 Cambridge to Piarere project	Listed in Schedule 2	The NZTA Waka Kotahi SH1 Cambridge to Piarere project is currently well advanced through the Natural and Built Environment Act 2023 fast-track process and therefore a substantive application under the Fast-track Approvals Act 2024 is unlikely to be submitted. The substantive application was lodged with the EPA on 5 December 2024, the expert consenting panel was appointed on 17 February 2025, submissions were invited and closed on 14 April 2025. The expert consenting panel have considered submissions including the submission from Waipā District Council and has requested additional information from NZTA Waka Kotahi before a decision is made.
The Southern Links 1 consortium	Listed in Schedule 2	The Southern Links 1 consortium has been in discussions with Future Proof partners, including Hamilton City Council (HCC) infrastructure teams because it will impact HCC roading networks and piped services, as opposed to Waipā District Council. The Southern Links 1 consortium area is located in the Priority Area 1 of the Strategic Boundary Agreement between Waipā District Council and HCC (<i>see Figure 1</i>). The agreement outlines a process for the future transfer of this land.

PROJECT	STATUS	COMMENTS
		We are working with our future proof partners and the applicant and a substantive application is expected to be submitted in the latter part of 2025.
SL1 South	Requires Referral Application	A referral application is expected for a project (referred to as SL1 South) at 3102 and 3134 Ōhaupō Road, Hamilton. The project would be to construct a residential and industrial development on 140ha of Large Lot Residential and Rural Zone land in the Waipā District Plan. Several parcels included in the project area are located in the Houchens Road Structure Plan area. The land is also located within the south-eastern portion of Priority Area 1 (<i>see Figure 1</i>).
Rogerson Block	Requires Referral Application	A referral application is expected for a project at 183 and 293 Tuhikaramea Road, Hamilton. The project would be to construct a residential and industrial development on 40ha of Rural Zone land. The northern parcel (183 Tuhikaramea Road) is located within the north-western portion of the Priority 1 Area (<i>see Figure 1</i>). The southern parcel (293 Tuhikaramea Road) is not located in the Strategic Boundary Agreement Area.
Te Awamutu Developments Limited	Requires Referral Application	A referral application is expected to be submitted by Te Awamutu Developments Limited relating to a project at 2025 Ōhaupō Road, Te

PROJECT	STATUS	COMMENTS
		Awamutu. The project is to construct a residential and lifestyle village on 25.7ha of Rural Zone land. The same project was lodged with Waipā District Council on 18 January 2023 as Private Plan Change 29. The private plan change has been on-hold at the applicant's request since 24 April 2023.

Where projects have cross boundary issues (such as in the SL1 Strategic Boundary Agreement Area, Future Proof partners are collaborating with the applicants to ensure fast-track projects are in alignment with the strategic priorities for the sub-region. Collaboration is in the form of the 'Fast-track Action Team' that collectively meet with applicants and have weekly meetings to discuss and pre-plan the consenting process for fast-track projects.

A Future Proof organisational framework has been set up so that the Fast-track Action Team reports to a Future Proof Programme Management Group that can escalate issues to the Chief Executive Advisory Group. At a governance level, there is also reporting to the Future Proof Implementation Committee.

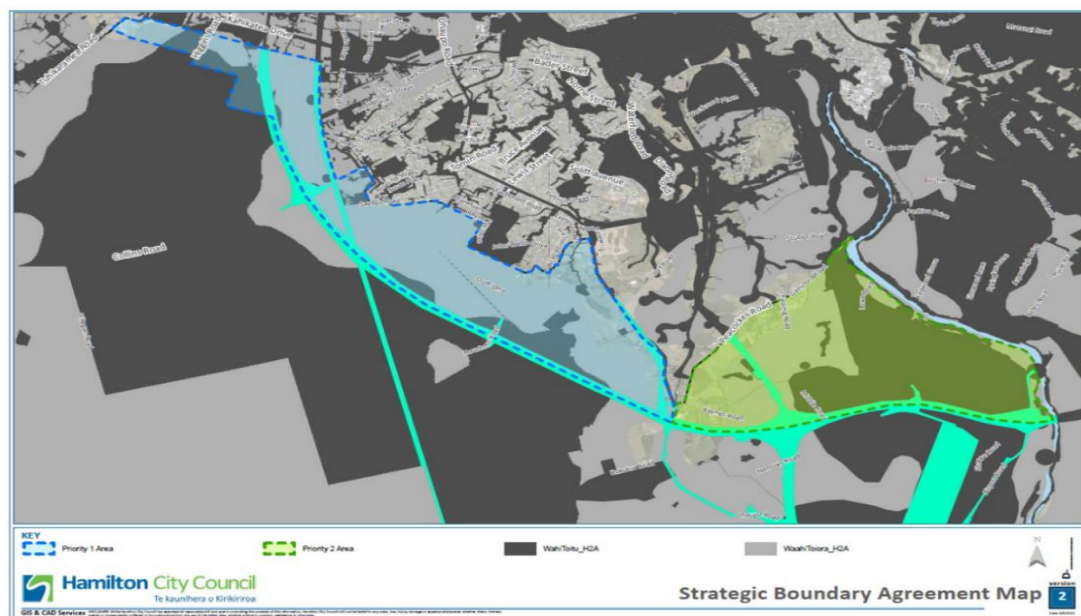


Figure 1: Map of Southern Links Land Area from Strategic Boundary Agreement with HCC (SL1 shown in blue)

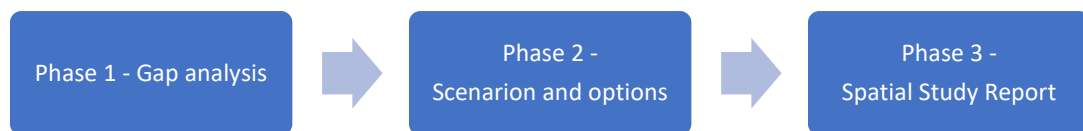
North Waipā/South Hamilton Spatial Study Update

The Future Proof partnership has developed a comprehensive 30-year growth management and implementation strategy, being the Future Development Strategy.

The Implementation Plan for the Future Development Strategy was adopted in late 2024.

One of these implementation actions is to undertake a high-level spatial study that helps Future Proof understand the relationships between already planned development in the North Waipā/ South Hamilton area and other proposed, but not yet agreed, development proposals from potential developers or potentially arising in the future, as the Southern Links Road project is completed.

The spatial study encompasses three key phases and is due for completion by March 2026.



In mid-March, Vanessa Honoré, Principal Strategic Planner at Waipā District Council, began working as a part-time planning lead for this project. Her initial work has focused on detailed project management and planning, and completing a gap analysis for the study area. The gap analysis report is based on a thorough review of key technical reports for the sub-region and is organised around the seven critical themes the study seeks to investigate.

These are outlined below:

- Demand for Land Use Change and Strategic Integration;
- Responding to unanticipated or out-of-sequence development proposals;
- Infrastructure Demands and Funding Challenges;
- Value Capture and Strategic Infrastructure Staging;
- Agglomeration Benefits around Southern Hamilton periphery and Hamilton Airport and integration with Mystery Creek;
- Competing Land Uses; and
- Environmental Constraints and Opportunities for Environmental Benefits.

Parallel to this, a draft vision and outcome statements have been developed, based on the seven key transformational moves in the Future Proof Strategy, tailored where possible for the specific study area.

A meeting with the Spatial Study Project Control Group (PCG) is being scheduled for mid-June to approve the commencement of stakeholder engagement based on these materials and associated collateral. The engagement will likely consist of 1:1 discussions with key stakeholders and a survey open to a wider list of stakeholders.

The key questions for stakeholders are anticipated to be structured as below:

- Have we missed anything significant in our gap analysis?

- Have we drawn the right conclusions from the material we've reviewed?
- Do the draft vision and outcome statements align with the vision and desired outcomes you have for the area?

Stakeholder engagement is expected to be completed by early July 2025, and Phase 2—Scenario and Options development and assessment, will commence then.

The next Strategic Planning and Policy committee meeting, scheduled for 06 August, will provide an update on the outcome of engagement and insights into the scenario exploration.



Prepared by Quentin Budd
MANAGER DISTRICT PLAN & GROWTH



Prepared by Vanessa Honore
PRINCIPAL STRATEGIC PLANNER



Approved by Kirsty Downey
GROUP MANAGER STRATEGY



Approved by Wayne Allan
GROUP MANAGER DISTRICT GROWTH & REGULATORY SERVICES